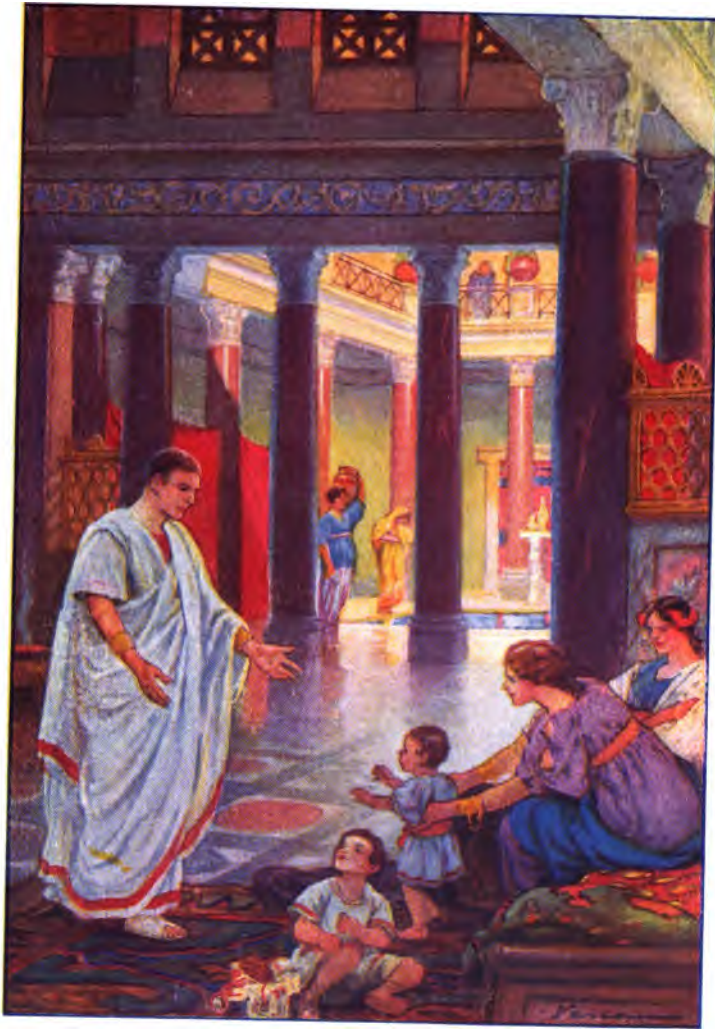


In a Roman Home

BEGINNING LATIN

AN INTRODUCTION, BY WAY OF ENGLISH, TO THE LATIN LANGUAGE

BY

PERLEY OAKLAND PLACE, LITT.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY

With the Collaboration of CURTIS C. BUSHNELL, Ph.D., Professor of Classics in Syracuse University; HAROLD L. CLEASBY, Ph.D., Associate Professor of Classics in Hunter College, New York, N.Y.; and ALVAH T. OTIS, A.M., High School, White Plains, N.Y.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO BOSTON ATLANTA

PLACE. BEGINNING LATIN

W. P. 4

PREFACE

Why American Boys and Girls Should Study Latin. The study of Latin is an intensive study of English. Besides its importance for a mastery of French, Spanish, and Italian, the study of Latin fosters habits of persistence, thoroughness, and accuracy; it cultivates the power to understand the thoughts of others and to express one's own. Translating is "laboratory work in literature," admirable exercise in expression, insuring steadily increasing power in the use of a varied and rich vocabulary as the great authors, Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil, are successively read.

This Book Emphasizes the Relation of Latin to English. The value most nearly at hand in studying Latin and the most practical of all reasons for its study is the help given by Latin in understanding and using the English language. This book, therefore, lays special emphasis upon the relation of Latin to English. Related English words, with the Latin element typographically emphasized, are placed in the vocabularies, beside the Latin. Thus familiar and unfamiliar English words are illuminated by the Latin.

English grammar is made introductory to each point of Latin syntax. *The pupil has before him in his home study a simple and orderly development of each principle of Latin grammar, starting from English.* The teacher is thereby saved much explanation in the classroom and is also guarded from omitting steps essential to a solution of the pupil's difficulties.

How the Subject Matter Is Arranged. Each Chapter is divided into Sections and each Section is intended for *one* lesson. In the earlier Chapters the *First Section* presents a portion of the inflections with an exercise; the *Second Section* a vocabulary

CONTENTS

with an exercise; the *Third Section* applies the inflections, vocabulary, and syntax in Translation Exercises. Forms and syntax are introduced where they seem best adapted to the pupil's progress. *In each Section suggestions for study are given.* The book contains numerous special features based on class-room experience, and is in harmony with the recommendations of the National Education Association.

The Vocabulary of the Book. The vocabulary, based on Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin* and Browne's *Latin Word List*, does not merely stress the military side. In the earlier chapters Latin words related to familiar English words are chosen, thus diminishing vocabulary difficulties while the pupil masters the inflections.

The Latin Selections. Each of the Latin Selections was written for its particular place in the book.

The Aim of the Book. The aim of the book is to increase the interest and pleasure of the first year of Latin, and to insure certain practical results, while establishing a thorough basis for further study. The direct and more restricted aim is the learning of Latin by the help of English and of English by the help of Latin; the broader aim is to impart even to the beginner some vivid suggestion of the civilization attained by Rome.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to his collaborators and to the following teachers who read the proof sheets and offered many helpful suggestions: Professor Albert A. Howard, Harvard University; Professor John Greene, Colgate University; Professor John K. Lord, Dartmouth College; Mr. Joseph P. Behm, Central High School, Syracuse, N. Y.; Principal Elmer E. Bogart, Morris High School, New York, N. Y.; Mrs. Harriet Kitts, High School, Schenectady, N. Y.; Principal F. R. Parker, High School, Elmira, N. Y.

PERLEY OAKLAND PLACE.

SECOND HALF YEAR

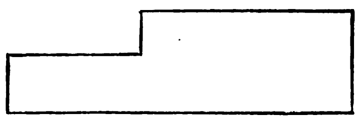
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

SUGGESTIONS FOR STUDY

The following devices and games are offered as practical aids to the study of Latin. The devices of the notched card and of the trellises will be of service to the pupil in the preparation of the lesson, while the word and sentence games can be made to vary the method of recitation and enliven the interest in the classroom.

The Notched Card

A helpful device in learning declensions, conjugations, and vocabularies is the notched card:



1. *To learn a declension:* place the card over the declension so that Nominative will appear in the notch, and the form of the Nominative will be covered; pronounce the Nominative and give its meaning; then move the card down, and as each case appears in the notch pronounce the Latin form and give its meaning; in the same way test yourself on the plural forms.

2. *To learn a tense of a verb:* place the card so that the first English meaning will appear in the notch and the Latin forms will be covered; moving the card down, give in order each Latin form.

3. *To learn a vocabulary:*

(*a*) Place the card so that the *first* Latin word of the vocabulary appears in the notch, the English meaning being hidden; then ask yourself, "What is the English meaning?"

Move the card down the vocabulary, and test yourself on *each* Latin word.

(*b*) Place the card so that the *first* English meaning appears within the notch, the Latin word being hidden; then ask yourself, "What is the Latin word?" Say the Latin word aloud, and, if it is a noun, give its *Genitive* and its *gender;* if it is a verb, give its *principal parts.*

(*c*) Place the card, with the long unbroken edge at the top, across both the "English Meanings" and the "Latin Words," leaving the "Related English Words" in full view; look at the first line of related English words and ask yourself, "To what Latin word are these related?" "Do I know the exact meaning of these related English words?"

Trellises

Another useful device for learning declensions and conjugations is a simple framework that may be called a "trellis." Pupils can make the diagram on a sheet of paper and fill it in while preparing the lesson. The following suggestions are offered:

1. **Noun Trellis.** — (*a*) Write upon the trellis all the forms of the noun to be learned (**terra**, **hortus**, **templum**, **puer**, etc.), marking long vowels and the accent, and give after each case its meaning. (*b*) Compare your written work with the book and correct any errors. (*c*) With the book closed and the written work put aside, form a mental picture of the trellis and decline the noun aloud, associating with each case its meaning. *Practice for accuracy and speed.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	______	______
Gen.	______	______
Dat.	______	______
Acc.	______	______
Abl.	______	______

2. **Verb Trellis.** — (*a*) Write upon the trellis the present tense of the verb to be learned (**vocō**, **moneō**, **regō**, etc.), marking

long vowels and accent, and give after each form its meaning. (*b*) Compare your written work with the book and correct any errors. (*c*) With the book closed and the trellis put aside, form a mental picture of the trellis and conjugate the tense aloud, associating with each form its person and meaning. (This trellis should be enlarged upon as additional tenses and moods of the verb are studied.)

	Sing.	Plur.
1.	———	———
2.	———	———
3.	———	———

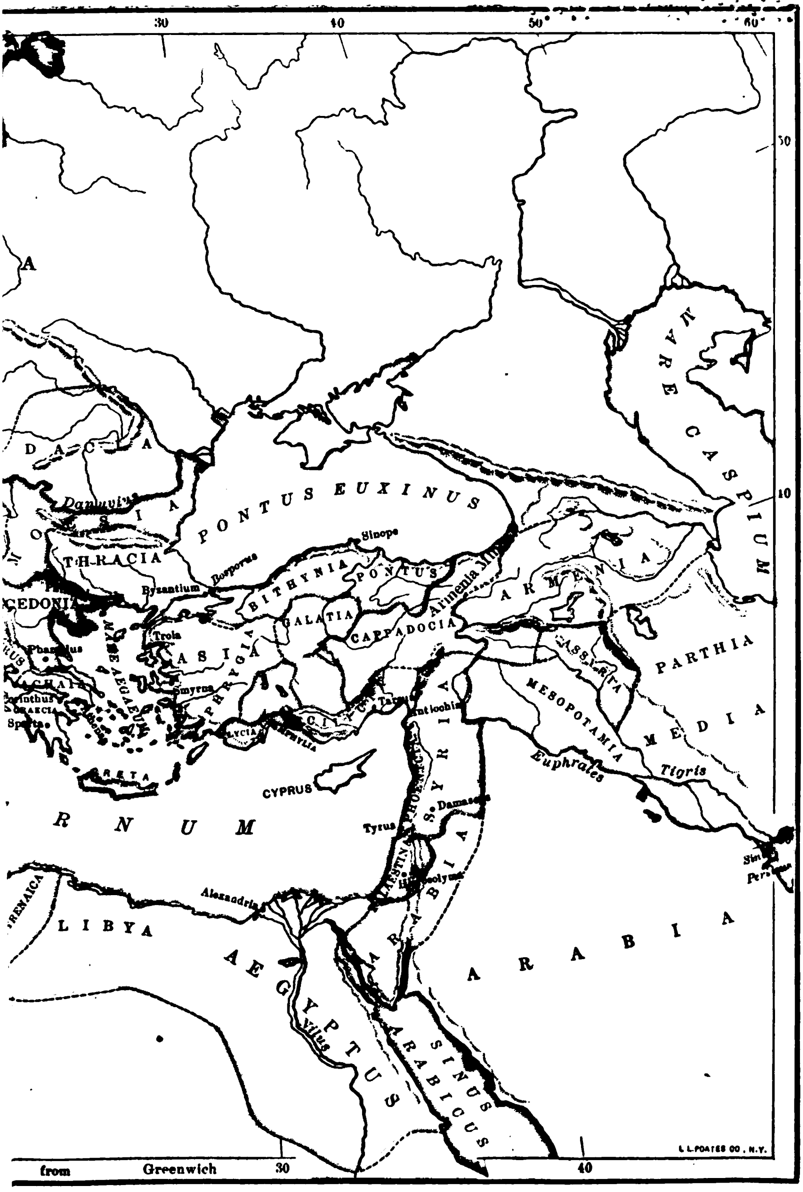
3. **Adjective Trellis.** — (*a*) Write upon the trellis, first, *all* forms of the Nominative singular; then *all* forms of the Genitive singular; then, in the same way, the rest of the singular and the plural. (*b*) With the book closed and the trellis put aside, form a mental picture of this framework and decline the adjective aloud, associating with each case its three genders, and having in your mind a clear picture of these forms in their proper place on the framework. (*c*) Repeat rapidly several times the *endings* alone, thus: *Nom.* **-us, -a, -um**; *Gen.* **-ī, -ae, -ī**; *Dat.* **-ō, -ae, -ō**, etc.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Gen.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Dat.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Acc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	——	——	——	——	——	——

The Game of Related English Words

An interesting game may be played as follows: The teacher divides the class into two groups (*A* and *B*), then selects a Latin word from the word list and asks, for example, "Can you give an English word related to **spectō**?" If group *A* has the "first inning," all in the group who can give one or more English words related to **spectō** at once raise the hand. Then the teacher asks different pupils of group *A*


THE ROMAN EMPIRE
AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500 600
West 0
10 Longitude East 20
CALEDONIA
HIBERNIA
BRITANNIA
Londinium
Oceanus Britannicus
MARE GERMANICUM
MARE SUEVICUM
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
MARE CANTABRICUM
GERMANIA
Rhenus
Suebi
BELGICA
Bibrax
Lutetia
Lugdunensis
Liger
Noviodunum
GALLIA
Celtae
Aquitania
Arverni
Lugdunum
Sequani
Jura Mons
Helvetii
RAETIA
Alpes
NORICUM
PANNONIA
Aquileia
Mediolanum
Genua
Padus
Tolosates
Pyrenaei
Narbonensis
Narbo
Massilia
Tarraconensis
Numantia
Iberus
HISPANIA
Lusitania
Saguntum
Baetica
Gades
BALEARES
CORSICA
SARDINIA
Roma
ITALIA
Neapolis
Tarentum
MARE ADRIATICUM
ILLYRICUM
Actium
SICILIA
Syracusae
MARE INTERNUM
MAURETANIA
NUMIDIA
Zama
Carthago
AFRICA
10
0
10
50
40
30


30
40
50
60
DACIA
Danuvius
THRACIA
PONTUS EUXINUS
Sinope
Bosporus
Byzantium
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
Armenia Minor
ARMENIA
MARE CASPIUM
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
Troia
ASIA
PHRYGIA
Smyrna
Phasalus
Corinthus
Sparta
LYCIA
CILICIA
Tarsus
Antiochia
CYPRUS
SYRIA
Damascus
Tyrus
PARTHIA
MESOPOTAMIA
MEDIA
Euphrates
Tigris
LIBYA
Alexandria
AEGYPTUS
Nilus
ARABIA
SINUS ARABICUS
from Greenwich
30
40
L.L.POATES CO., N.Y.

until the group can give no more words. Each word should be classified when given, thus: *inspect* (verb), *inspection* (noun), *spectacular* (adjective), *spectacularly* (adverb). When group *A* has done its best, if group *B* can add no word, group *A* wins *one* point; but if group *B* can add any words, each counts *one* point for *B*. Also if group *B* challenges a word given by group *A*, the latter group must use the word correctly in an English sentence, or lose one point to group *B*. Group *B* has its "inning" in the same way with the next Latin word. After ten minutes the teacher "calls the game" and announces the score.

The Game of Correct Sentences

This can be played when the class writes upon the board its translations of sentences from English into Latin. The class itself is regarded as one "team," opposed to which is the "Team of Errors." As the game proceeds (*i.e.* as the sentences are corrected), the score is kept upon the board (as is the "score by runs" in baseball).

There is an "inning" for each sentence. If the sentence is perfect in every respect, including the marking of quantities, *one* "run" is scored for the class and the sentence itself is starred; if there is the slightest mistake, the faulty sentence scores *one* for "The Errors." The team with the larger number of runs wins.

The game can be varied by dividing the class into two sections ("sides") and assigning to both sides the same number of sentences to be written. An absolutely correct sentence counts as one "run," otherwise the side fails to score. In each inning the sides present one sentence apiece for criticism. At the end of the game the side with the larger number of runs is declared the winner. Correct sentences are starred.



Entering Rome by the Appian Way
(Porta Sebastiana)

ROMA AETERNA

Ō Rōma nōbilis, orbis et domina,
Cūnctārum urbium excellentissima,
Roseō martyrum sanguine rubea,
Albīs et virginum līliīs candida,
Salūtem dīcimus tibi per omnia:
AVĒ, RŌMA IMMORTĀLIS!

O Rome, far-famed and Empress of earth,
Above all cities throned upon high,
Red with the martyrs' blood of the rose,
White with the virgins' lilies of snow,
Hearts evermore hail Thee, O Rome:
HAIL, DEATHLESS ROME!

INTRODUCTION

(*First and Second Days*)

I. THE ROMANS AND THEIR LANGUAGE, "LATIN"

In order really to understand our language, "English," and the world in which we live, we need to know about the ancient Romans and their language, Latin.

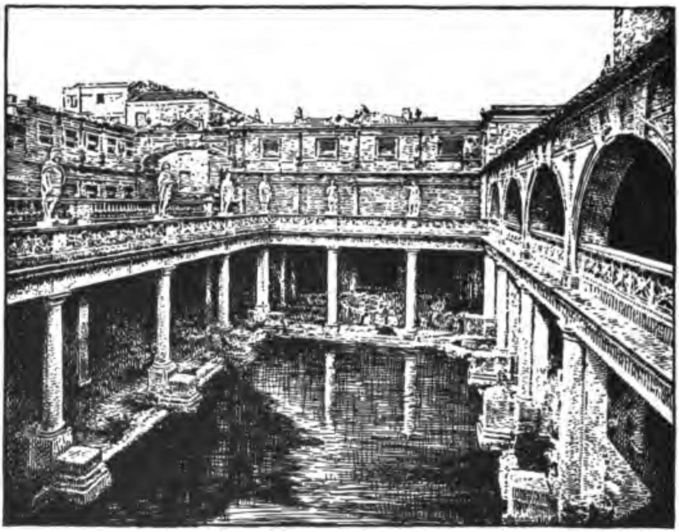
1. **The Ancient Romans, Their Empire, Civilization, and Influence.** — The *Romans* at first lived in the central part of Italy. Their little settlement of shepherds on a hill[1] near the *Tiber* river became in time the great city of *Rome*, which, according to legend, was founded in 753 B.C.; from this date therefore they reckoned time, as we do from the birth of Christ. The central part of Italy on the western side was called *Latium;* the peoples there were *Latins*, and the language of the Romans was called *Latin*. North of Latium were the *Etruscans*, who had fine cities while Rome was still a settlement of shepherds;

---

[1] EARLY ROME. — The original settlement was on the *Palatine Hill* (which later became the residence of the Roman emperors, so that our English word "palace" is derived from it). Settlements on neighboring hills in time united with that on the Palatine. The low ground between the hills, the *Forum*, served as a market place and civic center. A second market place, nearer the river, was the *Forum Boarium*, which became the early commercial center. On the adjacent *Capitoline Hill* was a citadel, for Rome owed much of its early importance to its being a border fortress of the Latins at a point where an island in midstream made it easy for the hostile Etruscans to cross the Tiber. The *Janiculum*, a hill across the river, served as a fortified outpost to keep the Etruscans even from the farther bank. It "guarded the bridgehead" of the *Sublician* bridge. Cf. **84** and map, p 100.

to the southeast in the interior of Italy were the *Samnites;* and in Southern Italy the *Greek* civilization was firmly established (cf. map facing p. 62).

The Romans in time extended their power over all the countries round about the *Mediterranean Sea* and even occupied a part of the *British Isles,* so that eventually they ruled from *Scotland* to the *Sahara Desert* and from the *Atlantic* to the *Euphrates.* This empire, when at the height of its power,



Roman Baths at Bath, England

was in length, breadth, and population nearly the same as the United States, Italy alone being more than twice the area of the State of New York.[1] So many people had never before been under one government, nor been governed so well.

Northwards the *Rhine* and *Danube* rivers formed a strong defense behind which civilization was secure from the German

---

[1] See map following page xvi and note the names of the countries ("provinces") governed by Rome.

barbarians beyond. The only other dangerous enemies were the *Parthians* in the distant East, and these were successfully held in check. All the vast empire was connected with Rome by a network of wonderful roads along which travelers and traders moved with a freedom and security such as were unknown for many centuries after; and the Romans, through their language, customs, and laws, went on to make the peoples whom they governed to be in greater or less measure like themselves.

This *Roman civilization* was greatly indebted to that of the *Greeks*, with its noble literature and art.[1] A second powerful influence upon the *Roman* civilization was Christianity, which, under the Emperor *Constantine* (324–337 A.D.), was accepted as the established religion of the Empire.

The *Latin language* was spoken throughout *Western Europe* and *Northern Africa;* east of *Italy* the common speech remained Greek, but the official language was *Latin*. The differences between the East and the West finally resulted in the division of the Empire into the *Western Roman Empire* and the *Eastern Roman Empire.*

Roman history, strictly speaking, covers twelve centuries (from 753 B.C. to 476 A.D., when, with the capture of Rome by the *Goths*, a German tribe, the Western Roman Empire fell). The Eastern Roman Empire continued for nearly a thousand years longer till the capture of its capital, *Constantinople* ("the city of Constantine"), by the *Turks* in 1453 A.D. The great period of Roman literature, the *Golden Age*, was from about 80 B.C. to 17 A.D. Then lived the great writers whose works we are preparing to read, — *Caesar*, *Cicero*, *Vergil*, and *Horace*.

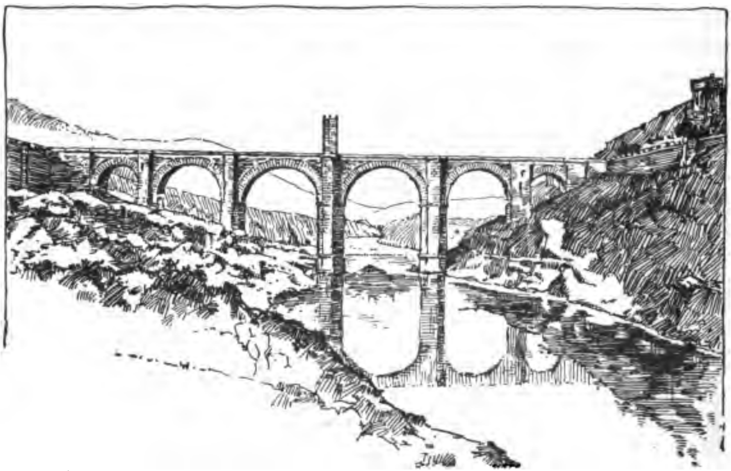
Afterwards, in the *Middle Ages*, which came between *Ancient* and *Modern* times, even the invading tribes that had crossed the Rhine and Danube and broken up the Western Empire learned the Roman language and ways, along with the Christian

[1] A student of Latin is strongly advised to study Greek.

religion; and what they learned from Rome has been handed on to us.

Thus the Romans have contributed to modern civilization the influence of their *law*, *language*, *literature*, *architecture*, *art*, and *religion*.

2. **Latin in the Middle Ages.** — In the Middle Ages Latin was at first spoken everywhere in *Western Europe*, and also along the *lower Danube*, but in the course of a few centuries it was gradually changed in the various lands into the separate languages of *French*, *Italian*, *Spanish*, *Portuguese*, and *Roumanian*.



Roman Bridge over the Tagus at Alcántara, Spain; built 105 A.D.

These languages, called *Romance* languages because of their *Roman* origin, are simply "Latin in modern guise," and are easily learned by those who understand Latin. Latin was driven from *England* by the invading *Anglo-Saxons*, but in a modified form was brought back later (1066 A.D.) by the conquering *Normans*, who spoke a kind of *French*. These two elements of *Anglo-Saxon* and *Norman-French* are mingled along with others in *Modern English*.

Throughout the Middle Ages, Latin remained, in Western Europe, the language of the *church* and of the *universities.* *Science*, *literature*, *law*, and *religion* became thoroughly associated with it.

3. **How Latin Lives To-day.** — To-day also Latin is truly a living language. Besides, being understood by educated men all over the world, it is the official language of the *Catholic Church.* It is used in the service and by the clergy. Some of the most beautiful hymns are in Latin.

More than 200,000,000 people of the present day speak the *Romance* languages. In two of these languages, *Spanish* and *Portuguese*, Americans are especially interested as being the speech of our neighbors in Mexico, Central America, and South America.

In a certain sense we ourselves speak Latin, for more than half the words in our language come directly or indirectly from Latin. Some of these words have come down from the Roman occupation of Britain, many are derived indirectly through the Norman-French, and many others directly as the inherited vocabulary of *literature*, *science*, and *philosophy.* Especially for the professions of theology, law, and medicine is Latin important. So Latin is not a "dead language." "In fact the livest part of our language to the educated man is the Latin part."[1]

The importance of Latin is shown by the fact that it is "the one language, except English, which is most generally studied in our high schools and academies."[2]

II. DIVISIONS OF ROMAN HISTORY

The following divisions of Roman history may be profitably remembered:

1. 753–509 B.C., *Period of the Kings*, of whom the last, the *Tarquins*, were probably *Etruscan* rulers to whom Rome was

[1] Dr. W. T. Harris, late U. S. Commissioner of Education.

[2] *Value of the Classics* (Princeton University Press, 1917), p. 360.

unwillingly subject. They were said to have been expelled by the *Liberator Brutus* in 509 B.C. The Roman people thereafter, in place of a single life-long sovereign, elected annually two *consuls* as chief magistrates with equal power. The main law-making body was to be the *senate.*



Augustus Caesar (63 B.C.–14 A.D.)
The First of the Roman Emperors

2. 509–31 B.C., *Period of the Republic.* This period was, in the beginning, marked by strife between the *plebeians*, or common people, and the *patricians*, or nobles.[1] Steadily the plebeians improved their position in the state. Steadily also the external power of Rome increased. The period was closed by civil wars, in which the greatest figures were *Julius Caesar* (102–44 B.C.) and *Augustus* (63 B.C.–14 A.D.), the latter of whom by the great naval victory of *Actium* (31 B.C.) became the *Emperor*, or sole ruler of the Roman Empire.

3. 31 B.C.–476 A.D., *Period of the Empire.* During this time Rome was ruled by Emperors, who for the last 300 years of the period had to struggle vigorously with dangerous barbarian invasions, till the *Fall of the Western Empire* in 476 A.D.

---

[1] The *patricians* ("sons of the fathers") are believed to represent the earliest families of Rome; the *plebeians*, the later comers to Rome.

III. HOW ROME ROSE TO POWER[1]

Rome's rise to world dominion is a thrilling story. She had certain natural advantages to begin with. The hills on which the city was built were easy to defend, the large river close by and the not distant sea made Rome a commercial center, and the fact that Rome was central to Italy and fairly central to the Mediterranean lands made her a suitable seat of government.

Rome was the natural head of the *Latin* tribes and early proved herself stronger than the *Etruscans*. Her most stubborn antagonists in Italy were the *Samnites;* these she conquered in the three *Samnite wars* (343–290 B.C.). She then overcame the Greek cities in Southern Italy (281–272 B.C.), though they were helped by *Pyrrhus*, a Greek king who was an able general and had a powerful army. The first province brought under Roman rule as it extended itself beyond Italy was *Sicily*, taken from the most dangerous enemies the Roman Republic ever had, the *Carthaginians.* They were a great commercial people, whose capital was *Carthage*, not far from the present *Tunis.* Carthage ruled a powerful empire in *Northern Africa*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, and later in *Spain*, and had as a military leader the illustrious *Hannibal*, one of the greatest generals that ever lived. Rome finally destroyed Carthage after three great wars (264–146 B.C.), thus gaining all the lands which Carthage had ruled. It was much less difficult to take *Macedonia* (146 B.C.), *Greece* (146 B.C.), *Syria* (64 B.C.), and *Egypt* (30 B.C.). *Julius Caesar* made the northern Roman frontiers safe by subduing *Gaul* (58–50 B.C.), and led an expedition (54 B.C.) into *Britain.* *Southern Britain* became a province in 44 A.D. and *Northern Britain* in 85 A.D. The last important province taken into permanent occupation by Rome was *Dacia* (on the Danube), added by the Emperor *Trajan* in 106 A.D. Rome had now reached her utmost limits and the rest of her story is that of "The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."

---

[1] Cf. Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, "The Prophecy of Capys."

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

(*Third and Fourth Days*)

Our pronunciation of Latin is that of the Ancient Romans at the beginning of the Christian era.

A correct pronunciation of Latin can be acquired only by imitation of the teacher. It is suggested that the teacher first take up with the class Sections 1 to 6 and illustrate each point by the voice. In this way the pupil, after practice in class with the teacher's help, will study these sections by himself with interest and confidence.

Suggestions for Study: 1. *Learn* Sections **1–6**, pronouncing carefully each Latin word several times. 2. *Read* Section **7**, which is mainly for reference. 3. Practice on the Exercises in Sections **8–9**.

THE LATIN ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet, from which comes our own, was borrowed from Greek colonies in southern Italy as early as 700 B.C.[1] It had twenty-three letters: **a**, **b**, **c**, **d**, **e**, **f**, **g**, **h**, **i** (both as vowel and consonant),[2] **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **o**, **p**, **q**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **v** (both as vowel and consonant),[3] **x**, **y**, **z**[4]; it had no **j** and no **w**.

---

[1] The Latin Alphabet can be traced to the picture writing of Egypt (in characters called *hieroglyphs*), which goes back to at least 5000 B.C. Thus M was originally the picture of an owl, and its shape still suggests



the owl's ears and beak; N is from the hieroglyph , which pictures the rippling surface of the water. This picture writing became simplified into a few strokes easily made, and was adopted by the Phœnicians, a seafaring people, who brought it to the Greeks.

[2] From the seventeenth century the vowel sound was expressed by **i**, the consonant sound by **j**.

[3] From the tenth century the vowel sound was expressed by **u**, and the consonant sound by **v**.

[4] **x**, **y**, and **z** were not in Cicero's time included in the alphabet; they were used in the Latin spelling of Greek words.

THE SOUNDS REPRESENTED BY THE LETTERS

2. Vowels. — The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y**. Each vowel has both a *long* and a *short* sound. These sounds, though distinct, the Romans generally indicated by the same letter. Sometimes a mark was placed over a long vowel; a late form of this mark (–) is now used. Thus **ā** represents the long (*i.e.* slow) sound of *a*, as in English *far*. In this book a short vowel generally has no mark over it, but sometimes a mark (˘) is used to call attention to the short (*i.e.* quick) sound. Thus **a**, or **ă**, represents the short sound of *a*, as in English *sofa*. A Latin long vowel (similarly a diphthong) requires *twice* as much time as a short vowel.

The long and short sounds of the vowels are:

Latin Vowels	Equivalent Sounds in English		Latin Words	Meanings
a:	**ā** as in *far*	(lips open)	**mấter (mấ-ter)**	*mother*
	ă as in *sofa*	(lips open)	**térra (tér-ra)**	*land*
e:	**ē** as in *they*	(lips slightly open)	**rēx**	*king*
	ĕ as in *met*	(lips more open)	**régō (ré-gō)**	*I-rule*
i:	**ī** as in *machine*	(lips nearly closed)	**ínsula (ín-su-la)**	*island*
	ĭ as in *pin*	(lips nearly closed)	**ínter (ín-ter)**	*between*
o:	**ō** as in *note*	(lips rounded)	**Rṓma (Rṓ-ma)**	*Rome*
	ŏ as in *obey*[1]	(lips rounded)	**óculus (ó-cu-lus)**	*eye*
u:	**ū** as in *rude*	(lips nearly closed)	**ū́tilis**[2] **(ū́-ti-lis)**	*useful*
	ŭ as in *pull*	(lips nearly closed)	**stúdium (stú-di-um)**	*zeal, study*

Note. — **y** (long or short) has the sound of French *u* or German *ü*; with the lips in position to give the sound of **u**, give the sound of short **i**.

[1] With lips rounded, expel the breath more quickly than for **ō**.

[2] In Latin, an initial long **u** does not have a preceding **y** sound as in English (*e.g. use*).

3. Diphthongs (two-vowel sounds). — The diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, oe, eu, ui.** A diphthong is a union of two short vowel sounds to form one syllable; the two vowels are pronounced in quick succession by one effort.

The diphthongs, with their equivalent sounds in English, are:

Diphthongs	Equivalent Sounds in English	Latin Words	Meanings
ae	as *ai* in *aisle*	**saépe (saé-pe)**	*often*
au	as *ou* in *out*	**gaúdium (gaú-di-um)**	*joy*
ei	as *ei* in *eight*	**deínde (deín-de)**	*then, next*
oe	as *oi* in *coin*	**foédus (foé-dus)**	*treaty*
eu	(**e** + **u**, as in **2**)	**heu** (hĕ́-ōō)	*alas*
ui	(**u** + **i**, as in **2**)	**huic** (hŏŏ́-ĭc) like **hwic**	*to-him*

4. Consonants. — Most consonants are pronounced in Latin as in English, but, while in English several consonants are pronounced in more than one way, in Latin a particular consonant has generally but *one* sound.[1] The following consonants require special care:

Consonants	Equivalent Sounds in English
c (always hard)	as in *cabin* (never soft as in *cedar*)
Ex. **Caésar (Caé-sar)**, *Caesar*	
g (always hard)	as in *gate* (never soft as in *gem*, *ginger*)
Ex. **Gállia (Gál-li-a)**, *Gaul, France*	
s (always hissing)	as in *say* (never like *z*)
Ex. **Sicília (Si-cí-li-a)**, *Sicily;* **rósa (ró-sa)**, *rose*	
t (always hard)	as in *tin*
Ex. **patiéntia (pa-ti-én-ti-a)**, *patience*	
i (sometimes printed as **j**)	as *y* in *yoke*
Ex. **iūstítia (iū-stí-ti-a)**, *justice;* **máior (má-ior)**, *greater*	
u (usually printed as **v**)	as *w* in *water* (never like *v*)
Ex. **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**[2]	

[1] See footnote 1, next page.

[2] See footnote 2, next page.

NOTES. — 1. In **gu**, **qu**, and sometimes **su** before a vowel, the **u** has the consonant sound: **língua** (*líng-gwa*), **quis** (*kwis*), **persuā́deō** (*per-swā́-de-ō*).

2. **r** is trilled as in French.

3. **ch**, **ph**, **th** are pronounced like **k**, **p**, **t**, followed by the aspirate **h**; **púlcher** (*púlc-her*), **Délphī** (*Délp-hī*), **Carthā́gō** (*Cart-hā́-gō*).

4. Doubled consonants should be pronounced separately and in different syllables: **míttō** (*mít-tō*), **vī́lla** (*vī́l-la*).

DIVISION INTO SYLLABLES

5. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs, as **pecū́nia** (**pe-cū́-ni-a**), **caúsa** (**caú-sa**), **puélla** (**pu-él-la**), **nā́vigat** (**nā́-vi-gat**).

Words are divided into syllables as follows:

a. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second: **Itália** (**I-tá-li-a**), **auxílium** (**au-xí-li-um**).

b. If two or more consonants occur together between vowels, the division is usually before the last consonant: **sílva** (**síl-va**), **victṓria** (**vic-tṓ-ri-a**), **innocéntia** (**in-no-cén-ti-a**), **sánctus** (**sánc-tus**). Exceptions to this rule are given in *c*.

c. A consonant, if followed by **l** or **r**, goes with the **l** or **r**: **pū́blicus** (**pū́-bli-cus**), **agrícola** (**a-grí-co-la**), **mediócre** (**me-dí-o-cre**), **dēmṓnstrō** (**dē-mṓns-trō**). But in compound words a preposition is pronounced separately, as in **abrúmpō** (**ab-rúm-pō**).

ACCENT

6. *a.* In words of *two* syllables the accent is regularly upon the first: **pórta** (**pór-ta**), **spéctat** (**spéc-tat**), **sílva** (**síl-va**), **mā́ter** (**mā́-ter**), **páter** (**pá-ter**).

b. In words of *more than two* syllables the accent is upon the

---

[1] EXCEPTIONS. — **b** before **t** or **s** is pronounced as **p**: **obtíneō** (= *op-tí-ne-ō*), **urbs** (= *urps*), **ábstulit** (= *áps-tu-lit*); **n** before **c**, **g**, or **qu** is pronounced like *n* in *anchor* (cf. *ng* in *singing*): **áncora** (= *áng-ko-ra*), **ángor** (= *áng-gor*), **ínquit** (= *íng-kwit*).

[2] Caesar's famous message to the senate, "I came, I saw, I conquered."

next to the last (the *penult*) if this syllable is long, otherwise upon the *antepenult* (the syllable *before* the penult); **amícus** (**a-mí-cus**), **válidus** (**vá-li-dus**), **impediméntum** (**im-pe-dī-mén-tum**) (**7** *c*), **benefícium** (**be-ne-fí-ci-um**), **medíocre** (**me-dí-o-cre**).

c. Certain words like **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, are joined to the preceding word and pronounced with it; hence they are called *enclitics* (from Greek ἐγκλίνειν, *to lean upon*, because they *lean on* the word to which they are joined); **amátne**, *does-he-love?* **naúta agricólaque**, *the sailor and-the-farmer.*

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

7. The quantity of a syllable (*i.e.* the amount of time it takes to pronounce it) is determined as follows:

a. A syllable is *long* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; **cū́ra** (**cū́-ra**), **Caésar** (**Caé-sar**).

b. A syllable is *short* if it ends in a short vowel: **vía** (**ví-a**), **naúta** (**naú-ta**).

c. A syllable, even if the *vowel* is *short*, is *long* when the short vowel is followed by a double consonant (**x** or **z**): **aspéxī** (**a-spéc-sī**), **gáza** (**gád-za**); or by two or more consonants when one or more of these consonants closes (*i.e.* ends) the syllable: **est**, **sunt**, **suspéctus** (**su-spéc-tus**), **vérba** (**vér-ba**), **múlta** (**múl-ta**). When the consonants go with the *next* syllable, as in **5** *c* above, the preceding syllable is not closed and the length of the syllable is determined by the length of its vowel.

d. A vowel is always long before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**: **ī́nferō** (**ī́n-fe-rō**), **prū́dēns** (**prū́-dēns**), **sā́nctus** (**sā́nc-tus**).

e. A vowel is usually short before another vowel or **h**: **vía** (**ví-a**), **cṓpia** (**cṓ-pi-a**), **tráhō** (**trá-hō**); but **diḗī** (**di-ḗ-ī**).

f. A vowel is regularly short before **nd** and **nt**, before final **m** or **t**, and, except in words of one syllable, before final **l** or **r**: **vocándus** (**vo-cán-dus**), **vócant** (**vó-cant**), **laudā́bam** (**lau-dā́-bam**), **laudā́bat** (**lau-dā́-bat**), **ánimal** (**á-ni-mal**), **lábor** (**lá-bor**).

But the vowel is *long*, if it represents a contraction, as in **cṓntiō** (from **conventiō**), **prḗndō** (from **prehéndō**).

8. Exercise. — Pronounce carefully, dividing each word into its syllables, and placing the accent on the proper syllable:

1. Labor omnia vincit. 2. Terra est pulchra. 3. Rēx est crūdēlis. 4. Regit crūdēliter. 5. Multae īnsulae in marī sunt. 6. Rōma est urbs magna. 7. Lūna clāra est. 8. Studium linguae Latīnae dēlectat puerōs et puellās. 9. Saepe lēgēs bonae cīvēs dēfendunt. 10. Inter cīvitātēs foedus firmum erat. 11. Heu! pācem nōn amant. 12. Gallia est terra pulchra. 13. Caesar Galliam occupāvit. 14. Hostēs in castra tēla iēcērunt. 15. Rōma est urbs maior quam urbs nostra. 16. Quis dīxit, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī"? 17. Innocentia nōs dēfendit. 18. Agricola in viā ambulat. 19. Tenebrae noctis cadunt. 20. Prūdēns nihil dīcit nisi prūdenter. 21. Amanda est patria nostra. 22. Mīlitēs impedīmenta in castrīs relīquērunt. 23. Estne Italia terra pulchra? 24. Suntne nauta et agricola amīcī? 25. "Ubi est," inquit, "liber meus?" 26. Heu, mē miserum! librum meum āmīsī.

9. (*a*) THE COMING OF THE WISE MEN[1]

(*St. Matthew* ii. 7–9)

7. Tunc Herōdēs, clam vocātīs Magīs, dīligenter didicit ab eīs tempus stellae, quae apparuit eīs.	Then Herod, when he had secretly called the wise men, inquired of them diligently what time the star appeared.
8. Et mittēns illōs in Bethlehem dīxit: Īte et interrogāte dīligenter dē puerō,	And he sent them to Bethlehem, and said, Go and search diligently for the young child;
et cum invēneritis, renūntiāte mihi, ut et ego veniēns adōrem eum.	and when ye have found him, bring me word again, that I may come and worship him also.

[1] From the *Vulgate*, the Latin version of the Scriptures.

9. Quī cum audīssent rēgem, abiērunt; et ecce stella, quam vīderant in oriente,	When they had heard the king, they departed; and lo, the star, which they saw in the east,
antecēdēbat eōs, ūsquedum veniēns stāret suprā, ubi erat puer.	went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was.

(b) THE PRAYER OF MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS

Ō Domine Deus!
Spērāvī in tē;
Ō cāre mī Iēsu!
Nunc līberā mē;
In dūrā catēnā,
In miserā poenā,
Dēsīderō tē; . . .
Adōrō, implōrō,
Ut līberēs mē!



Ancient Athens

(The Romans were deeply indebted to Greek civilization)

Ē plūribus ūnum — *Out of many, one*

CHAPTER I

FIRST DECLENSION · SUBJECT, OBJECT, AGREEMENT OF VERBS, POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

FIRST SECTION

(*Fifth Day*)

10. Preliminary Review. — Study the Introductory Chapter on Pronunciation, Sections **1–6**, and pronounce carefully the Exercises in **8** and **9**.

11. Changes in the Form of English Words. — In English many words (especially nouns, pronouns, and verbs) change in form to express a change in meaning. Thus (*a*) *I praise him* and (*b*) *He praises me*, express different meanings by different forms of the same words. To express this change of meaning *each* word has changed in form.[1] Likewise, if we have the sentence (*c*) *This man is brave*, and wish to express the same idea in the plural, we change the first three words into (*d*) *These men are*. The word *brave* we do not change, because in English the form of an adjective is the same in the plural as in the singular. Similarly (*e*) *I go* (the Present tense) changes to (*f*) *I went* to express the Past tense, and to (*g*) *I have gone* to express the Present Perfect tense.

Such changes in form are called **inflection**. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its **declension**, that of a verb its **conjugation**.

---

[1] The word *I* has changed in form to *me*, showing that the word is now not the subject, but the object of the verb; the word *praise* has changed in form to *praises*, showing that the verb is now of the third person; the word *him* has changed in form to *he*, showing that it is now the subject of the verb.

In English there are *three* cases, Nominative, Possessive, and Objective, as *The sailor praises the farmer's house.* Here the subject (*sailor*) is in the Nominative case, the object (*house*) is in the Objective case, and the Possessive case (*farmer's*) indicates the possessor, or owner, of the house. The Nominative and Objective cases of an English noun are alike in form; the singular Possessive case (*farmer's*) is formed by adding the ending *-'s*. This ending, which changes the form to show a change of meaning, is called an *inflectional ending*.

12. Changes in the Form of Latin Words. — In Latin there are many more changes in the form of words than in English, which has lost many of the inflections it formerly had. Hence we say that Latin is a "more highly inflected" language than English.

In Latin there are *six* cases, Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative. Thus **térra**, *the land*, is the Nominative, the case of the Subject; **térram**, *the land*, is the Accusative, the case of the Object. The case endings of the plural are different from those of the singular. Thus **térra**, *the land*, is the Nominative singular; **térrae**, *the lands*, is the Nominative plural. Many of the relations expressed in English by the use of prepositions are expressed in Latin by case endings. Thus the Genitive singular is **térrae**, *OF-the-land;* the Genitive plural is **terrārum**, *OF-the-lands*. It is very important, therefore, to observe carefully the case ending, and to be able to associate at once with the form its meaning. In addition, Latin prepositions are used with certain cases.

13. First Declension. — Nouns of the First Declension are mostly feminine and are declined like **térra**, *land*, as in the

following paradigm.[1] A few are masculine, as **agrícola**, *farmer*, and **naúta**, *sailor*.

térra, f., *land* [Base:[2] **terr-**]		Endings	
Singular	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom. **térra**, *land*[3] (Subject)	**térrae**, *lands* (Subject)	**-a**	**-ae**
Gen. **térrae**, *OF-land*	**terrārum**, *OF-lands*	**-ae**	**-ārum**
Dat. **térrae**, *TO (FOR)-land*	**térrīs**, *TO (FOR)-lands*	**-ae**	**-īs**
Acc. **térram**, *land* (Object)	**térrās**, *lands* (Object)	**-am**	**-ās**
Abl. **térrā**,[4] *FROM-land*	**térrīs**,[4] *FROM-lands*	**-ā**	**-īs**

Note.—The Vocative, the case of address (*O land*, **térra**), is omitted in the paradigms of this book, since it is usually the same as the Nominative.

Observe: The Nominative is **terra**, but the Ablative is **terrā**; the Genitive and Dative singular and the Nominative plural have the same form, **terrae**; the Dative and Ablative plural are alike, **terrīs**.

14. Suggestions for Learning a Declension. — *We are working for ACCURACY and SPEED.* 1. Pronounce carefully all the forms of **terra**, giving after each form its meaning; then repeat the declension several times from memory. 2. Write all the forms (marking long vowels and the accent), and give after each case its meaning. 3. Compare your written work with the book and correct any errors. 4. Repeat the case endings aloud, associating with each its case and the relation expressed, thus: **-a**, Nom., Subject; **-ae**, Gen., OF-; etc. Then repeat the endings alone *as rapidly as possible*. 5. Decline **agrícola**, *farmer*, and **naúta**, *sailor*. See Suggestions for Study, pp. xiv and xv.

15. Exercise. — Give the case (or possible cases) and the meaning (or possible meanings) of: **terrae**, **terrā**, **nautam**,

[1] *Paradigm* is the term given to the complete inflection of a word.

[2] The *base* is that part of the noun to which the *case endings* are added.

[3] Latin has no article; hence **térra** may mean *land*, *a-land*, *the-land*.

[4] The Ablative also expresses the relations *BY-*, *WITH-*, *IN-*, *ON-*.

agricolārum, agricolās, terrīs, terram, nautās, nautae, agricolam, agricolīs.

SECOND SECTION

16. The pronunciation of each new Latin word should be accurately observed. To insure this, long vowels and the accent are marked, thus; **pecūnia** (*money*), **cónvocō** (*I-call-together*). If new words are mispronounced at first, stubborn errors will have to be corrected. Before studying the vocabulary, read with great care the Suggestions for Study given below it.

VOCABULARY I

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words[1]
Italy	**Itália, -ae,** *f.*	*Ital*ian, *ital*ic[2]
money	**pecūnia, -ae,** *f.*	*pecuni*ary
gate	**pórta, -ae,** *f.*	*port*al, *port*cullis
Sicily	**Sicília, -ae,** *f.*	*Sicil*ian
forest	**sílva, -ae,** *f.*	*silv*an, *Sylv*ia
highway, road	**vía, -ae,** *f.*	*via*duct, ob*vi*ous
farmhouse	**vílla, -ae,** *f.*	*villa*, *vill*age
he-carries[3]; *they*-carry	**pórtat**[3]; **pórtant**[3]	*port*er, ex*port*
he-praises; *they*-praise	**laúdat; laúdant**	*laud*able
he-lives (-in); *they*-live (-in)	**hábitat; hábitant**	in*habit*, in*habit*ant
he-walks; *they*-walk	**ámbulat; ámbulant**	*amble*, per*ambul*ate
he-looks (-at); *they*-look (-at)	**spéctat; spéctant**	in*spect*, *spect*ator
he-stands; *they*-stand	**stat; stant**	*sta*tion, *sta*ble
he-saves; *they*-save	**sérvat; sérvant**	pre*serve*
he-is; *they*-are	**est; sunt**	

[1] Beside each Latin word one or more *related English words* are given, with the Latin element italicized. It will often be easy to give others. English words, when their relation to Latin is recognized, assume a clear meaning, and we can use them correctly. Some Latin words appear *changed*, others *unchanged* in English. See **229** ff.

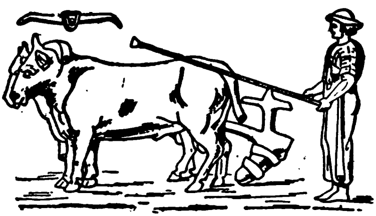
[2] If any "related English word" is not familiar, consult a dictionary.

[3] Also *she*-carries, *it*-carries. **-t** (*he*, *she*, or *it*) is the *personal ending* of the third person singular; **-nt** (*they*), that of the third person plural.

where?	**ubi** (*adv.*)	to, near	**ad** (*prep. w. Acc.*)
not	**nōn** (*adv.*)	in, on	**in** (*prep. w. Abl.*)
and	**et** (*conj.*)	into	**in** (*prep. w. Acc.*)
both . . . and	**et . . . et**		

17. Suggestions for Learning a Vocabulary. — 1. Pronounce each Latin word carefully and learn its English meaning (the "Related English Words" will often help you). 2. Cover the column of Latin words and write *from memory* the Latin equivalent of each English word, indicating the pronunciation. 3. Compare your list of Latin words with the book, and correct any errors. 4. Decline **silva**, *forest*, and **porta**, *gate*. See Suggestions for Study, p. xiv.

18. Subject, Direct Object, Agreement of Verbs, Possessive Genitive. — In the English sentence, *The sailor praises the farmer*, the Subject is the *sailor* and the Object is the *farmer*. The Subject is in the Nominative case, the Object is in the Objective case. The Nominative and Objective cases of a noun have the same form. In an English sentence the Subject is usually placed first, and the Object is placed after the verb. If we change the order of the words to *The farmer praises the sailor*, the meaning of the sentence is changed.



Agricola

In Latin, as we have seen, words have *many changes in form* to express different relations; consequently in a Latin sentence the order of the words may be freely changed. In the sentence, **Agricola nautam laudat**, *The farmer praises the sailor*, if we change the order to **Nautam agricola laudat**, the meaning remains the *same*,[1] for the endings of the words are *signals*, **-a** showing the Subject, **-am** showing the Object.

[1] There is a different emphasis: *It is the sailor that the farmer praises.*

In Latin as in English, the Verb agrees with the Subject in person and number. Therefore, if we wish to say in Latin *The sailor stands near the gate*, we must raise our signals, thus: **Naut** [a] (Subject); **ad port** [am] (Acc. with prep. **ad**); **sta** [t] (3rd pers. sing.).

In Latin the Genitive, like the Possessive in English, is used to indicate the possessor. *The sailor praises the farmer's farmhouse* becomes: **Naut** [a] (Subject); **vill** [am] (Object); **agricol** [ae] (Possessor); **lauda** [t] (3rd pers. sing.). Similarly, *The sailors praise the farmers' farmhouses* becomes in Latin: **Naut** [ae] (Subject); **vill** [as] (Object); **agricol** [arum] (Possessor); **lauda** [nt] (3rd pers. pl.).

19. Rules. — 1. The *Subject* of a verb is in the Nominative case.

2. The *Direct Object* of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case.

3. A verb agrees with its Subject in person and number.

4. The Genitive is used with a noun to indicate the possessor, and is then called a ***Possessive Genitive.*** It is equivalent to the English Possessive case.

20. Exercise. — Express in Latin by raising the signals: 1. *The farmer is-walking* (or *walks*) *in the road.* **Agricol** [ ] **in vi** [ ] **ambula** [ ]. 2. *The farmers are-standing near the farmhouse.* **Agricol** [ ] **ad vill** [ ] **sta** [ ]. 3. *The farmhouse of the farmer* (or *the farmer's farmhouse*) *is near the forest.* **Vill** [ ] **agricol** [ ] **ad silv** [ ] **es** [ ]. 4. *The farmhouses of the farmers* (or *the farmers' farmhouses*) *are near the road.* **Vill** [ ] **agricol** [ ] **ad vi** [ ] **su** [ ].

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

21. Suggestions for Translating Latin Sentences. — Pronounce each sentence carefully; then tell the case of each noun and why the case is used; next tell the person, number, and tense of the verb; finally translate the sentence. Close the book, convert your translation back into Latin, and write the Latin sentence, marking the long vowels.

This method of study will enable us in the recitation to translate the sentences at hearing, with the books closed.

22. 1. Nauta ad portam stat. Agricola in viā ambulat. Corbulam (*basket*) portat. Nauta agricolam spectat.

2. Ad agricolam ambulat. Agricola pecūniam servat. Nauta pecūniam nōn servat.



A Roman Coin of Augustus

3. Ubi habitat agricola? Agricola in Italiā habitat. Vīlla agricolae ad silvam est. Nauta in Italiā nōn habitat.

4. Ubi sunt nauta et agricola? In viā sunt. Ad vīllam ambulant.

5. In vīllā est fīlia (*daughter*) agricolae. Agricolam exspectat (*is-expecting*).

6. Ubi stat nauta? Ubi est agricola? Ubi sunt nauta et agricola? Ubi habitant nauta et agricola?



A Gate of Ancient Pompeii. (Pompeii, a city near Naples, was buried by an eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in 79 A.D.)

Victōria patientiam corōnat — *Victory crowns patience*

CHAPTER II

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *VOCŌ* · PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · INDIRECT OBJECT · QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

FIRST SECTION

23. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline **terra, porta, silva, agricola.** 2. Test yourself on Vocabulary I. 3. Review the Translation Exercise (**22**) for oral and written work.



A Roman Boy

24. Present Indicative Active. — In English the Present Indicative Active is the verb in its simplest form with the personal pronouns, thus: Singular 1. *I call*, 2. *you call*, 3. *he calls;* Plural 1. *we call*, 2. *you call*, 3. *they call.* The person and number of the subject are expressed by the *personal pronouns.* The form of the verb is the same, except in the third person singular (*calls*).

In Latin, however, a verb expresses person and number by means of *personal endings*, as **-t** in **vocat,** *he-calls*, and **-nt** in **vocant,** *they-call.* Each person of the singular and plural has a different form of the verb. Verbs of the First Conjugation are conjugated as follows:

Singular		"Progressive Present"	"Emphatic Present"	Endings
1st **vócō,**	*I-call*	*I-am-calling*	*I-do-call*	**-ō**
2nd **vócās,**	*you-call*	*you-are-calling*	*you-do-call*	**-s**
3rd **vócat,**	*he-calls*	*he-is-calling*	*he-does-call*	**-t**
Plural				
1st **vocā́mus,**	*we-call*	*we-are-calling*	*we-do-call*	**-mus**
2nd **vocā́tis,**	*you-call*	*you-are-calling*	*you-do-call*	**-tis**
3rd **vócant,**	*they-call*	*they-are-calling*	*they-do-call*	**-nt**

Note. — The *three* forms of the English Present tense are expressed by but *one* form in Latin.

Observe: 1. The fundamental part of a Latin verb is the *verb root;* thus in **vocat,** the verb root is **voc.** The vowel **a** (between the verb root and the personal ending) is characteristic of verbs of the First Conjugation. 2. In **vocō,** *I-call,* the personal ending is added directly to the verb root, the **a** being absorbed by the ō. 3. The connecting vowel is ā except before final **-t** and **-nt** (as in **vocat, vocant**). 4. **-mŭs** and **-tĭs** should be carefully pronounced as *short.*

25. Suggestions for Learning a Tense of a Verb. — 1. Pronounce carefully and give the meanings of each form of the Present Indicative Active of **vocō.** 2. Close the book and repeat the conjugation several times from memory. 3. Write the Latin forms, marking long vowels and the accent. 4. Compare your written work with the book and correct any errors. 5. Conjugate the present tense of **laudō,** *I-praise,* and of **culpō,** *I-blame.* Practice for accuracy and speed. See pp. xiv-xv.

26. The Present Indicative of **sum** is conjugated as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
1st Pers.	**sum,**	*I-am*	**súmus,**	*we-are*
2nd Pers.	**es,**	*you-are* (or *thou-art*)	**éstis,**	*you-are*
3rd Pers.	**est,**	*he* (or *she* or *it*) *-is*	**sunt,**	*they-are*

Observe: Here the vowels are all short. The personal ending of the first person singular is **-m**; the other endings are the same as in the Present Indicative Active of **vocō**.

Suggestions for Study. — See **25**.

27. Exercise. — (*a*) Pronounce, and give the *person*, *number*, *tense*, and *meaning* of: laudā**s**, laudā**tis**, laud**ō**, laudā**mus**, lauda**t**, lauda**nt**, culpa**t**, culpā**tis**, culpa**nt**, culp**ō**, culpā**mus**, culpā**s**, vocā**mus**, voc**ō**, vocā**s**, voca**t**, voca**nt**, vocā**tis**.

(*b*) Pronounce and translate: 1. Vīll**am** agricol**ae** spectā**s**; spectā**mus**. 2. Ubi habitā**tis**? 3. In Americā habitā**mus**. 4. Agricola naut**am** in vīll**am** vocat. 5. Vīll**a** agricol**ae** est in Italiā. 6. Agricol**a** et nauta in viā **sunt**. 7. Ubi est vīlla agricolae? 8. Vīlla agricol**ae** est ad silv**am**. 9. Fīli**a** agricol**ae** et agricol**am** et naut**am** in vīll**am** vocat. 10. Ubi e**s**? ubi es**tis**? 11. In scholā (*school*) sum**us**; su**m**.

SECOND SECTION

28. Suggestions for Study. — See **17.**

VOCABULARY II

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
story	**fābula, -ae,** *f.*	*fable*, *fabul*ous
girl	**puélla, -ae,** *f.*	
star	**stélla, -ae,** *f.*	*Stella*,[1] con*stell*ation
I-love	**ámō**	*Amy*,[1] *am*iable
I-walk	**ámbulō**	See **16**
I-encourage	**cōnfírmō**	*confirm*, *confirm*ation
I-please	**dēléctō**	*delect*able, *delect*ation
I-give	**dō**	*dat*e, *dat*ive, *data*
I-live(-in), inhabit	**hábitō**	See **16**
I-tell	**nárrō**	*narr*ate, *narr*ative
I-carry	**pórtō**	See **16**
I-look-at	**spéctō**	See **16**
I-expect, wait, await	**exspéctō**	*expect*ation
I-stand	**stō**	See **16**
who? what?	**quis** (*interrog. pron.*), *m. and f.*; **quid**, *n.*	

[1] Some of us have names that have come from Latin.

29. Indirect Object. — In the English sentence, *The farmer gives money to the sailor*, what the farmer gives (*money*) is the Direct Object; the person to whom he gives it (*the sailor*) is the Indirect Object. The Indirect Object is used especially with verbs meaning to *give*, *say*, and *do*. The prepositions *to* and *for* used with the Indirect Object are often omitted in English, thus: *The farmer gives the sailor money.* In this case, we see that the Indirect Object *precedes* the Direct Object.

In Latin the relation *to* or *for* is expressed by the Dative case; hence we say: **Agricola nautae pecūniam dat,** *The farmer gives money to-the-sailor*, or *The farmer gives the sailor money.*

Note. — In this Latin sentence we raise four signals: *farmer* is the Subject, so we raise the signal of the *Nominative* case, **agricol**[a]; *money* is the Object, so we raise the signal of the *Accusative*, **pecūni**[am]; the Indirect Object expresses the relation *to-the-sailor*, so we raise the signal for the *Dative*, **naut**[ae]; and lastly we raise a signal to show that the verb *gives* is third person singular, **da**[t].

30. Exercise. — Express in Latin by raising the signals: 1. *The sailor tells* (or *is-telling*) *stories to the farmer*, **Naut**[ ] **agricol**[ ] **fābul**[ ] **nārra**[ ]. 2. *The farmer is-not-telling the sailor a story*, **Agricol**[ ] **naut**[ ] **fābul**[ ] **nōn nārra**[ ].

31. Questions and Answers. — *Questions in English.* A question not introduced by an interrogative word[1] is sometimes indicated merely by the voice, thus: *The farmer is in the farmhouse?* But usually such a question is indicated both by the *voice* and the *order of words*, thus: (1) *Is the farmer in the farmhouse?* The verb (or its auxiliary) *precedes* the Subject.

---

[1] Interrogative words are (1) Pronouns, as *who? what?* (2) Adjectives, as *which? what?* and (3) Adverbs, as *where? when? how?*

If an *affirmative* answer is expected, the question becomes: (2) *Is not the farmer in the farmhouse?*

If a *negative* answer is expected, the question becomes: (3) *The farmer is not in the farmhouse, is he?*[1]

Questions in Latin. A question not introduced by an interrogative word (such as **quis**, *who?* **quid**, *what?* **ubi**, *where?*) is usually indicated by **-ne** added to the *first* word (usually the *verb*) of the question, thus: (1) **Estne agricola in vīllā?** *Is the farmer in the farmhouse?*

If an *affirmative* answer is expected, the question is usually introduced by **nōnne** followed by the important word (usually the verb) of the question, thus: (2) **Nōnne est agricola in vīllā?** *Is not the farmer in the farmhouse?*

If a *negative* answer is expected, the question is usually introduced by **num** followed by the important word (usually the verb) of the question, thus: (3) **Num est agricola in vīllā?** *The farmer is not in the farmhouse, is he?*

NOTE.—In a question the important word is usually the verb. If, however, we wish (in 1) to emphasize some other word in the question, that word, with **-ne** attached, is placed first, thus: **Agricolane est in vīllā?** *Is the farmer in the farmhouse?* Similarly: **Nōnne agricola est in vīllā? Num agricola est in vīllā?**

Answers to Questions. The answer *yes* is usually expressed in Latin by repeating the verb of the question; the answer *no*, by repeating the verb with a negative. Often an *affirmative* answer is expressed by **sīc** or **ita** or **certē** or **sānē**; a *negative* answer by **nōn** or **minimē**. Thus: QUESTION: **Estne fīlia agricolae in vīllā?** *Is the farmer's daughter in the farmhouse?* ANSWERS: *AFFIRMATIVE*—**Est**, *yes* (lit. *she is*); **Sīc** or **Ita**, *yes* (lit. *so*); **Certē** or **Sānē**,

[1] The simple question, *Is the farmer in the farmhouse?* may, with the aid of voice and manner, be made to indicate whether *yes* or *no* is the expected answer, or whether either is possible.

yes (lit. *certainly*); *NEGATIVE*—**Nōn est,** *no* (lit. *she is not*); **Nōn** (here for **nōn est**), *no*; **Minimē,** *no* (lit. *least*).

32. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. Where is the sailor? 2. Is the sailor at the gate? 3. Does the farmer give money to the sailor? 4. Do you not praise the farmer? 5. You do not blame the farmer, do you?

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

33. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Silv**a** agricol**ae** naut**am** dēlecta**t**. Naut**a** et silv**am** et vīll**am** lauda**t**. Vīll**am** specta**nt**. Puell**a** agricol**am** voca**t**. In vīll**am** ambula**nt** agricol**a** et naut**a**.



A Roman Girl

2. Fīli**a** agricol**ae** cēn**am** (*dinner*) para**t** (*is-preparing*). Naut**a** agricol**ae** fābul**am** nārra**t**. Agricol**a** naut**am** cōnfirma**t**.

3. Naut**a** et agricol**a** et fīli**a** stell**ās** specta**nt**. Quis lauda**t** stell**ās**? Puell**a** stell**ās** lauda**t**. Quid lauda**t** puell**a**? Dēlecta**nt**ne stell**ae** agricol**am**? Et agricol**ās** et naut**ās** stell**ae** dēlecta**nt**.

4. Quid naut**am** dēlecta**t**? Dēlecta**t**ne pecūni**a** naut**am**? Pecūni**am**ne exspecta**t**? Da**t**ne agricol**a** pecūni**am**? Nōnne laudā**mus** agricol**am**? Num naut**am** laudā**s**?

5. Quis silv**am** lauda**t**? Num naut**a** terr**am** lauda**t**? Pecūni**am**ne naut**a** exspecta**t**? Ubi serva**t** agricol**a** pecūni**am**? Pecūni**am** in vīll**ā** serva**t**.

B. (See **34.**) 1. The farmer is-standing at the gate. They-call the sailor to the gate. They-are-giving money to the sailor. 2. The girl is-praising the stars. Do stars please sailors? 3. Where are the farmer and the sailor? They-are-

walking to the gate. The farmer is-telling a story to the sailor. 4. Is the farmer telling a story to the sailor? Does the farmer's story please the sailor? 5. Where does the sailor live? He-does-not-live in Italy, does he? He-lives in Sicily. 6. We-praise the farmer. Do-you-praise the sailor?

34. Suggestions for Translating English Sentences. — (1) Read the sentence aloud, then repeat the sentence, grouping the words: *The-farmer | is-standing | at-the-gate.* (2) Give the English word groups in the Latin order: *The-farmer | at-the-gate | is-standing.* (3) Express in Latin the first word group (*the-farmer*), with the signal for the Nominative singular (since *farmer* is the Subject), **Agricol**[a]; then express the second word group (*at-the-gate*), **ad port**[am] (since **ad** governs the Accusative case); finally express the third word group (*is-standing*), with the signal for the third person singular of the Present tense, **sta**[t] (since the verb is in the Present tense and must agree with the Subject in person and number). (4) Repeat the Latin sentence several times, with a slight pause after each part of the sentence; then write it, marking long vowels and the accent of each word.



The Parthenon, a Temple at Athens
(From the Restoration in the Metropolitan Museum, New York)

Industria est initium sapientiae—*Industry is the beginning of wisdom*

CHAPTER III

SECOND DECLENSION · PREDICATE NOUN

FIRST SECTION

35. Preliminary Review (for accuracy and speed). — 1. Decline **terra, agricola,** and **nauta,** associating with each form its meaning. 2. Conjugate the Present tense of **vocō, laudō, culpō,** and **sum,** associating with each form its meaning. 3. Review Vocabulary II (**28**). 4. Review the Translation Exercises (**33**) for oral and written work in class.

36. Second Declension. — Nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-us,** as **hórtus,** *garden,* are mostly *masculine.* Nouns ending in **-um,** as **témplum,** *temple,* are *neuter.*

hórtus, m., *garden* [Base : **hort-**]				Endings	
	Singular		*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**hórtus,** *a-garden*		**hórtī,** *gardens*	**-us**	**-ī**
Gen.	**hórtī,** *OF-a-garden*		**hortōrum,** *OF-gardens*	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**hórtō,** *TO (FOR)-a-garden*		**hórtīs,** *TO (FOR)-gardens*	**-ō**	**-īs**
Acc.	**hórtum,** *a-garden*		**hórtōs,** *gardens*	**-um**	**-ōs**
Abl.	**hórtō,** *FROM-a-garden* [1]		**hórtīs,** *FROM-gardens* [1]	**-ō**	**-īs**

Note.—The Vocative singular of nouns of the Second Declension in **-us** ends in **-ĕ,** as **hórtĕ,** *O garden!* **amīcĕ,** *O friend!*

[1] See footnotes 3 and 4, page 17.

témplum, n., *temple* [Base : **templ-**]			Endings	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**témplum**, *a-temple*	**témpla**, *temples*	**-um**	**-a**
Gen.	**témplī**, *OF-a-temple*	**templṓrum**, *OF-temples*	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**témplō**, *TO (FOR)-a-temple*	**témplīs**, *TO (FOR)-temples*	**-ō**	**-īs**
Acc.	**témplum**, *a-temple*	**témpla**, *temples*	**-um**	**-a**
Abl.	**témplō**, *FROM-a-temple* [1]	**témplīs**, *FROM-temples* [1]	**-ō**	**-īs**

Observe: 1. The *Dative* and *Ablative plural* of the First and Second Declensions have the same case ending (**-īs**).



A Temple at Pompeii

2. The *Dative* and *Ablative singular* of the Second Declension have the same case ending (-ō). 3. The *Genitive singular* and *Nominative plural* of **hortus** have the same case ending (-ī). 4. The *Nominative* and *Accusative singular* of **templum** have

[1] See footnotes 3 and 4, page 17.

the same case ending (**-um**); and the *Nominative* and *Accusative plural* have the same case ending (**-a**).

37. **Suggestions for Study.** — See 14. Decline **amīcus**, m., *friend*, and **oppidum**, n., *town*.

38. **Nouns of the Second Declension Ending in *-ius* and *-ium*.**— Nouns in **-ius**, m. (as **fīlius**, *son*), and in **-ium**, n. (as **praémium**, *reward*), are regular, except that the Genitive singular is usually shortened, thus: Gen. **fīliī** becomes **fīlī**, *of-the-son;* Gen. **praémiī** becomes **praémī**, *of-the-reward.* Also the Vocative of nouns in **-ius** is shortened, thus: Voc. **fīliĕ** becomes **fīlī**, *O son!* These two cases, therefore, are *irregular* and should be noted carefully. In the Genitive and Vocative the accent remains on the same syllable as in the Nominative, thus: **aedifícium**, n., *building*, Gen. **aedifícī**, *of-the-building.*

39. **Exercise.** — (*a*) Write, with meanings, the declension of **fīlius**, m., and **praémium**, n., marking long vowels and the accent. *Repeat the declension aloud.*

(*b*) Pronounce and give the *case* (or possible cases) and the *meaning* (or possible meanings) of: 1. hortī, hortīs, hortō, hortōs, hortōrum, horte. 2. templa, templum, templīs, templō. 3. fīliō, fīliī, fīlī; fīliōs, fīliōrum, fīlium.

SECOND SECTION

VOCABULARY III

40. **Suggestions for Study.** — Practice for accuracy and speed.

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
inhabitant	**íncola, -ae**, *m.* or *f.*	*col*ony, *col*onial
friend	**amīcus, -ī**, *m.*	*amic*able, *amic*ably
horse	**équus, -ī**, *m.*	*equ*estrian
Manlius	**Mānlius, Mānlī**, *m.*	
slave	**sérvus, -ī**, *m.*	*serv*ant, *serv*ice
building	**aedifícium, aedifícī**, *n.*	*edifice*

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
Marcus	**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*	*Mark*
son	**fīlius, fīlī**, *m.*	*fili*al, af*fili*ate,
daughter	**fīlia**,[1] **-ae**, *f.*	af*fili*ation
gift	**dōnum**, -ī, *n.*	*don*ation, *don*ate, *don*or
grain	**frūméntum**, -ī, *n.*	
town	**óppidum**, -ī, *n.*	
reward	**praémium, praémī**, *n.*	*premium*
labor, suffer	**labōrō**	*labor*ious, col*labor*ate

41. Predicate Noun. — In the English sentence, *Marcus is the son of the farmer*, the noun *son*, in the predicate, denotes the same person as *Marcus*, the subject. In this sentence the word *son* is called a Predicate Nominative, because it is in the predicate and agrees in case with the subject. This sentence becomes in Latin, **Mārcus est fīlius agricolae.**

42. Rule. — In Latin, as in English, a noun in the predicate describing the subject, and *denoting the same person or thing*, agrees with the subject in case, and is called a *Predicate Noun.*

43. Exercise. — Pronounce and translate (see **21**). 1. Agricola est in hortō. Ubi est hortus agricolae? Estne hortus agricolae ad silvam? 2. Agricola amīcōs exspectat. Amīcī agricolae in oppidō sunt. Templa oppidī laudant. Nōnne laudās templum oppidī? 3. Quid est in hortō agricolae? In hortīs agricolārum sunt rosae (*roses*). Num culpās agricolās? 4. Fīlius agricolae aedificia oppidī laudat. Fīliī agricolārum in hortīs labōrant (*work*). Fīliōs agricolārum laudāmus. 5. Agricola praemia fīliīs dat. 6. Mārcus amīcus est nautae. Incolae oppidī amīcī sunt agricolārum.

---

[1] The Dative and Ablative plural are **fīliābus** to distinguish this word from the corresponding forms of **fīlius**; cf. **Agricola fīliīs et fīliābus praemia dat**, *The farmer gives rewards to (his) sons and daughters.*

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

44. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Agricola in hortō est. Mārcus est fīlius agricolae. Et agricola et fīlius in hortō sunt.

2. Servus agricolae in oppidō est. Frūmentum in oppidum portat.

3. Mānlius est amīcus agricolae. In oppidō habitat. Servō agricolae pecūniam dat.

4. Ubi est templum? Templum in oppidō est. Templum incolās oppidī dēlectat.

5. Agricola est amīcus Mānlī. Agricola amīcum exspectat. Amīcus in viā ambulat. Ad portam est.



Equus
(A Roman Horse of Bronze)

6. Amīcus et hortum et equum agricolae laudat. Ubi, Mārce, sunt servī? Servī in hortō labōrant.

B. (See **34.**) 1. The son of the farmer is-working in the garden. What does the farmer give (his) son? He gives (his) son a horse and money. Does the horse please the farmer's son? Yes.

2. Farmers give rewards to (their) sons and daughters.

3. The farmer's friends praise the buildings, garden, and slaves.

4. What are the slaves carrying to town? They are carrying grain.

5. Does the sailor praise the farmer? Does not the sailor live in Sicily? He is not in town to-day (**hodiē**), is he?

Vitam gubernat Deus — *God is the helmsman of life*

CHAPTER IV

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *VOCŌ* · PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

FIRST SECTION

45. Preliminary Review. — A SPEED TEST: Before you begin to decline a noun or to conjugate a verb, place the point of your pencil above the second hand of your watch; when you have given all the forms, see how far the second hand has moved. 1. Decline **terra, incola, fīlia, hortus, amīcus, servus, templum, oppidum, dōnum, fīlius, praemium, aedificium**. With practice one should be able to decline *six* to *twelve* nouns in a minute. 2. Conjugate the Present tense of **vocō, servō, dō, sum.** 3. Review the Translation Exercises (**44**) for oral and written work.



A Greek Temple in Sicily, Rome's First Province

46. Perfect Indicative Active of *Vocō*. — A Latin verb changes in form to express a change of *tense*. The Per-

fect Indicative Active of **vocō**, *I-call*, is **vocāvī**, *I-called*, or *I-have-called*. It is formed thus: **voc** (verb root) + **ā** (characteristic vowel of the First Conjugation) + **v** (tense sign of the Perfect) + **ī** (personal ending). The Perfect Indicative Active has its own personal endings. Verbs of the First Conjugation are conjugated in this tense as follows:

	Singular	"Past Tense"	"Present Perfect"	Personal Endings
1st	vocā́vī,	*I-called*[1]	*I-have-called*	**-ī**
2d	vocāvístī,	*you-called*	*you-have-called*[2]	**-istī**
3d	vocā́vit,	*he-called*	*he-has-called*	**-it**
	Plural			
1st	vocā́vimus,	*we-called*	*we-have-called*	**-imus**
2d	vocāvístis,	*you-called*	*you-have-called*	**-istis**
3d	vocāvērunt, or vocāvēre	*they-called*	*they-have-called*	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**

Observe: The Latin Perfect Indicative is used in *two* ways: (*a*) It may express a single past action, thus: **vocāvī**, *I-called* (English "Past tense"), or *I-did-call* (English "Emphatic Past"); (*b*) It may express the action of the verb as completed at the present time (the time of speaking), thus: **vocāvī**, *I-have-called* (English "Present Perfect").

47. Rule. — In Latin the *Perfect Indicative*, like the English *Past tense*, may express an action or state as in the past; like the English *Present Perfect*, it may express an action or state as completed at the present (the time of speaking).

48. Suggestions for Study. — See **25**. Conjugate **laudāvī**, *I-praised*, or *I-have-praised*; **culpāvī**, *I-blamed*, or *I-have-blamed*, and **dĕdī**,[3] *I-gave*, or *I-have-given*.

[1] Or *I-did-call*, etc. ("Emphatic Past"). [2] Or *thou-hast-called*.

[3] **Dedī** and a few other verbs of the First Conjugation form the Perfect Indicative irregularly.

49. The Perfect Indicative of **sum** is conjugated as follows:

	Singular		Plural
1st	**fúī,**	*I-was*, or *I-have-been*	**fúimus,** *we-were*, or *we-have-been*
2nd	**fuístī,**	*you-were*, or *you-have-been*	**fuístis,** *you-were*, or *you-have-been*
3rd	**fúit,**	*he* (or *she* or *it*)-*was*, or *has-been*	**fuērunt,** *they-were*, or *they-have-been* or **fuēre**

Suggestions for Study. — Practice for accuracy and speed; then write each form, marking long vowels and the accent.

50. Exercise. — Pronounce and give the *person*, *number*, *tense*, and *meaning* of: vocās, vocāvistī; vocātis, vocāvistis; vocāmus, vocāvimus; vocant, vocāvērunt (vocāvēre); vocat, vocāvit; sum, fuī; es, fuistī; sumus, fuimus; estis, fuistis; sunt, fuērunt.

SECOND SECTION

VOCABULARY IV

51. Suggestions for Study. — Practice for accuracy and speed.

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
island	**ínsula, -ae,** *f.*	*insul*ar, *insul*ate
fatherland	**pátria, -ae,** *f.*	*patri*ot, *patri*otic
Fabius	**Fábius, Fábī,** *m.*	
wall	**mū́rus, -ī,** *m.*	*mur*al
ally, comrade	**sócius, sócī,** *m.*	*soci*al, *soci*ety
aid, help	**auxílium, auxílī,** *n.*	*auxili*ary
war	**béllum, -ī,** *n.*	*bell*icose, *bell*igerent
sail	**nā́vigō**	*navig*ate, *navig*able
get ready, prepare (for)	**párō**	com*pare*, pre*pare*
ask	**rógō**	inter*rog*ative

to-day	**hódiē** (*adv.*)	and	**-que** (*translated before the word to which it is affixed*)
now	**nunc** (*adv.*)		
at once	**státim** (*adv.*)		
and also	**átque (ac)**	always	**semper** (*adv.*)

52. Exercise. — Pronounce and translate the following (see **21**): 1. Amīcī hortum agricolae laudant; laudāvērunt. Agricola amīcōs exspectat; exspectāvit. 2. Fuitne fīlius agricolae in hortō? Et fīlius et fīlia agricolae in vīllā fuērunt (fuēre). 3. Quid nārrāvit nauta agricolae? Num fābulae nautae agricolam dēlectāvērunt? 4. Ubi, Mārce, sunt servī agricolae? Servī frūmentum in oppidum portant; Mārcus fīlius agricolae fuit. 5. Incolae oppidī auxilium parāvērunt.

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

53. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Fabius agricola et Mārcus fīlius in hortō labōrant. Fīlia in vīllā est.

2. Nauta hodiē in oppidum ambulāvit. Ad Siciliam nāvigāvit. Sicilia est īnsula. Nauta pecūniam servāvit.

3. Mūrus et aedificia oppidī nautam dēlectāvērunt. Templum amāvit. Incolae et portās et mūrum oppidī laudāvērunt.

4. Bellum nunc et exspectant et parant. Patriam amant. Agricolās in oppidum vocāvērunt.



A Coin of Ancient Syracuse, in Sicily

5. Agricolae sociī sunt. Semper fuērunt. Auxilium dědērunt. Incolae oppidī agricolās laudant.

B. (See **34.**) 1. Manlius has always been a friend of the farmer. He lives in town. We asked the farmer.

2. The sailor sailed to-day to (his) native land. Sicily is the sailor's native land. Where is Sicily? Is Sicily an island? I asked the sailor.

3. Where are the farmer's slaves? They now are working in the garden.



The Eternal City: Rome and the Tiber

St. Peter's — Tomb of the Emperor Hadrian

4. To-day they carried grain to (*i. e.* into) town. Are the inhabitants strengthening the wall of the town?

5. Do the sailors save money?

6. Manlius is the farmer's friend, and is telling stories about (dē *w. Abl.*) sailors.

THE TIBER

(*Optional Reading*)[1]

54. The *Tiber* is rather more than 200 miles long and at Rome, 22 miles from its mouth, is about 300 feet wide and from 12 to 18 feet in depth. The poets call it "the yellow Tiber" because the swift river carries so much sediment. More than 130 floods of the Tiber are recorded and these have cost thousands of lives in and near Rome. In the flood of 1598 A.D. the water was more than 20 feet deep in the heart of the city at the Pantheon. (Cf. p. 292.) Rome is now protected from such danger by a great embankment which cost many millions of dollars.



The Falls at Tivoli
(On a tributary of the Tiber and in the country of the Roman poet Horace)

[1] *Optional Readings.*—In order to gain the most from our study of the Latin language we need to know as much as possible about the ancient Romans,—their city, their homes, their dress, their architecture and art, their religion, and the lives and character of their great men. Brief readings upon these topics have, therefore, been placed at intervals throughout the book. In connection with these readings look for the pictures which illustrate them, and refer to the map of Rome, p. 100.

Post proelium praemium — *After the battle the reward*

CHAPTER V (REVIEW)

WORD LIST

55. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Pronounce each *noun* carefully, and give the *Genitive*, *gender*, and *meaning*. If a noun is starred, decline it rapidly, associating with each form its meaning. 2. Pronounce each *verb* carefully and give the *meaning*. Conjugate starred verbs in the Present and Perfect tenses of the Indicative Active. 3. Pronounce the remaining words of the list, giving with each its *meaning*.

56.

NOUNS	NOUNS	NOUNS	VERBS	ADVERBS
*agricola	vīlla	dōnum	dēlectō	certē
fābula	———	frūmentum	*dō	hodiē
fīlia	*amīcus	*oppidum	exspectō	nōn
incola	equus	*praemium	habitō	nunc
īnsula	Fabius	*templum	labōrō	semper
Italia	fīlius		laudō	statim
nauta	*hortus		nārrō	ubi
patria	Mānlius	PRONOUNS	nāvigō	
pecūnia	Mārcus	quid	parō	
porta	mūrus	quis	portō	PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS
puella	servus		rogō	
Sicilia	socius		servō	
silva	———	VERBS	spectō	ad
stella	*aedificium	ambulō	stō	et
*terra	auxilium	*amō	*sum	et . . . et
via	bellum	cōnfirmō	*vocō	in

SENTENCES ILLUSTRATING SYNTAX IN CHAPTERS I–IV

57. (See **21**). 1. Mānli**us** in oppidō habitat. 2. Mārc**us** equu**m** amat. 3. Fabi**us** equu**m** fīliō dat. 4. Templ**um** incol**ās** oppidī dēlectat. 5. Mānli**us** est amīc**us** agricol**ae**. 6. Amīcī Fabī in oppidō sunt. 7. Fīli**us** agricol**ae** ad vīll**am** ambulat. In oppid**um** ambulāvit. 8. Et fīli**um** et fīli**am** laud**ant**. 9. Ubi est Mārc**us**? Estne in hortō? Nōnne est in vīllā? 10. Num naut**a** pecūni**am** servāv**it**?

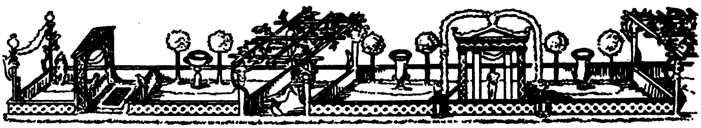
Errāre est hūmānum — *To err is human*

CHAPTER VI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS · PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB · AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

FIRST SECTION

58. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline **terra, puella, stella, hortus, equus, templum, bellum, fīlius, auxilium.** 2. Conjugate the Present and Perfect tenses of **vocō, labōrō, nāvigō.** 3. Give yourself a speed test on these nouns and verbs.



Hortus

59. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. — In English, an adjective does not change in form except in its comparison.[1] Thus the adjective *good* remains unchanged in the phrases *a good farmer* (m.), *a good girl* (f.), and *the good gifts* (n.). Here the adjective describes nouns of different gender and number, yet the form of the adjective is unchanged. An *attributive* adjective is attached directly to a noun, as *the good farmer.* A *predicate* adjective is placed in the predicate to describe the subject, as *The farmer is good.*

In Latin, adjectives, like nouns, change in form, and usually distinguish three genders. When the adjective is used with a noun, the adjective must show, by its case ending, the same gender, number, and case as the noun. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have in the masculine gender the case endings of **hortus**, m.; in the feminine the case endings of **terra**, f.; in the neuter

[1] *e.g., high, higher, highest; good, better, best.*

the case endings of **templum**, n. Each case, therefore, has three genders and three forms, thus: Nominative singular, — bónus, m., *good;* bóna, f., *good;* bónum, n., *good.*

In Latin we say (in the Nominative singular): agricola (m.) bonus (m.), *the good farmer;* puella (f.) bona (f)., *the good girl;* dōnum (n.) bonum (n.), *the good gift.* An attributive adjective is usually placed *after* the noun. A predicate adjective, as in **Agricola est bonus,** *The farmer is good,* is often separated from its noun.

60. Rule. — An attributive adjective agrees with its noun in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. A predicate adjective agrees with the word to which it refers in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

61. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are declined like **bonus**:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bónus	bóna	bónum	bónī	bónae	bóna
Gen.	bónī	bónae	bónī	bonṓrum	bonā́rum	bonṓrum
Dat.	bónō	bónae	bónō	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs
Acc.	bónum	bónam	bónum	bónōs	bónās	bóna
Abl.	bónō	bónā	bónō	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs

Note. — The Vocative singular of the masculine is **bonĕ**, as **amīcĕ bonĕ**, *O good friend!;* elsewhere the Vocative is the same as the Nominative.

62. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Give first *all* forms of the Nominative singular, thus: **bónus** (m.), **bóna** (f.), **bónum** (n.); then *all* forms of the Genitive singular, thus: **bónī** (m.), **bónae** (f.), **bónī** (n.); then *all* forms of the Dative, *all* forms of the Accusative, and *all* of the Ablative singular. Decline the plural in the same way, giving *all* forms of each case before proceeding to the next. 2. With the book closed, write the declension. 3. Repeat rapidly several times the *endings* alone, thus: *Nom.* **-us, -a, -um**; *Gen.* **-ī, -ae, -ī**; *Dat.* **-ō, -ae, -ō**, etc.

4. Like **bonus, -a, -um** decline aloud **nóvus, -a, -um** (*new*), **cértus, -a, -um** (*certain*), and **mágnus, -a, -um** (*great*). *Practice for accuracy and speed.*

63. Exercise. — (*a*) Decline, *with increasing speed*, each of the following nouns side by side with the proper form of its adjective: 1. **agricola bonus**; 2. **vīlla nova**; 3. **templum magnum**; 4. **fīlius bonus**; 5. **praemium certum.**

(*b*) Pronounce and translate: 1. In vīllā parvā agricolae; in hortō agricolae bonī; hodiē et agricola bonus et fīlius bonus agricolae labōrant; fīliī agricolārum bonōrum bonī sunt.

2. Mārcus servīs bonīs praemia dat; dedit; praemia bona servōs bonōs dēlectant; dēlectāvērunt. Fīlia agricolae bona rosās laudat.

3. Fābula nautae agricolam bonum dēlectāvit. Estne Sicilia īnsula magna?

4. Mūrus oppidī parvī est magnus; aedificia oppidōrum parvōrum sunt parva.

5. Fuitne nauta in oppidō parvō? Nauta aedificia parva oppidī laudāvit.

SECOND SECTION

64. VOCABULARY VI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
high, deep	**áltus, -a, -um**	ex*alt*, *alt*itude, *alto*
fixed, certain	**cértus, -a, -um**	as*cert*ain, *cert*ify
strong	**fírmus, -a, -um**	*firm*, in*firm*, af*firm*
wide	**lā́tus, -a, -um**	*lat*itude
long	**lóngus, -a, -um**	e*long*ate, *long*itude
large	**mágnus, -a, -um**	*magn*ify, *magn*itude
bad	**málus, -a, -um**	*mal*efactor, *mal*ediction
much, many	**múltus, -a, -um**	*mult*iply, *mult*itude
new	**nóvus, -a, -um**	*nov*el, *nov*elty, re*nov*ate
small	**párvus, -a, -um**	
few	**paúcī, -ae, -a**	*pauc*ity
full	**plḗnus, -a, -um**	*plen*ty, *plen*tiful
public, official	**pū́blicus, -a, -um**	*publ*ish, *public*ity
slow, late	**tárdus, -a, -um**	re*tard*, *tard*y, *tard*iness

65. The Principal Parts of a Verb. — The Principal Parts[1] of an English verb are the Present Indicative, Past Indicative, and Past Participle, thus:

Present Indicative	*Past Indicative*	*Past Participle*
I call	I call*ed*	call*ed*
I give	I g*a*ve	giv*en*

There are two types (or conjugations) of verbs, *weak* verbs and *strong* verbs. *Weak* verbs form the Past tense and the Past participle by adding *ed* (or *d*, or *t*), thus: call*ed*, burn*ed* (or burn*t*), dar*ed*. *Strong* verbs form the Past tense by changing the vowel of the Present, without the addition of an ending, thus: g*a*ve. The Past participle of strong verbs often has the old ending *-en* (or *-n*), thus: giv*en*. Weak verbs are called *regular*, and strong verbs *irregular*.

The Principal Parts of a Latin verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Passive Participle, thus:

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Pass. Part.*
´vócō	**vocā́re**	**vocā́vī**	**vocā́tus, -a, -um**
I-call	*to-call*	*I-called*	*called*

In Latin there are four regular conjugations. Verbs of the First Conjugation have the Present Infinitive in **-āre**; hence **ā** is the characteristic vowel of the First Conjugation, thus: **vocā́re**, *to call*, **laudā́re**, *to praise*. The Perfect Indicative is formed thus: **voc** (verb root) + **ā** (characteristic vowel) + **v** (sign of the Perfect tense) + **ī** (personal ending) = **vocā́vī**. The Perfect Passive Participle is formed

---

[1] Certain forms of a verb are called the Principal Parts, because they furnish the key to the inflection of the verb.

thus: **voc** (verb root) + **ā** (characteristic vowel) + **-tus** = **vocā́tus, -a, -um,** *called*, or *having-been-called.*[1]

66. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Repeat several times from memory the Principal Parts of **amō, portō, rogō**; write them, marking long vowels and the accent. 2. Conjugate the Present Indicative Active and the Perfect Indicative Active of each of these verbs several times with increasing speed. 3. Take a sheet of paper and place in a column at the left margin the other Latin verbs we have studied (**ambulō, cōnfirmō, dēlectō, exspectō, habitō, labōrō, laudō, nārrō, nāvigō, parō, servō, spectō**). After each verb write (with meaning) its Principal Parts, marking long vowels and the accent.

67. Exercise. — 1. Mūrus novus oppidī parvī est altus et lātus. 2. Mūrī altī et lātī oppidōrum parvōrum firmī fuērunt. 3 Multa oppida magna in Italiā sunt. 4. Incolae oppidī nova aedificia pūblica laudāvērunt. 5. Sociī multī incolīs auxilium dedērunt. 6. Incolae sociīs dōna certa dant. 7. Agricolae bonī fīliīs bonīs fābulās multās et longās nārrant. 8. Servī malī agricolae bonī nōn labōrāvērunt. 9. Equus magnus agricolae tardus est. 10. Equōs tardōs nōn laudāmus, culpāmus.

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

68. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Vīlla nova agricolam dēlectat. Vīlla agricolae nōn est magna, est parva. Equus novus ad portam est.

2. Mūrus oppidī est altus et firmus. Aedificia oppidī sunt magna. Templum est aedificium pūblicum et magnum. Templa multa in oppidō magnō sunt.

3. Agricola bonus nautae pecūniam dedit. Nauta agricolae fābulam longam nārrāvit. Mānlius, amīcus agricolae, nautam nōn laudāvit.

---

[1] But **dō**, *I-give*, and **stō**, *I-stand* are irregular:

dō	**dáre**	**dédī**	**dátus** (-a, -um)
stō	**stáre**	**stétī**	**statū́rus** (-a, -um)

stō, *I-stand*, is intransitive, hence it has no Perfect Passive Participle; the Future Active Participle is **statū́rus** (-a, -um), *about-to-stand.*

4. Estne equus novus agricolae tardus? Est tardus et certus (*sure*). Pauci agricolae equōs tardōs laudant.

5. Agricola fīlium bonum laudat. Servī frūmentum in oppidum portāvērunt.

B. (See **34**.) 1. We praise (are-praising, do-praise) the good son and the good daughter of the good farmer.



A Roman of the Time of Cicero

2. Does the farmer's friend live in the large town? Yes.

3. Isn't the way long and wide? Where do you live?

4. Where are the farmer's slaves? They are working in the large forest.

5. Did the farmer's friend praise the sailor? Did the farmer give much money to the sailor?

6. He sailed to Sicily. Is not Sicily a large island?

LATIN SELECTION

69. Fābula

Bad friends are like bad apples.

Carolus,[1] fīlius agricolae bonī, bonus fuit, sed amīcōs amāvit malōs. Agricola fīliō corbulam (*basket*) pōmōrum[2] plēnam dedit. In corbulā fuērunt pōma bona, pauca tamen putrida.[3] Carolus dōnum cum (*with*) cūrā servāvit, sed bona pōma mala maculāvērunt,[4] et mox (*soon*) bona pōma mala fuērunt. Carolus maestus (*sad*) fuit. Tum agricola fīliō, "Pōma mala," inquit (*said*), "maculant bona; malī amīcī fīlium bonum maculant."

---

[1] **Carolus**, *Carl*, *Charles*. [2] **pōmum**, **-ī**, n., *apple*.
[3] **putridus**, **-a**, **-um**, *decayed*, *rotten* (cf. "putrid").
[4] **maculō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *stain*, *spoil* (cf. "im*maculate*").

Labōrāre est ōrāre[1] — *To labor is to pray*

CHAPTER VII

FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE (ACTIVE) OF *VOCŌ* · IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · AGREEMENT OF NOUNS (APPOSITIVES) · ABLATIVE OF MEANS

FIRST SECTION

70. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline, testing your speed: **terra, incola, hortus, amīcus, oppidum, bellum, socius, auxilium.** 2. (*a*) Decline **bonus**, m., **bona**, f., **bonum**, n. (*b*) Give the *endings* alone. 3. Conjugate, testing your speed, the Present and Perfect tenses of **vocō, sum, parō, labōrō, nāvigō.** (Are you able to do 1, 2, and 3 in *five* minutes?) 4. Review the Translation Exercises (**68**) for oral and written work.

71. Imperfect Indicative Active. — Like the English "Past Progressive," the Latin Imperfect tense, **vocābam,** *I-was-calling*, expresses the action of the verb as *going on* at a past time.[2] This tense of **vocō** is formed thus: **voc** (verb root) + **ā** (characteristic vowel of the First Conjugation) + **ba** (tense sign of the Imperfect Indicative) + **m** (personal ending). In the same way, this tense of **laudō**, *I-praise*, is (**laud + ā + ba + m**) **laudābam,** *I-was-praising*, **laudābās,** *you-were-praising*, etc.

Note. — The English "Past tense" of the Indicative, *I-called*, and the "Emphatic Past," *I-did-call*, express the action of the verb merely as *done in the past;* and are generally translated by the Latin Perfect Indicative (**46**).

---

[1] Motto of the Benedictines.

[2] If we think of an action as *going on* in the past, we may think of it as in progress at a particular past time, or as repeatedly taking place. Thus the Latin Imperfect Indicative is also used to express a *repeated*, or *customary, past action*, as **vocābam,** *I-kept-calling*, *I-used-to-call.*

72. Future Indicative Active. — The Latin Future tense, **vocā́bō**, *I-shall-call*, **vocā́bis**, *you-will-call*, etc., expresses the action of the verb as *in the future*.[1] In **vocā́bis**, *you-will-call*, we see **voc** (verb root) + **ā** (characteristic vowel of the First Conjugation) + **bi** (tense sign of the Future Indicative) + **s** (personal ending of the second person). In **vocā́bō** the tense sign **bi** loses the **i**, which is absorbed by the personal ending **ō**. In the same way, this tense of **laudō**, *I-praise*, is (**laud** + **ā** + **b(i)** + **ō**) **laudā́bō**, *I-shall-praise*, **laudā́bis**, *you-will-praise*, etc.

73. The Imperfect and the Future Indicative Active of the First Conjugation are conjugated as follows:

Imperfect Indicative Active			Future Indicative Active		
	Singular			*Singular*	
1.	**vocā́bam**,	*I-was-calling*, or *I-called*	1.	**vocā́bō**,	*I-shall-call*
2.	**vocā́bās**,	*you-were-calling*, or *you-called*	2.	**vocā́bis**,	*you-will-call*
3.	**vocā́bat**,	*he-was-calling*, or *he-called*	3.	**vocā́bit**,	*he-will-call*
	Plural			*Plural*	
1.	**vocābā́mus**,	*we-were-calling*, or *we-called*	1.	**vocā́bimus**,	*we-shall-call*
2.	**vocābā́tis**,	*you-were-calling*, or *you-called*	2.	**vocā́bitis**,	*you-will-call*
3.	**vocā́bant**,	*they-were-calling*, or *they-called*	3.	**vocā́bunt**,	*they-will-call*

Observe. — In the Future Indicative Active, *third person plural*, the tense sign is **bu**.

74. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate carefully several times the Imperfect tense, associating with each form its meaning. Practice

[1] Or as in progress at some future time, as *I-shall-be-calling*, *you-will-be-calling*, etc.

for accuracy and speed. 2. Write the Imperfect tense, marking long vowels and the accent. 3. Repeat the forms from memory many times. 4. Do the same (as in 1, 2, and 3) with the Future tense. 5. Conjugate, *with increasing speed*, **amā́bam**, then **amā́bō**; **laudā́bam**, then **laudā́bō**; **culpā́bam**, then **culpā́bō.**

75. The Imperfect and Future tenses of **sum** are conjugated as follows:

Imperfect Indicative			Future Indicative		
	Singular			*Singular*	
1.	**éram,**	*I-was*	1.	**érō,**	*I-shall-be*
2.	**érās,**	*you-were*, or *thou-wast*	2.	**éris,**	*you-will-be*[1]
3.	**érat,**	*he-was*	3.	**érit,**	*he-will-be*
	Plural			*Plural*	
1.	**erā́mus,**	*we-were*	1.	**érimus,**	*we-shall-be*
2.	**erā́tis,**	*you-were*	2.	**éritis,**	*you-will-be*
3.	**érant,**	*they-were*	3.	**érunt,**	*they-will-be*

Suggestions for Study. — Practice for accuracy and speed; then write each form, marking long vowels and the accent.

76. Exercise. — Pronounce and give the *person*, *number*, *tense*, and *meaning* of the following verbs: 1. laudābāmus, laudāvimus, laudās, laudābātis, laudābimus, laudāvērunt, culpābitis, culpābātis, culpābunt, culpāvistis. 2. eram, erāmus, erant, erunt, erit, fuērunt, fuimus, fuistī. 3. nāvigās, nāvigāvistī, nāvigābis, nāvigābās, nāvigābit, nāvigābant, nāvigāvērunt, nāvigābunt, nāvigātis, nāvigābitis. 4. portābam, portāvī, portābō, portāvit, portāvistis, portābit, portābunt, portāvistī, portāvimus, portātis.



Spinning

[1] Or *thou-wilt-be*.

SECOND SECTION

77. VOCABULARY VII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
woman	**fēmina, -ae,** *f.*	*feminine*
Gaul, France	**Gállia, -ae,** *f.*	*Gallic, Gaul*
victory	**victṓria, -ae,** *f.*	*victor, victorious*
god, God	**déus, -ī,** *m.*; **Déus**	*deity, deify*
master, Lord	**dóminus, -ī,** *m.*; **Dóminus**	*domineer*
people	**pópulus, -ī,** *m.*	*popular*
Rhine	**Rhēnus, -ī,** *m.*	*Rhine*
trial, danger	**perīculum, -ī,** *n.*	*peril, perilous*
missile, weapon	**tēlum, -ī,** *n.*	
be near, be present	**ádsum, adésse, ádfuī, adfutūrus**[1]	
beg, implore	**implṓrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*implore*
set free	**līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*liberate, liberty*
seize, occupy	**óccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*occupation*
fight	**púgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*pugnacious*
capture by assault	**expúgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	
attack	**oppúgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	
kind	**benígnus, -a, -um**	*benign, benignity*
loyal, faithful	**fīdus, -a, -um**	*fidelity, confide*
disloyal, unfaithful	**īnfīdus, -a, -um**	*infidelity*
hostile	**inimīcus, -a, -um**	*inimical*
Roman	**Rōmānus, -a, -um**	*Roman*
often	**saepe** (*adv.*)	
out from	**ē** (*or* **ex**) (*prep. w. Abl.*)	*exit, expose*

78. An Appositive. — In the English sentence, (1) *Marcus, the son of the farmer, is in the garden,* the noun *son* is placed near *Marcus* to describe him; and is called an *Appositive* (from Latin **ad,** *near* + **pōnō,** *I-place*). The two nouns refer to the *same person,* and are in the *same case.*

The sentence becomes in Latin: (1) **Mārcus, fīlius agricolae, in hortō est.** Similarly, (2) *We praise Marcus,*

[1] Future Participle, *about-to-be-present.*

the son of the farmer becomes in Latin: (2) **Mārcum, fīlium agricolae, laudāmus.** In (1) the Appositive is *Nominative* **fīlius** to agree with the *Subject* **Mārcus**; in (2) it is *Accusative* **fīlium** to agree with the *Object* **Mārcum.**

79. Rule. — In Latin, as in English, a *noun used to describe another noun*, in the same part of the sentence, and *denoting the same person (or thing)*, agrees with that noun in case, and is called an Appositive.

80. The Means or Instrument. — In the English sentence, (1) *The sailor pleases the farmer with a story*, the phrase *with-a-story* expresses the *Means*. Instead of *with-a-story* we may say *by-means-of-a-story*. In English the means or instrument is expressed by a prepositional phrase, *with* . . . or *by means of* . . . Less frequently the preposition *by* is used, as in *The town was destroyed by-fire.*


Shield

The sentence (1) becomes in Latin: **Nauta agricolam fābulā dēlectat.** Here the *Means* is expressed by the Ablative **fābulā**, *with-a-story*, *by-means-of-a-story.*

Similarly, (2) *The Romans were fighting with-swords* becomes in Latin: **Rōmānī gladiīs pugnābant.** Here the *Means* or *Instrument* is expressed by **gladiīs**, *with-swords*, *by-means-of-swords.*

81. Rule. — *Means* or *Instrument* is expressed in Latin by the Ablative *without a preposition.*

82. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. *By-means-of-money* the farmer encouraged the sailor. 2. He carried the grain to town *with-a-horse.* 3. The farmers *with-the-help* of (their) sons are carrying the grain to the town. 4. The sailor will please

the kind farmer *with-stories*. 5. The disloyal inhabitants will attack the loyal *with-weapons.*

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

83. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Rōmānī benignī servō**s** saepe līberā**bant.** Mānliu**s**, amīcu**s** Fabī agricol**ae**, domin**us** benign**us** erat. Serv**īs** fīd**īs** praemia saepe dăbat.

2. Mānliu**s** in Galliā ad Rhēn**um** in oppidō magnō habitābat. Oppid**um** ad silv**am** magn**am** erat. Oppid**um** tēl**īs** oppugnā**bant.** Perīcul**um** magn**um** erat.



1. Mooring Ring of a Roman Ship

3. Fēmin**ae** in templō era**nt** et auxili**um** implōrā**bant.**

4. Proelia mult**a** eru**nt.** E silv**īs** incol**ae** inimīcī ader**unt** et oppid**um** oppugnā**bunt.** Occupā**buntne** oppid**um**?

5. Incol**ae** oppid**um** ama**nt** et servā**bunt.** Oppid**um** est patri**a** incol**ārum.**

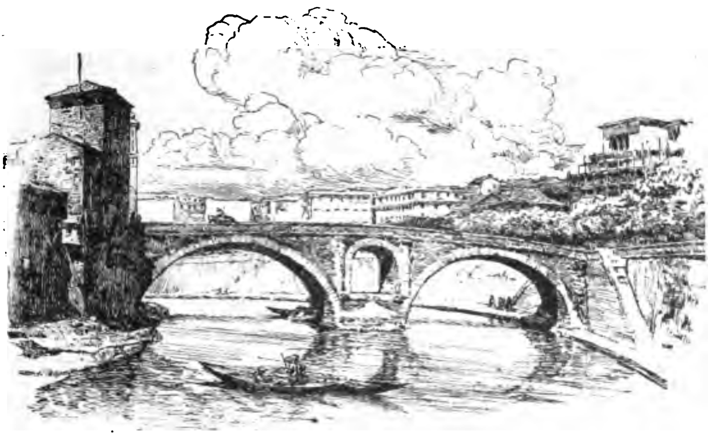
B. (See **34.**) 1. We shall call the servants. They will praise the master's farmhouse.

2. Will the farmer's slaves carry grain into the town to-day?

3. Fabius, a friend of Manlius, was present. Many farmers were present and were praising the temple.

4. The Germans (**Germānī**) were occupying many towns of Gaul.

5. The allies at once gave aid to the inhabitants of Gaul.



The Tiber and the Fabrician Bridge

The Bridges of Rome

(Optional)

84. The first bridge built across the Tiber was the *Sublician Bridge*, constructed entirely of wood. In time ancient Rome had nine others. Among these was the *Fabrician Bridge*, which united the city with the island in the Tiber; it was built in 62 B.C. and is the oldest stone bridge in the world that is still in use. The *Mulvian Bridge*, three miles above the city, was the scene of the arrest by Cicero's order of the ambassadors of the Allobroges carrying documents which proved the guilt of Catiline and his fellow conspirators (cf. **516**); here too occurred the flight and death of Maxentius, from whom Constantine, after his famous vision of the cross, won the great battle which made him Emperor (cf. page 110).

Down stream half a mile below the last of the bridges was the harbor of Rome, at whose quays were moored the ships which brought Rome's vast foreign commerce (cf. *Revelation* xviii. 11–19). See map, p. 100.

Vēra amīcitia est inter bonōs — *True friendship is between the good*

CHAPTER VIII

FIRST CONJUGATION: PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *VOCŌ* · PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

FIRST SECTION

85. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline **terra, puella, hortus, equus, templum, perīculum, socius, auxilium, bonus** (**-a, -um**), **agricola bonus, amīcus bonus, oppidum parvum.** 2. Conjugate the Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect tenses of **vocō, laudō, culpō, sum, adsum.** 3. Review the Translation Exercises (**83**) for oral and written work. *Prepare for a speed test.*

86. Pluperfect (Past Perfect) Indicative Active. — Like the English "Past Perfect," the Latin Pluperfect **vocáveram,** *I-had-called,* **vocáverās,** *you-had-called,* etc., expresses the action of the verb as *completed prior to some past time.* It is formed on the Perfect stem **vocāv-** by adding **-eram, -erās,** etc. In the same way, this tense of **laudō,** *I-praise,* is (**laudāv + eram**) **laudáveram,** *I-had-praised,* **laudáverās,** *you-had-praised,* etc.

87. Future Perfect Indicative Active. — The Future Perfect Indicative Active **vocáverō,** *I-shall-have-called,* **vocáveris,** *you-will-have-called,* etc., expresses the action of the verb as *completed at some future time.* It is formed on the Perfect stem **vocāv-** by adding **-erō, -eris,** etc. In the same way, this tense of **laudō,** *I-praise,* is (**laudāv + erō**) **laudáverō,** *I-shall-have-praised,* **laudáveris,** *you-will-have-praised,* etc.

88. The Pluperfect (Past Perfect) and Future Perfect Indicative Active of the First Conjugation are as follows:

Pluperfect Indicative Active		Future Perfect Indicative Active	
Singular		*Singular*	
1. **vocā́veram,**	*I-had-called*	1. **vocā́verō,**	*I-shall-have-called*
2. **vocā́verās,**	*you-had-called*	2. **vocā́veris,**	*you-will-have-called*
3. **vocā́verat,**	*he-had-called*	3. **vocā́verit,**	*he-will-have-called*
Plural		*Plural*	
1. **vocāverā́mus,**	*we-had-called*	1. **vocāvérimus,**	*we-shall-have-called*
2. **vocāverā́tis,**	*you-had-called*	2. **vocāvéritis,**	*you-will-have-called*
3. **vocā́verant,**	*they-had-called*	3. **vocā́verint,**	*they-will-have-called*

89. The Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative of **sum** are as follows:

Pluperfect Indicative		Future Perfect Indicative	
Singular		*Singular*	
1. **fúeram,**	*I-had-been*	1. **fúerō,**	*I-shall-have-been*
2. **fúerās,**	*you-had-been*	2. **fúeris,**	*you-will-have-been*
3. **fúerat,**	*he-had-been*	3. **fúerit,**	*he-will-have-been*
Plural		*Plural*	
1. **fuerā́mus,**	*we-had-been*	1. **fuérimus,**	*we-shall-have-been*
2. **fuerā́tis,**	*you-had-been*	2. **fuéritis,**	*you-will-have-been*
3. **fúerant,**	*they-had-been*	3. **fúerint,**	*they-will-have-been*

90. Suggestions for Study. — See **74**. 1. Conjugate the Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses of **amō**, **laudō**, **culpō**, **pugnō**, and **adsum**. 2. Write, in a column, the first person singular of each tense of **vocō** and **sum**. Such a view of all the tenses for the same person is called a synopsis (from the Greek, *a-view-together*).

SECOND SECTION

91. Exercise. — (*a*) Pronounce and give the *person, number, tense,* and *meaning* of the following verbs: 1. vocāverant, vocāverint, fuerāmus, fuerimus, dederātis, laudāveram, culpāverō, culpāvistī, dedit. 2. pugnābant, pugnāvērunt, pugnāverant, pugnāverint, oppugnābunt, expugnāvimus, līberāvistis, adfuērunt, adfuerō, occupāverās.



Aquila
(A Military Standard)

(*b*) Pronounce and translate each sentence; give the *person, number,* and *tense* of each verb, and *conjugate the tense:*

1. Agricolae multī frūmentum in oppidum portant, portābant, portābunt, portāvērunt, portāverant, portāverint.

2. In hortō parvō agricolae benignī rosae multae sunt, erant, erunt, fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.

3. Puella parva, fīlia agricolae fīdī, fēminae rosam magnam dat, dăbat, dăbit, dedit, dederat, dederit.

4. Oppidum parvum tēlīs oppugnābunt. Numerus incolārum est magnus. Expugnābuntne oppidum? Adsuntne in oppidō multī?

5. Populus Rōmānus templa multa aedificāvit et multōs deōs implōrāvit.

92. VOCABULARY VIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
eagle	**áquila, -ae,** *f.*	*aquil*ine
rose	**rósa, -ae,** *f.*	*ros*y, *ros*ary
statue	**státua, -ae,** *f.*	*statu*ary, *statu*esque
number	**númerus, -ī,** *m.*	*numer*ous
foreign, barbarous	**bárbarus, -a, -um**	*barbar*ity
barbarian (*as noun*)	**bárbarus, -ī,** *m.*	*barbar*ian
build	**aedíficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*edify*, *edific*ation
place, put, set	**lócō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*locate*, dis*locate*
wound	**vúlnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*vulner*able
either	**aut**	either . . . or **aut . . . aut**
and not, nor	**nec (neque)**	
neither . . . nor	**nec (neque)...nec (neque)**	

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

93. Suggestions for Study. — **Be prepared for oral and written work.**

A. (See **21.**) 1. Multae rosae in hortō agricolae sunt. Hortus ad vīllam est. Puella est fīlia Fabī agricolae.

2. Fīlia parva fēminae rosās dăbit. Fēmina rosās laudāverat; laudāverit. Fēmina et rosās et puellam laudāvit.

3. Fēminam rosae dēlectābunt; delectāverint. Nōnne amātis rosās? Suntne rosae in hortō?

4. Incolae templum aedificābunt; aedificāverint; aedificāverant. In templō statua erit; fuerit.

5. Mānlius, amīcus Fabī agricolae, pecūniam magnam[1] dederat.



A Temple at the Source of the Clitumnus, a Tributary of the Tiber

B. (See **34.**) 1. They have placed a statue in the temple; they will have placed; they were placing; they placed; we shall place; you (*pl.*) will place.

2. They will fight with weapons; they were fighting; they had fought. The barbarians will attack the town; they will have attacked; they had attacked.

3. The barbarian had wounded Manlius with a weapon.

4. Where is Italy? Is Italy a large country (**terra**)? Are there many towns in Italy?

5. The Romans built many wide roads in Italy; had built; were building. The eagle was the standard (**signum**) of the Romans.

---

[1] **pecūnia magna**: *a large (amount of) money.*

Vir bonus patriam amat — *A good man loves his country*

CHAPTER IX

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-R* · INDICATIVE OF *POSSUM* · COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

FIRST SECTION

94. Preliminary Review. — 1. Conjugate (testing your speed) the Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of **vocō, laudō, culpō, sum, adsum.** (Can you give these in *three* minutes?) 2. Review the Translation Exercises (**93**).



A Roman Youth
(As a victorious charioteer)

95. Nouns Ending in *-r*. — The Second Declension includes a number of nouns ending in **-r**, the case ending **-us** of the Nominative singular being lost, thus: **áger-**, m., *field*, **púer-**, m., *boy*, **vir-**, m., *man*. The Vocative singular has the same form as the Nominative; the other cases have the case endings of masculine nouns. Most nouns ending in **-er** in the Nominative and Vocative singular "lose the **e**" elsewhere, thus: Nom. **áger-**, Gen. **ágrī**, Dat. **ágrō**, etc.; a few nouns in **-er** "keep the **e**," thus: Nom. **púer-**, Gen. **púerī**, Dat. **púerō**, etc. It is necessary, therefore, to bear in mind the Genitive

singular of each noun in **-er** in order to know the *base*. These nouns are declined on page 317.

Suggestions for Study. — Although these nouns offer but little difficulty, we should, for accuracy and speed, decline each noun several times.

96. Adjectives in *-er*. — Certain adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have no case ending in the *Nominative singular masculine*, thus: **līber-**, m., **lībera**, f., **līberum**, n., *free*, Gen. **līberī, līberae, līberī**; and **aéger-**, m., **aégra**, f., **aégrum**, n., *sick*, Gen. **aégrī, aégrae, aégrī.** Some adjectives in **-er**, "keep the **e**," others "lose the **e**." It is necessary, therefore, to bear in mind the Nominative singular *feminine* of each adjective in **-er**, in order to know the *base*. The Vocative of the masculine has the same form as the Nominative, thus: *O free man!* **Vir līber!** *O free men!* **Virī līberī!** *O sick boy!* **Puer aeger!** *O sick boys!* **Puerī aegrī!** These adjectives are declined on page 319.

97. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice the declension of **līber** and **aeger**. 2. Like **līber** decline **míser**, m., **mísera**, f., **míserum**, n., *wretched*; like **aeger** decline **púlcher**, m., **púlchra**, f., **púlchrum**, n., *beautiful*. 3. Decline together **vir līber**, *the free man*, **puer aeger**, *the sick boy*, and **ager lātus**, *the wide field*.

98. The Indicative of *Possum*. — We have already learned the Indicative of **sum**, *I-am*; now we come to **póssum**, *I-am-able*, or *I-can*. In conjugating the Present, Imperfect, and Future of **póssum**, bear in mind the forms of **sum**, as already learned; and remember that we have **pos-** before **s**, but elsewhere **pot-**, thus: pótĕs, *you-are-able* (or *thou-art-able*), *you-can* (or *thou-canst*), póssumus, *we-are-able*, or *we-can*. The stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect is **potu-** (instead of **potfu-**). Learn the Indicative of **possum** (p. 336).

99. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate carefully each tense, associating with each form its meaning. 2. Repeat, with meanings, the first person singular of each tense in order. 3. With the book closed, write, with meanings, the synopsis.[1]

100. Exercise. — Pronounce and give the *person, number, tense,* and *meaning:* 1. pot**es**, pos**sumus**, pot**estis**, potu**istis**, pot**erās**, potu**erās**, potu**eritis**, potu**erātis**. 2. pot**est**, potu**it**, pot**erat**, pot**erit**, potu**erit**, potu**erat**. 3. pot**erō**, potu**erō**, pote**ram**, potu**eram**, potu**ī**. 4. potu**istī**, pot**eris**, potu**eris**, pot**erimus**, potu**erimus**, pot**erāmus**, potu**erāmus**. 5. pot**erant**, potu**erint**, pot**erunt**, pos**sunt**, potu**ērunt** (-**ēre**), potu**erant**.

SECOND SECTION

101. VOCABULARY IX

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
friendship	**amīcítia,**[2] **-ae,** *f.*	See **amīcus, 40**.
water	**áqua, -ae,** *f.*	*aqua*tic
queen	**rēgína, -ae,** *f.*	
kingdom	**rḗgnum, -ī,** *n.*	*reign*
book	**líber, líbrī,** *m.*	*lib*rary, *lib*rarian
business, trouble	**negṓtium, negṓtī,** *n.*	*negoti*ation
duty, service	**offícium, offícī,** *n.*	*offic*e, *offici*al
plow (*verb*)	**arō, -áre, -ávī, -átus**	*ara*ble
plow (*noun*)	**arátrum, -ī,** *n.*	
be away, be absent	**ábsum, -ésse, áfuī, āfutū́rus**[3]	*absent*
be able, can	**póssum, pósse, pótuī,** —	*poss*ible, *pot*ent
poor, wretched	**míser, mísera, míserum**	*miser*y, *miser*able
known	**nṓtus, -a, -um**	*not*e, *not*able
beautiful	**púlcher, púlchra, púlchrum**	*pulchr*itude
true	**vḗrus, -a, -um**	*ver*ify, *ver*acity
with	**cum** (*prep. w. Abl.*)	*con*vene[4]

---

[1] In this book synopses are called for in the *first* person.

[2] The suffix **-tia** expresses a *quality* or *condition:* amīcí**tia**, *friendship, friendliness;* puerí**tia**, *boyhood;* iūstí**tia**, *justice.*

[3] Future Participle, *about-to-be-away.*

[4] In numerous English words the prefix **con-** (also **com-** and **col-**) represents Latin **cum** (*with, together*); cf. *com*bine, *col*lect.

102. A Complementary Infinitive. — In the English sentence, *He is able to be present*, or *He can be present*, the infinitive (*to*) *be present* modifies the expression *he is able* or *he can*, and completes its meaning. It is called a Complementary Infinitive (cf. **cómpleō**, *I-complete*). The sentence becomes in Latin: **Adesse potest.**[1]

103. Rule. — In Latin, as in English, an infinitive is used with verbs meaning to *be able*, *wish*, *dare*, *begin*, etc., to complete their meaning. Such an infinitive is called a *Complementary Infinitive*.



A Roman School Scene in what to-day is Alsace

104. Exercise. — Be prepared for oral and written work.

1. Fēmina benigna puerō aegrō rosās pulchrās dedit. Puer aeger rosās amat.

2. Hodiē multī puerī aegrī sunt neque in agrīs labōrāre possunt.

3. Neque puerī neque puellae hodiē in scholā (*school*) esse poterunt: agricolīs auxilium dăbunt.

4. Amīcī aut fīdī aut īnfīdī sunt; fīdōs amīcōs laudāmus.

5. Dominus servōrum nōn erat benignus: multī servī miserī in agrīs lātīs labōrābant. Dominum inimīcum tēlīs vulnerāvērunt; in magnō perīculō fuit.

---

[1] Cf. **adesse potuit**, (*a*) *he-was-able to-be-present*, or (*b*) *he-could be-present*, or (*c*) *he-could have-been-present*. In Latin the past time is indicated only by the auxiliary verb; in English it may be indicated as in (*c*) by the auxiliary verb and by the infinitive.

6. Rōmānī saepe cum barbarīs pugnābant. Barbarī neque agrōs pulchrōs neque oppida pulchra Galliae occupāre potuērunt.

7. Rōmānī auxilium dederant et Galliam līberāvērunt. Victōria Rōmānōrum Gallōs dēlectāvit. Semper Gallia (*France*), patria Gallōrum, lībera erit.

THIRD SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

105. *A.* (See **21.**) 1. Puerī et puellae librōs portant. Puerī cum puellīs ad scholam ambulant librōsque puellārum portant. Et puerī et puellae discipulī[1] sunt. Magister (*teacher*) in scholā nunc adest. Schola est in aedificiō pūblicō et magnō.

2. Amīcus Mārcī, fīlī agricolae, nōn adest; abest. Hodiē in agrō cum agricolīs labōrat.

3. In scholā sunt pictūrae (*pictures*) multae et pulchrae. Discipulī fīdī sunt; fīdōs discipulōs lingua (*language*, lit. *tongue*) Latīna dēlectat.

4. Hodiē multī linguam Latīnam amant. Dēlectatne lingua Latīna discipulōs? Amātisne linguam Latīnam? Amāmus (sīc; ita; sānē; certē).

5. In mēnsā (*table*) sunt librī multī et rosa pulchra. Fabia, fīlia agricolae, magistrō rosam dedit.

6. Fīliī agricolārum in scholā adesse saepe nōn possunt.

7. Hodiē agricolae cum fīliīs fīdīs in agrīs lātīs labōrant.

8. Portābantne puerī puellārum librōs?

B. (See **34.**) 1. The teacher praised (was-praising, had-praised, will-have-praised) the good pupils. We shall praise (shall-have-praised) the beautiful pictures.

2. Where is Marcus to-day? He is working with the servants in the field. He could not be in school to-day.

3. He is not sick: he is helping (*lit.* gives help to) the farmers. The teacher has given books to Marcus.

---

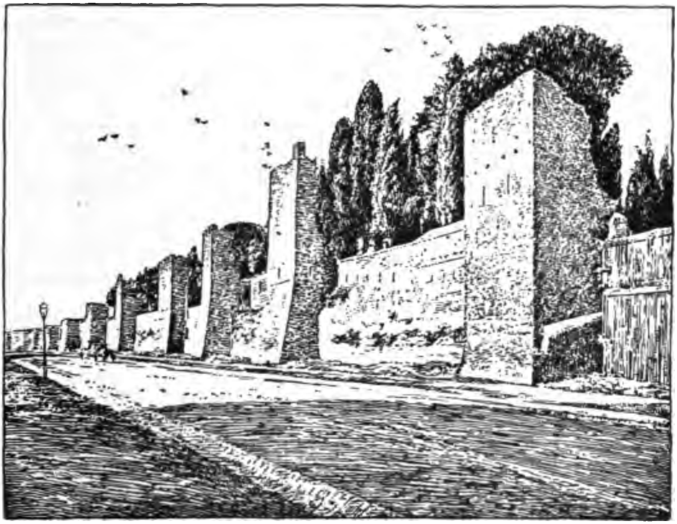
[1] **discipulus**, -ī, m., *pupil;* cf. "disciple," "discipline."



ITALY
SCALE OF MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100
9 10 11 12 13
46 44 42 40 38 36
GALLIA TRANSPADANA
Mediolanum
Cremona
Placentia
Padus
Parma
GALLIA CISPADANA
Mutina
Bononia
Ravenna
Ariminum
Ancona
Aquileia
ISTRIA
LIBURNIA
DALMATIA
Pisae
Volterra
Sena
Perusia
ILVA
Rusellae
Tarquinii
Reate
Roma
Ostia
Alba Longa
Praeneste
LATIUM
Tarracina
Caieta
PONTIAE I.
Misenum
Vesuvius
Nuceria Alfaterna
Alba Fucensis
Beneventum
Canusium
Salapia
Barium
Brundisium
CALABRIA
Heraclia
Sinus Tarentinus
Thurii
LUCANIA
Paestum
Buxentum
Lavinium
Croton
Locri
LIPARAEAE I.
Panormus
Aetna M.
SICILIA
Heraclea
Agrigentum
Syracusae
MELITA I.
Utica
Carthago
L.L.POATES CO., N.Y.

4. Many boys will not be able to be in school to-day.

5. The kind master will free his slaves. Who freed the slaves? He was a good man and he loved (his) country.



The Aurelian Wall

The Walls of Rome

(Optional)

106. In North America there is said to be but one walled city, Quebec. Most ancient cities were surrounded by walls. Rome was for centuries defended by the so-called *Servian Wall*, which was about five and a half miles long. In 272 A.D. the Emperor Aurelian began the *Aurelian Wall*, which was 12 miles in length, and had 16 gates and at one time 381 towers. This wall for the most part still stands. It has often saved Rome from destruction. See map, p. 100.

Repetītiō est māter studiōrum — *Repetition is the mother of learning*

CHAPTER X (REVIEW)

WORD LIST

107. Suggestions for Study. — (See **55.**) Give a synopsis of each starred verb, and inflect each tense. Be prepared for a speed test.

NOUNS

*agricola
fābula
fēmina
fīlia
Gallia
incola
īnsula
Italia
nauta
patria
pecūnia
porta
puella
rosa
Sicilia
silva
statua
*stella
terra
via
victōria
vīlla
———
*amīcus
deus
dominus
equus
Fabius

NOUNS

*fīlius
hortus
Mānlius
Mārcus
*mūrus
populus
servus
socius
———
*aedificium
auxilium
bellum
*dōnum
frūmentum
*oppidum
perīculum
praemium
tēlum
templum
———
*ager
liber
*puer
vir

PRONOUNS

quid
quis

VERBS

*aedificō
ambulō
amō
cōnfirmō
dēlectō
*dō
habitō
implōrō
labōrō
laudō
līberō
locō
nārrō
nāvigō
occupō
parō
portō
pugnō
  expugnō
  oppugnō
rogō
servō
spectō
  exspectō
*stō
*sum
  absum

VERBS

  adsum
  *possum
vocō
vulnerō

ADJECTIVES

altus
barbarus
benignus
*bonus
certus
fīdus
firmus
īnfīdus
inimīcus
lātus
longus
magnus
*malus
multus
novus
parvus
paucī
plēnus
pūblicus
tardus
———
aeger

ADJECTIVES

līber
*miser
*pulcher

ADVERBS

certē
hodiē
nōn
nunc
saepe
semper
statim
ubi

PREPOSITIONS

ad
cum
ē, ex
in

CONJUNCTIONS

atque, ac
et
et . . . et
-que

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters I–IX

108. 1. Agricola **fīlium bonum** laudat. 2. Magister fīliō agricolae **librum** dedit **pulchrum**. 3. Amīcus agricolae in oppidō habitābat. 4. Ubi **sunt** fīlius et fīlia agricolae? 5. Adestne Mārcus in scholā hodiē? 6. Nāvigāvitne nauta ad Siciliam? 7. Nōnne fuit agricola benignus? 8. Num agricola nautae pecūniam dăbit? Nōn dăbit (*or* nōn, *or* minimē). 9. Num nautae pecūniam servant? 10. Agricola est vir benignus. 11. Librī magistrī fuērunt novī et pulchrī. 12. Barbarī oppidum tēlīs oppugnābunt; nōn expugnāvērunt. 13. Mānlius, amīcus agricolae, Mārcō, fīliō agricolae, librōs multōs dedit; dederat. 14. Puerī cum puellīs ad scholam ambulant. 15. Hodiē agricolae cum incolīs oppidī in templō magnō sunt.



Roman Writing Materials

109. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Many Latin words, as **locō** (Chapter VIII) and **vocō** (Chapter II), have furnished a large number of English words, — many more than there has been room to mention in the vocabularies.

With the help of a dictionary find *ten* English words related to **vocō**. Many of the English derivatives of **vocō** will have prefixes, as "*a*vocation," "*in*vocation." Arrange this exercise in a notebook, following this model:

English words related to **lŏcō, locāre, locāvī, locātus**, *place*: *loc*ate, *loc*al, *loc*ality, *loc*ation, col*loc*ate, col*loc*ation, dis*loc*ate, *loc*alization, *loc*alize, *loc*ally, *loc*omotive, *loc*omotor.

Possunt quia posse videntur. (Vergil)
Because they think they can, they can

CHAPTER XI

SECOND CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *MONEŌ* · ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

FIRST SECTION

110. Preliminary Review. — 1. Give the synopsis of **vocō** in the Indicative Active, associating with each tense its meaning. 2. Give the synopsis of **laudō, culpō, sum,** and **possum.** 3. Conjugate in order each tense of **vocō, laudō, culpō, sum,** and **possum,** testing your speed. (Can you give these in *three* minutes?)



Fresco Painting of Cupids in the House of the Vettii, Pompeii

111. Second Conjugation. — Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in **-eō** (*e.g.* **móneō,** *I-advise*). The Present Infinitive ends in **-ēre** (*e.g.* **monēre,** *to-advise*). The Present stem ends in **-ē** (*e.g.* **moneō,** stem **monē**). The Perfect Indicative usually ends in **-uī** (*e.g.* **mónuī,** *I-advised*, or *I-have-advised*), but the Perfect is *very often irregular*. The principal parts of **moneō** are:

móneō, monēre, mónuī, mónitus

Verbs of the Second Conjugation are inflected in the Indicative Active as follows:

PRESENT *I-advise*, etc.		PERFECT *I-advised* or *I-have-advised*, etc.	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1. **móneō**	**monḗmus**	1. **mónuī**	**monúimus**
2. **mónēs**	**monḗtis**	2. **monuístī**	**monuístis**
3. **mónet**	**mónent**	3. **mónuit**	**monuḗrunt** (**monuḗre**)
IMPERFECT *I-was-advising* or *I-advised*, etc.		PLUPERFECT *I-had-advised*, etc.	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1. **monḗbam**	**monēbā́mus**	1. **monúeram**	**monuerā́mus**
2. **monḗbās**	**monēbā́tis**	2. **monúerās**	**monuerā́tis**
3. **monḗbat**	**monḗbant**	3. **monúerat**	**monúerant**
FUTURE *I-shall-advise*, etc.		FUTURE PERFECT *I-shall-have-advised*, etc.	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1. **monḗbō**	**monḗbimus**	1. **monúerō**	**monuérimus**
2. **monḗbis**	**monḗbitis**	2. **monúeris**	**monuéritis**
3. **monḗbit**	**monḗbunt**	3. **monúerit**	**monúerint**

Observe. — The vowel (**ē**) of the Second Conjugation becomes *short* in **móneō, mónet,** and **mónent.**

The Imperfect (**monḗbam**) and the Future (**monḗbō**) are formed on the Present stem **monē-** by means of the tense signs and personal endings, as in the First Conjugation (see **71, 72**).

The Pluperfect (**monúeram**) and the Future Perfect (**monúerō**) are formed on the Perfect stem (**monu-**).

112. VOCABULARY XI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
place	**lócus, -ī,** *m.* (*pl.* **lóca,** *n.*)	*locate, local*
get together	**cómparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*compare*
call together	**cónvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*convoke*
fill	**cómpleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus**	*complete*
owe, ought	**dḗbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	*debtor, debt*
teach, show	**dóceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus**	*doctor, docile*
have, hold	**hábeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	*habit*
remain	**máneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus** [1]	per*manent*, *mansion*
answer	**respóndeō, -ēre, respóndī, respṓnsum** [1]	*respond, response*
see	**vídeō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**	e*vid*ent, *vis*ible
neighboring	**vīcínus, -a, -um**	*vicinity*
why	**cūr** (*adv.*)	
down from, concerning	**dē** (*prep. w. Abl.*)	*de*crease, *de*scend
then	**tum** (*adv.*)	

113. Observe. — While the Perfect Indicative of the Second Conjugation usually ends in **-uī** (as **mónuī**), many verbs form their Perfect differently, thus **vídeō** (Present), *I-see,* becomes **vīdī** (Perfect), *I-saw,* or *I-have-seen;* and **máneō** (Present), *I-remain,* becomes, with **s** instead of **u** as the tense sign, **mānsī** (Perfect), *I-remained,* or *I-have-remained.* We should, there-

---

[1] In Latin, as in English, *transitive* verbs are those whose action *goes over* (**trānsit**) to some Object; *intransitive* verbs do not have Objects. The Object of a transitive verb becomes the Subject of the verb in the Passive. Thus, *We praise the girl* becomes in the Passive *The girl is praised by us.* Since a Latin *intransitive* verb is not used with an Object, no *personal* subject can be used with its Passive voice. With some intransitive verbs the Future Active Participle is given, *e.g.* **mānsūrus, -a, -um,** *about-to-remain;* others have a Perfect Passive Participle, but only in the *neuter* form, *e.g.* **respṓnsum.**

fore, observe carefully the Perfect of *each* verb, and give *all* the forms of the Perfect, for example:

vīdī, *I-saw* or *I-have-seen*

Singular	*Plural*
1. **vīdī**	1. **vīdimus**
2. **vīdistī**	2. **vīdistis**
3. **vīdit**	3. **vīdērunt,** or **vīdēre**

Since the Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses are formed on the Perfect stem, we shall help ourselves to remember the Perfect of an irregular verb by stopping to repeat these tenses also, *e.g.* **vīderam, vīderās,** etc.; **vīderō, vīderis,** etc., **mānseram, mānserās,** etc.; **mānserō, mānseris,** etc.

SECOND SECTION

114. Accompaniment or Association. — In the English sentence, *The farmer is plowing with his son*, the prepositional phrase *with-his-son* means *in-company-with-his-son*, and, therefore, expresses Accompaniment or Association.

The sentence becomes in Latin **Agricola cum fīliō arat.** Here we see that in Latin a prepositional phrase **cum fīliō** is used to express Accompaniment or Association, exactly as the equivalent phrase is used in English.

115. Rule. — Accompaniment or Association is expressed in Latin by a prepositional phrase, **cum** with the Ablative.

116. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. The farmer is plowing the field with a plow (**arātrum**, -ī, *n.*, Means). 2. The farmer was plowing the field with his son (Accompaniment). 3. The teacher is working with the pupils. 4. The inhabitants of the island were fighting with the Romans.

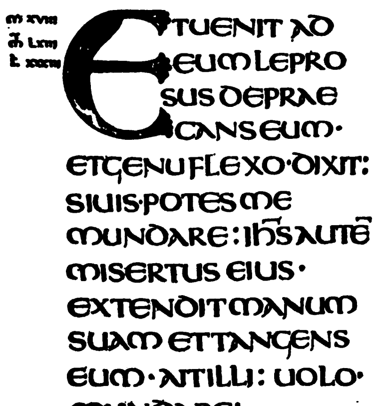
TRANSLATION EXERCISES

117. *A.* 1. (Mārcus puerō dē scholā nārrat) "Magister librōs multōs et pictūrās pulchrās habet. Hodiē dē Rōmānīs nārrāvit. Rōmānī virī bonī et benignī fuērunt."

2. "Cūr nōn in scholā herī (*yesterday*) adfuistī? Magister multa dē Rōmānīs docuit."

3. Puer respondet, "Linguam Latīnam nōn amō. Aeger eram. Domī (*at home*) manēbam."

4. Tum Mārcus respondit, "Es malus puer. Nōn erās aeger. Sī (*if*) labōrābis, linguam Latīnam amābis."


ETUENIT AD
EUM LEPRO
SUS DEPRAE
CANS EUM·
ETGENU FLEXO·DIXIT:
SIUIS·POTES ME
MUNDARE: IHS AUTE
MISERTUS EIUS·
EXTENDIT MANUM
SUAM ETTANGENS
EUM·AIT ILLI: UOLO·
MUNDARE:

From a Biblical Manuscript
(The Healing of the Leper, *St. Mark* i. 40–41)

5. Puer est fīlius agricolae vīcīnī, neque fīdus discipulus est.

6. Servī hodiē in silvā ligna (*fuel*) comparant. Fabius agrum arātrō arat. Habetne agricola agrum magnum et pulchrum?

7. Fabius cum fīliō agrum arātrō hodiē arābit. Mārcus domī manēre et auxilium dare dēbet. Magister Mārcum, fīlium agricolae, monuit.

8. Cornēlia, fīlia agricolae, in scholā hodiē aderat; adfuit; adfuerat.

9. Mārcus aquilam in silvā hodiē vīdit. Magister Mārcō dē aquilīs Rōmānīs nārrābit. Vīdistīne aquilam Americānam?

B. 1. We shall see the farmer's new horse; we had seen; shall have seen. They were advising the boy; have advised; will have advised.

2. The son of the neighbor (**vīcīnus**, -ī, *m., as noun*) will remain in town; had remained.

3. You (*pl.*) will have many books. Do you not love good books? A good book is always a faithful friend.

4. The servants are plowing in the field. They will not carry grain to town. Marcus will not see the teacher to-day.

5. What do good friends advise? We ought to love (our) country.

6. The neighbors ought to help (= give help to) the farmer

7. The inhabitants of the town ought to have a temple.

8. We ought to have many pictures in the school.

118. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Find *five* English words related to **videō**, and *five* related to **moveō**.

Arrange these in the notebook, following the model **locō** (**109**).

Bear in mind that English words are formed from the base of the Perfect Passive Participle, as well as from the Present stem.



Copying an Ancient Manuscript in a Medieval Monastery

Dux fēmina factī! (Vergil) — *The leader in the deed a woman*

CHAPTER XII

THIRD DECLENSION · ABLATIVE OF TIME *WHEN* OR *WITHIN WHICH* · ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

FIRST SECTION

119. Preliminary Review. — 1. Give the principal parts and the synopsis of **vocō, sum, possum**, associating with each form its meaning. Then conjugate each tense, testing your speed. 2. Give the principal parts and the synopsis of **moneō, habeō, dēbeō, videō, maneō, respondeō**, associating with each form its meaning. Then conjugate *each* tense, testing your speed. 3. Review the Translation Exercises (**117**) for oral and written work.

120. The Third Declension. — In the Third Declension are *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* nouns. Their Genitive singular ends in **-is**. Some masculine and feminine nouns have in the Nominative the case ending **-s**, thus: Nom. **dux**,[1] m., f. (**duc + s**), *leader*, Gen. **dúcis**; Nom. **rēx**, m. (**rēg + s**), *king*, Gen. **rēgis**; and Nom. **aéstās**, f. (**aestāt + s**), *summer*, Gen. **aestātis**. The base of these nouns may be found by omitting the case ending (**-is**) of the Genitive. Therefore, with each noun of the Third Declension we should memorize the *Genitive*, *base*, and *gender*. Mascu-

[1] In the Nominative a final **x** (the "double consonant") represents the sound of **c** or **g** with the case ending **-s**.

line and feminine nouns with the base ending in a *mute*[1] are declined as follows:

dux, m., f., *leader, guide* Base: **duc-**		**rēx**, m., *king* Base: **rēg-**	**mīles**, m., *soldier* Base: **mīlit-**	**aéstās**, f., *summer* Base: **aestāt-**	ENDINGS
	Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*	*Singular*	*Sing.*
Nom.	dux[1]	rēx[1]	mīles[1]	aéstās[1]	-s or -
Gen.	dúcis	rḗgis	mīlitis	aestā́tis	-is
Dat.	dúcī	rḗgī	mīlitī	aestā́tī	-ī
Acc.	dúcem	rḗgem	mīlitem	aestā́tem	-em
Abl.	dúce	rḗge	mīlite	aestā́te	-e
	Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*	*Plural*	*Plur.*
Nom.	dúcēs	rḗgēs	mīlitēs	aestā́tēs	-ēs
Gen.	dúcum	rḗgum	mīlitum	aestā́tum	-um
Dat.	dúcibus	rḗgibus	mīlítibus	aestā́tibus	-ibus
Acc.	dúcēs	rḗgēs	mī́litēs	aestā́tēs	-ēs
Abl.	dúcibus	rḗgibus	mīlítibus	aestā́tibus	-ibus



The Frontier Defense (*līmes*) of the Roman Empire

"The breakwater of civilization against the storm waves of barbaric invasion"

[1] *Palatal* mutes (sounded by throwing the breath against the *palate*) are **c** and **g**; *labial* mutes (*lip*-mutes) are **p** and **b**; *lingual* mutes (*tongue*-mutes) are **t** and **d**. Before **-s** a lingual mute disappears in the Nominative. Nouns whose Nominative singular ends in **-ĕs** have in the Genitive singular **-idis** or **-itis** (cf. **óbsĕs**, m., f., *hostage*, Gen. **óbsidis**).

121. VOCABULARY XII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
military service	**mīlítia, -ae,** *f.*	*militia, militate*
arrow	**sagítta, -ae,** *f.*	
life	**vīta, -ae,** *f.*	*vital, vitality*
year	**ánnus,**[1] **-ī,** *m.*	*annual*
sword	**gládius, gládī,** *m.*	*gladiator*
envoy, lieutenant	**lēgātus, -ī,** *m.*	*legate, delegate*
arms	**árma, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*	*arm, army, armament*
camp	**cástra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*	*Chester, Dorchester*
winter	**híems, híemis,** *f.*	
winter quarters	**hībérna,**[2] **-ōrum,** *n. pl.*	*hibernate*
battle	**proélium, -proélī,** *n.*	
horseman (*pl.* cavalry)	**éques, équitis,** *m.*	Cf. **equus, 40.**
law	**lēx, lēgis,** *f.*	*legal, legislation*
peace	**pāx, pācis,** *f.*	*pacify, Pacific*
pacify, subdue	**pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	
place together, establish	**cónlocō,**[3] **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*collocate, collocation*
frequent, thick	**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**	

122. Exercise. — Pronounce and translate: 1. Crēbra proelia cum barbarīs fuērunt. Mīlitēs in castrīs nōn mānsērunt. 2. Rēx multōs obsidēs dābit. Lēgātus ducis gladium rēgis habet. Arma equitis sunt gladius et sagittae. 3. Dux bonus multōs mīlitēs in castrīs conlocābit. Ubi sunt castra Rōmāna? 4. Caesar, dux magnus, Galliam pācāvit et lēgēs bonās Galliae dedit. 5. Aestātēs longae sunt. Aestās puerōs dēlectat. Puerī nōn semper in agrīs labōrant.

---

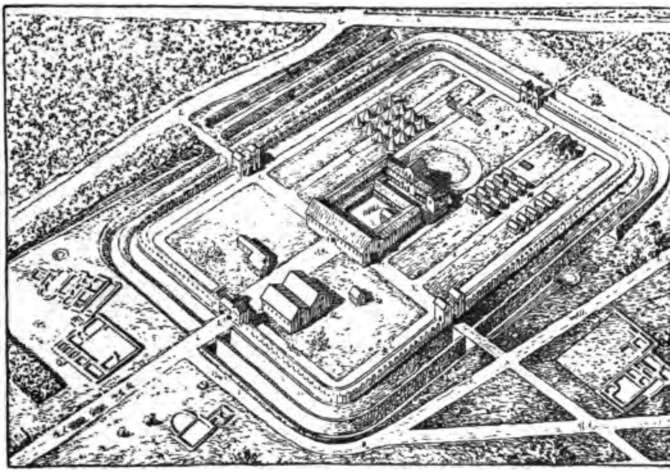
[1] Cf. **A.D.** (**Annō Dominī,** *in the year of the Lord*).

[2] An adjective (**hībernus, -a, -um**) used as a noun; originally **hīberna** (**castra**), *winter camp* (*quarters*).

[3] **conlocō**: also written **collocō,** etc.

SECOND SECTION

123. Time When or Within Which. — In the English sentence, (1) *In summer the farmer's son works in the fields*, the prepositional phrase *in summer* tells *at what time* or *when* the action of the verb is done. Similarly in the



The Restored Roman Camp at Saalburg
(On the Frontier of the Empire between the Rhine and the Danube — a Danger Point)

sentence, (2) *In a few years Caesar subdued Gaul*, the prepositional phrase *in a few years* tells the period of *time within which* the action of the verb was done.

These sentences become in Latin: (1) **Aestāte fīlius agricolae in agrīs labōrat**; (2) **Paucīs annīs Caesar Galliam pācāvit.** Here we see that *in summer* is expressed by **aestāte**, and *in a few years* by **paucīs annīs.**

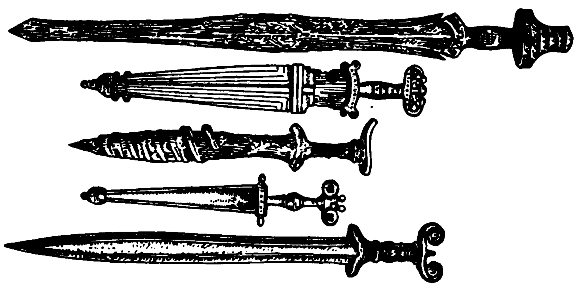
124. Rule. — In Latin *Time When* or *Within Which* is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.[1]

[1] With words that do not strictly express time, the preposition **in** is used if the noun has no modifier, as **in bellō**, *in war;* **in pāce**, *in peace.*

125. Duration of Time. — The English sentence, *He lived in the little town many years*, or *for many years*, or *during many years*, in which duration of time is indicated, becomes in Latin : **In oppidō parvō multōs annōs habitābat.**

126. Rule. — In Latin the *Duration of Time* is expressed by the Accusative without a preposition. For emphasis on the duration of time as uninterrupted (English "throughout") **per**, *through*, *throughout*, with the Accusative is used.

127. Exercise — Express in Latin: 1. In summer the farmer works in (his) fields. 2. The soldiers remained in the camp many years.



Gallic Swords and Daggers

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

128. *A.* 1. Hodiē Mārcus mīlitēs vidēbit. Nunc in hībernīs sunt. Hīberna ad oppidum pulchrum sunt. Hieme dux mīlitēs in hīberna convocat; aestāte mīlitēs pugnant.

2. Sextius, dux mīlitum, est amīcus Fabī agricolae; puerī ūnā (adv. *together*) fuērunt. Fabius cum Mārcō fīliō ad castra ambulābit. Sextius dē proeliō magnō nārrābit.

3. Castra ad Rhēnum erant. Prīnceps (*chief*) barbarōrum cum multīs castra oppugnāvit. Crēbra proelia erant. Mīlitēs

Rōmānī barbarōs in silvās dēnsās repellēbant (*were-driving-back*). Mīles vītam ducis servāvit. Sextius mīlitī praemium dedit. Praemium fuit gladius. Mīlitēs gladiōs amant.



A Roman Soldier of the Legion

4. Mīlitia Sextī anteā (adv. *previously*) in Britanniā, īnsulā magnā, fuerat.

5. Rōmānī et hieme et aestāte multōs mīlitēs ad Rhēnum in castrīs habēbant (*had*, or *kept*).

B. 1. Have you seen a picture of a Roman camp?

2. Who told about the great battle? What did he tell? We shall tell about the battle.

3. Where did Fabius live? Was the town beautiful?

4. Farmers' sons work in the fields in summer. In winter they walk to school. Do they always work in school? Many boys do not like winter. Do they like summer?

5. Sextius, the leader of the soldiers, gave a sword to the soldier. Marcus did not see the sword.

6. Soldiers preserve (**servō**) peace. Peace pleases the inhabitants of the land.

7. Do the laws always please the soldiers and the sailors?

129. Derivation Exercise. — To what Latin words are "annuity," "aqueous," and "conductor" related?

Prō āris atque focis! (Sallust) — *"For your altars and your fires"*

CHAPTER XIII

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

FIRST SECTION

130. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline, *with increasing speed*, **dux, rēx, mīles, aestās, pāx, lēx, eques.** 2. Give a synopsis of **pācō**; then conjugate each tense. 3. Give a synopsis of **moneō**, and of **videō**; then conjugate each tense.

131. Possessive Adjectives. — In English the possessive "pronouns" are used *with* nouns, or stand *in place of* nouns, and indicate the person of the possessor, thus: *My book; The book is mine; Your book; The book is yours; My book is new, yours is not new.*

In Latin the possessive pronouns are declined as adjectives. Those of the first and second persons are:

First Person				Second Person		
Singular: *my, mine*				Singular: *your, yours, thy, thine*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**méus,**	**-a,**	**-um**	**túus,**	**-a,**	**-um**
Gen.	**méī,**	**-ae,**	**-ī**	**túī,**	**-ae,**	**-ī**
		etc.			etc.	
Plural: *our, ours*				Plural: *your, yours*		
Nom.	**nóster,**	**nóstra,**	**nóstrum**	**véster,**	**véstra,**	**véstrum**
Gen.	**nóstrī,**	**nóstrae,**	**nóstrī**	**véstrī,**	**véstrae,**	**véstrī**
		etc.			etc.	

NOTE. — The Vocative singular of **meus** is **mī**: *O my friend!* **Mī amīce!**

132. Possessive adjectives are not used in Latin except for *clearness*, *emphasis*, or *contrast*. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they belong, not with the noun to which they refer. Possessive adjectives usually *follow* their noun; but if used for emphasis (or contrast) they *precede* or, for great emphasis, are *separated* from their noun, thus: **Amīcī meī in scholā sunt,** *My friends are in school;* **Meī** (emphatic contrast) **amīcī scholam nōn amant** or **meī** (very emphatic) **scholam amīcī nōn amant,** *My friends do not like school.*

133. Exercise.—Express in Latin: 1. Where are your (*sing.*) books? 2. Have you seen *my* new book? (Emphatic) 3. *Our* teacher praises the Romans. (Contrast) 4. The farmer praised *our* roses. (Very emphatic) 5. The garden is mine; yours (*sing.*); ours; yours (*pl.*).

134. VOCABULARY XIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
comrade, companion	**cómes, cómitis,** *m.*	*comity*, *Count*
freedom	**lībértās,**[1] **-ātis,** *f.*	Cf. **līber, 96**
light	**lūx, lūcis,** *f.*	*Lucy*, trans*luc*ent
voice, speech	**vōx, vōcis,** *f.*	*vocal*, *voc*iferous
slavery	**sérvitūs,**[1] **-tūtis,** *f.*	Cf. **servus, 40**
manliness, courage	**vírtūs,**[1] **-tūtis,** *f.*	*virtue*, *virtu*ous
safety	**sálūs, salūtis,** *f.*	*salut*ary
greet	**salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*salute*, *salutat*ion
move	**móveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus**	*mot*or, *mot*ion
first	**prīmus, -a, -um**	*prim*ary, *prim*er
at daybreak	**prīmā lūce**	
in front of, on behalf of	**prō** (*prep. w. Abl.*)	*pro*ceed, *pro*mote
without	**sine** (*prep. w. Abl.*)	*sine*cure
across	**trāns** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*trans*fer, *trans*late

[1] Nouns in **-tās** and **-tūs** express a *quality* and are *feminine.* With **vir** (*man*) associate **vír-tūs** (*manliness, courage,* "virtue").

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

135. *A.* 1. Rēx Britanniae Magnae nunc est Georgius V (Quīntus). Vīdistīne verba (*words*) Latīna in nummīs (*coins*) Anglicīs (*English*)? Quid est in nummīs nostrīs Americānīs?



2. Lēgēs et lībertātem laudāmus. Lēgēs nostrae sunt vōx populī.



3. Prō lībertāte et patriā pugnāre semper dēbēmus. Sine lībertāte vīta est misera.

4. Salūs patriae nostrae est in lēgibus et lībertāte. Nōn silent (*are silent*) lēgēs nostrae etiam inter (*among*) arma.

5. Nōnne amātis patriam vestram? Americam līberam salūtāmus.

6. Fabius cum Mārcō fīliō ducem mīlitum salūtāvit. Sextius, dux mīlitum, amīcus erat Fabī agricolae.

7. Puerī ūnā (adv. *together*) fuerant. Fabiō equum pulchrum dedit. Sextium in proelium equus saepe portāverat; nunc agricolam in oppidum portābit. Aestāte in agrīs labōrābit.

8. Virtūs mīlitum magna fuit. Trāns Rhēnum dēnsae silvae erant.

9. Dux mīlitum prīmā lūce castra mōvit. Hieme equitēs in hībernīs erunt.

10. Virtūs amīcitiam cōnfirmat. Sine virtūte amīcitia esse nōn potest. Cōnscientia (*conscience*) est vōx Deī.

B. 1. There will not be kings in our land. We shall fight for the welfare of our country.

2. Where are the horsemen? Where are the soldiers? Are they in the winter camp?

3. The companions of the farmer are his son and daughter.

CHAPTER XIII



Temple of Jupiter, Basilica Julia — Temple of Saturn — Temple of Vespasian, Julian Rostra — Tabularium — Temple of Concord — Arch of Septimius Severus



Temple of Julius Caesar — Temple of Vesta — Palace of the Caesars — Temple of Castor and Pollux — Basilica Julia

The Roman Forum
(as it appeared in 80 A.D.)

4. Does Sextius' comrade live in the town? Where is your leader to-day? Is your friend at home (**domi**)?

5. We ought to see the camp. At daybreak the leader will break (move) camp.

136. Derivation Exercise. — How does Latin help us to use correctly "Anglican," "docility," "interregnum," "invocation," and "pacificator"? Consult an English dictionary.

The Forum

(Optional)

137. "The Forum, where the immortal accents glow,
And still the eloquent air breathes — burns with
Cicero!" — *Byron.*

The Roman Forum is an oblong space of low ground in the midst of the "Seven Hills" on which Rome was built. It was long used chiefly as a market place and many shops were built along its sides. Also public assemblies were held there at which orators addressed the people from the *Rostra*, or speaker's platform. Courts and public discussions were held in the Forum, so that public debates have come to be called *Forensics.* The Romans, not having newspapers like ourselves, would go to the Forum to get the news of the day (or, later, to the great public baths). Eventually the Forum and its neighborhood became crowded with columns, statues, and arches, with temples and other public buildings; and it was thronged by people of all nations. The Forum was "the Heart of Rome and the Heart of the Ancient World." To-day the most interesting place in all the world in many ways is still the Forum, and one may walk there along the streets familiar to Caesar and Cicero, to St. Peter and St. Paul. See map, p. 100.

Historia est testis temporum, lūx vēritātis. (Cicero)
History is the witness unto time, the light on truth

CHAPTER XIV

THIRD DECLENSION (*Cont.*) · THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

FIRST SECTION

138. Preliminary Review. — 1. Decline: **dux, rēx, lēx, lūx, pāx, mīles, comes, aestās, lībertās, virtūs, salūs.** Can you decline these eleven nouns in *two* minutes? 2. Review the Translation Exercises (**135**) for oral and written work.

139. Nouns with stems in l, n, r. — Masculine and feminine nouns with the base ending in **l** and **r** have no case ending in the Nominative singular, thus: Nom. **cōnsul-**, m., *consul*, Gen. **cṓnsulis**; Nom. **légiō-**, f., *legion*, Gen. **legiṓnis** (here the final **-n** of the base was dropped in the Nominative); Nom. **páter-**, m., *father*, Gen. **pátris** (here the final **-r** of the base became, as pronounced, **-er** in the Nominative).

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **l**, **n**, and **r** have no case ending in the Nominative singular, thus: Nom. **flū́men-**, n., *river*, Gen. **flū́minis** (here the base **flū́min-** is a weakened form of **flū́men-**); Nom. **témpus-**, n., *time;* Gen. **témpŏris** (here the base, originally **témpŏs-**, weakened the final **-ŏs** to **-ŭs** in the Nominative; elsewhere the stem appears as **témpŏr-**, since an **s** between two vowels regularly became **r**).

These nouns are declined as follows:

	cōnsul, m., *consul* Base: **cōnsul-**	**légiō**, f., *legion* Base: **legiōn-**	**páter**, m., *father* Base: **patr-**	**flūmen**, n., *river* Base: **flūmin-**	**témpŭs**, n., *time* Base: **tempŏr-**
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N.	cōnsul	légiō [1]	páter	flūmen	témpus
G.	cōnsul**is**	legiōn**is**	pátr**is**	flūmin**is**	tempor**is**
D.	cōnsul**ī**	legiōn**ī**	pátr**ī**	flūmin**ī**	tempor**ī**
Ac.	cōnsul**em**	legiōn**em**	pátr**em**	flūmen	témpus
Ab.	cōnsul**e**	legiōn**e**	pátr**e**	flūmin**e**	tempor**e**
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N.	cōnsul**ēs**	legiōn**ēs**	pátr**ēs**	flūmin**a**	tempor**a**
G.	cōnsul**um**	legiōn**um**	pátr**um**	flūmin**um**	tempor**um**
D.	cōnsúl**ibus**	legiōn**ibus**	pátr**ibus**	flūmín**ibus**	tempór**ibus**
Ac.	cōnsul**ēs**	legiōn**ēs**	pátr**ēs**	flūmin**a**	témpor**a**
Ab.	cōnsúl**ibus**	legiōn**ibus**	pátr**ibus**	flūmín**ibus**	tempór**ibus**

Observe.—1. Neuter nouns (as in the Second Declension) have the same form in the *Nominative* and *Accusative* singular, and the Nominative and Accusative plural end in **-a.** 2. The Vocative of *all* nouns of the Third Declension has the same form as the Nominative both in the singular and plural.


A Roman Cameo

140. The Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension.[2]—The gender of Latin nouns is often indicated by the meaning;

[1] Nouns whose Nominative singular ends in **-ō** are declined like **légiō**, Gen. **legiōnis** (base: **legiōn-**), or like **multitū́dō**, f., *multitude*, Gen. **multitū́dinis** (base: **multitū́din-**), *i.e.* in the Genitive we have **-ōnis** or **-inis**. *Most nouns in* **-ō** *have* **-inis** *in the Genitive.*

[2] Additional rules for determining the gender of nouns of the Third Declension will be given in Chapter XXXIII.

often the form of the *Nominative singular* indicates the gender, thus:

1. Nouns in **-or** are *masculine:* **lábor, labōris,** m., *labor;* **tímor, timōris,** m., *fear;* but **sóror, sorōris,** f., *sister,* and **árbor, árboris,** f., *tree.*

2. Nouns in **-tās** and **-tūs** are *feminine:* **lībértās, lībertātis,** f., *liberty;* **vírtūs, virtūtis,** f., *manliness, courage, virtue.*

3. Nouns in **-tūdō** and **-īdō** are *feminine:* **aegritūdō, aegritūdinis,** f., *sickness;* **magnitūdō, magnitūdinis,** f., *magnitude, size;* **cupídō, cupídinis,** f., *desire.*

4. Nouns in **-men** (genitive **-minis**) and **-ŭs** (genitive **-ŏris** or **-eris**) are *neuter:* **nṓmen, nṓminis,** n., *name;* **córpŭs, córpŏris,** n., *body;* **ópŭs, óperis,** n., *work.*

141. VOCABULARY XIV

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
just	**iūstus, -a, -um**	*just*ify, ad*just*
justice	**iūstítia, -ae,** *f.*	*justice*
judge, juror	**iūdex, iūdicis,** *m.*	*judic*ial, *judic*ious
trial, judgment	**iūdícium, iūdícī,** *n.*	*judiciary*
brother	**frāter, frātris,** *m.*	*frater*nal, *frater*nity
mother	**māter, mātris,** *f.*	*mater*nal, *matri*mony
sister	**sóror, sorōris,** *f.*	*soror*ity
name	**nṓmen, nṓminis,** *n.*	*nomin*ative, *nomin*al
fear (*verb*)	**tímeō, -ēre, tímuī, —**	in*tim*idate
fear (*noun*)	**tímor, timōris,** *m.*	*timor*ous
fearful	**tímidus, -a, -um**	*timid, timid*ity
level, even, just, fair	**aéquus, -a, -um**	*equ*al, *equ*ation
uneven, unjust	**inīquus, -a, -um**	*inequ*ality
frighten	**térreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	*terr*ify, *terr*ible
wayfarer, traveler	**viātor, viātōris,** *m.*	Cf. **via, 16**

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

142. *A.* 1. Numerus lēgum est magnus. Lēgēs bonās et validās (*strong*) virī malī timent. Virī bonī lēgēs laudant.

2. Lēgēs bonae bonōs virōs nōn terrent. Lēgēs bonās habēre dēbēmus. Sine lēgibus bonīs patria nostra stāre nōn potest.

3. Hominēs deum timent et amant et laudant. Iūdex iūstus iūstitiam dat. Iūdex iūstus esse dēbet. Officium iūdicis est iūstitiam dāre.

4. Iūdex iūstitiam dāre dēbet. Iūdicēs nostrī virī bonī et nōtī sunt. Iūdex inīquus iūdicium aequum nōn dat



Trajan's Army Crossing the Danube on a Bridge of Boats
(From the Relief on Trajan's Column)

5. Multa flūmina in Galliā sunt. Numerus flūminum est magnus. Rhēnus et Rhŏdănus (*Rhone*) sunt flūmina magna.

6. Ubi est flūmen? Quid est nōmen? Nīlus est flūmen magnum in Aegyptō (*Egypt*). Ubi est Dānuvius (*Danube*)?

B. 1. Did you see the leader's father, mother, sister, and brother? Were they in the camp?

2. Did Fabius, the farmer, praise the soldiers? Had the soldiers been fighting for their country?

3. Were the horses of the horsemen in the camp? Who gave a horse to Fabius?

4. Did the barbarians take possession of the camp? Who saved Sextius' life in the battle? What did Sextius give the soldier?

5. They carried the body of the soldier back to town. The leader had praised the great courage of the soldier. He gave his life for his country. Good men ought to love their country and to fight for (its) laws.



Filia et Māter
(A Pompeian Girl returns to her Mother)

6. Have you my book? I have not your books. Where are our books?

143. Derivation Exercise. — Watch for English words related to Latin words already learned. These are constantly occurring in your English readings and in other textbooks. (Cf. pp. 186 and 187.) Bring *three* such words and show the use of each in an English sentence.

CHAPTER XV (REVIEW)

144. Vocabularies and Syntax. — (*a*) Review carefully Vocabularies XI–XIV. (*b*) Practice, for accuracy and speed, on **terra, īnsula, hortus, amīcus, templum, oppidum, fīlius, auxilium, dux, mīles, aestās, virtūs, legiō, pater, flūmen, tempus, bonus, līber, aeger, vocō, sum, possum, moneō, videō.** (*c*) Review the Rules of Syntax for Chapters I–XIV, pages 338–339.



A Coin of Vespasian
(Commemorating the subjugation of Judea, 70 A.D)

SENTENCES ILLUSTRATING SYNTAX IN CHAPTERS I–XIV

145. 1. Mīles cum multīs comitibus in urbe manet. 2. Agricolae agrōs amīcōrum arant. 3. Dēbēsne amīcō tuō pecūniam dare? 4. Nōnne est comes meus vir iūstus? 5. Num aestāte vīdistī castra mīlitum nostrōrum? 6. Mānlius agricola arātrō et equīs agrum arābat. 7. Māter et pater in oppidō multōs annōs manēbant. 8. Habentne amīcī tuī nōmina Latīna?

THE COLOSSEUM (OR COLISEUM)

(*Optional*)

146. "While stands the Coliseum, Rome shall stand;
When falls the Coliseum, Rome shall fall;
And when Rome falls — the World."

— *Byron.*

The *Colosseum*, or *Flavian Amphitheater*, one of the most remarkable buildings in the world, was dedicated by the

Emperor Titus in the year 80 A.D. It was intended to afford spectators the view of an inclosed space called the *arena,* where contests took place between professional combatants called *gladiators,* or else between men and wild animals.[1] The Colosseum was in the shape of an ellipse, the longer axis being 615 feet, the shorter 510 feet, and it covered about five acres of ground. The greatest height of the outside wall was about 157 feet. The Colosseum would hold about 80,000 spectators (possibly not over 50,000). Its general appearance within is familiar to Americans through such amphitheaters as the *Syracuse University Stadium* (capacity 25,000) and the *Yale Bowl* (capacity 60,000 to 70,000). The games celebrated in the Colosseum were on a magnificent scale, one hundred lions being sometimes let loose in the arena at once. Christianity put an end to these cruel sports. See map, p. 100.



The Colosseum as it looks to-day

[1] Cf. Bulwer-Lytton, *Last Days of Pompeii*, Book V, Ch. 4.

Nōbilitās miseriās nōbilitat. (Accius) — *Nobility ennobles miseries*

CHAPTER XVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *REGŌ*

FIRST SECTION

147. Preliminary Review. — 1. Place side by side the tenses (1st pers. sing.) of the Indicative Active of **vocō, moneō, sum,** and **possum,** marking long vowels and the accent. 2. Repeat each synopsis *three* times, associating with each tense its meaning. 3. Conjugate, testing your speed, each tense of **vocō, moneō, sum,** and **possum.** (Were you able to give these in *four* minutes?)


Gallic Horseman

148. Third Conjugation. — Verbs of the Third Conjugation (*e.g.* **régō,** *I rule*) have the Present Infinitive Active in **-ĕre** (*e.g.* **régere,** *to rule*). The Perfect Indicative Active of **régō** is formed by adding **-sī** to the verb root (**reg + sī**): **rēxī,** *I ruled,* or *I have ruled.* The Perfect Passive Participle is generally formed by adding **-tus** or **-sus** to the verb root, as **rēctus, -a, -um** (**reg + tus**), *having been ruled.* Before **-tus** a final **g** of the verb root changes to **c**. The principal parts of **régō** are: **régō, régere, rēxī, rēctus.**

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are inflected in the Indicative Active as follows:

PRESENT *I rule*, etc.		PERFECT *I ruled, have ruled*, etc.	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
1. **régō**	**régimus**	1. **rḗxī**	**rḗximus**
2. **régis**	**régitis**	2. **rēxístī**	**rēxístis**
3. **régit**	**régunt**	3. **rḗxit**	**rēxḗrunt**

IMPERFECT *I was ruling* or *I ruled*, etc.		PLUPERFECT *I had ruled*, etc.	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
1. **regḗbam**	**regēbā́mus**	1. **rḗxeram**	**rēxerā́mus**
2. **regḗbās**	**regēbā́tis**	2. **rḗxerās**	**rēxerā́tis**
3. **regḗbat**	**regḗbant**	3. **rḗxerat**	**rḗxerant**

FUTURE *I shall rule*, etc.		FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have ruled*, etc.	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
1. **régam**	**regḗmus**	1. **rḗxerō**	**rēxérimus**
2. **régēs**	**regḗtis**	2. **rḗxeris**	**rēxéritis**
3. **réget**	**régent**	3. **rḗxerit**	**rḗxerint**

Observe. — In the Present Indicative the stem **regĕ-** weakens to **regĭ-**; in the third person plural, to **regŭ-**. In the Future Indicative the tense sign is **a** in the first person, in the other persons **ē**, except before **t** and **nt**, where it is **ĕ**.

149. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate carefully each tense, associating with each form its meaning. 2. Pronounce the first person singular of each tense in order, associating with each tense its meaning. 3. With the book closed, write a synopsis in the first person singular; then compare your work with the book. 4. *For accuracy and speed*, repeat this synopsis several times, giving the meaning of each tense. Then conjugate each tense several times.

150. VOCABULARY XVI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
Caesar	**Caésar, Caésăris,** *m.*	*Kaiser, Czar*
foot	**pēs, pĕdis,** *m.*	*ped*al, *ped*estal
foot-soldier	**pédes, péditis** , *m.*	*ped*estrian
defend	**dēféndō, -ere, -ī, dēfēnsus**	*defend*er, *defense*
say	**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, díctus**	*dict*ionary, *dict*ion
lead	**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, dúctus**	via*duct*, *duct*
bring together	**condūcō, -ere,** etc.	*conduct*, *conduct*or
lead out	**ēdūcō, -ere,** etc.	
lead through	**perdūcō, -ere,** etc.	
lead forward	**prōdūcō, -ere,** etc.	*produce*, *product*
lead back	**redūcō, -ere,** etc.	*reduce*, *reduc*ible
pick, gather, read	**légō, -ere, lēgī, léctus**	*leg*ible, *lect*ure
send	**míttō, -ere, mīsī, míssus**	dis*miss*, *miss*ion
write	**scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scríptus**	*scrib*e, *script*ure
enroll	**cōnscrībō, -ere,** etc.	*conscrip*tion
under, beneath	**sub** (*prep. w. Acc.* to the foot of; *w. Abl.* at the foot of)	

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

151. *A.* 1. Magister cum Mārcō, fīliō agricolae, ad vīllam ambulat. Arborem magnam et pulchram vident. Sub arbore sedent (*sit*). Mārcus magistrum dē Horātiō (*Horatius*), virō Rōmānō, rogat.

2. Lēgistīne fābulam dē Horātiō? Magister fābulam dē Horātiō nārrābit. Quid dīcet magister? "Horātius pontem (*bridge*) dēfendit et patriam servāvit."

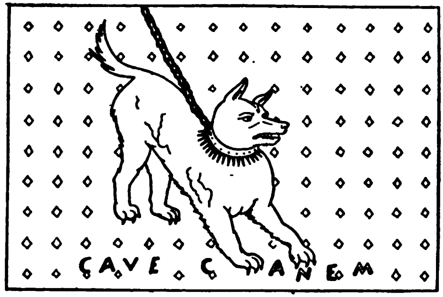
3. Dux noster mīlitēs ad flūmen dūxit. Trāns flūmen sunt barbarī. Prīnceps barbarōrum multōs condūxit. Proelia crēbra erunt. Virtūs mīlitum Rōmānōrum est magna. Prīmā lūce ex castrīs dux mīlitēs ēdūcet.

4. In Galliā sunt oppida multa et magna. Aestāte agrī sunt pulchrī. Rōmānī Galliam dēfendere dēbēbant.

5. Dux mīlitum fīdus est. Et peditēs et equitēs habet. Oppida et agrōs Gallōrum dēfendent.

6. Dux Fabiō amīcō epistulās (*letters*) saepe scrībet. Mīlitēs novōs cōnscrīpsit. Mīlitēs novōs ad castra mittet.

7. Per Galliam ad Rhēnum Caesar mīlitēs perdūxit. Barbarōs superāvit (*overcame*). Pāx est in Galliā.



"Beware the Dog"
(From the Vestibule of a Pompeian House)

B. 1. We shall say; they said; he had said; they are saying; you (*sing.*) will write; you (*pl.*) will write; she will write; you have written; you were writing; we had written; they will have written.

2. Good men will always defend their country; they ought always to fight for the welfare of the country.

3. The barbarians had attacked the town. The inhabitants of the town praised the loyal leader; have praised; will have praised.

4. Where are the teacher and Marcus? They are sitting under the large and beautiful tree. The tree is near the river. The teacher will tell Marcus about Caesar.

152. Derivation Exercise.—Find for the notebook *ten* English words related to **dūcō**. Most of these will have Latin prepositions used as prefixes, *e.g.* "*in*-duce," "*pro*-duction," etc. Over a *hundred* English words are related to **dūcō**.

LATIN SELECTION

Quintus Cicero Defends the Camp



A Message from Caesar

Caesar's message fastened to a spear reaches the besieged Roman camp

153. Quīntus Cicerō, Mārcī Cicerōnis frāter, lēgātus Caesaris fuit. Cum Caesare ad Britanniam [54 B.C.] nāvigāvit et posteā (*afterward*) in Galliā castra magnā cum virtūte dēfendit. Propter inopiam frūmentī Caesar mīlitēs in hīberna distribuerat (*had distributed*). Quīntō Cicerōnī ūnam (*one*) legiōnem commīserat. Castra in Nerviīs nōn longē (*far*) ā flūmine Rhēnō aberant. Prīnceps barbarōrum, nōmine Ambiorīx, castra oppugnāvit. Multōs barbarōs habēbat, sed ūna legiō Rōmāna et dēfendit castra et servāvit. Ubi (*when*) tandem[1] (*at length*) Caesar subvēnit (*came to their aid*), multī iam vulneribus labōrābant. Caesar Quīntum et legiōnem laudāvit.

---

[1] Cf. the humorous derivative in "to drive *tandem*" (i.e. *at length*).

Mōribus antīquīs rēs stat Rōmāna virīsque. (Ennius)
By olden customs and great men Rome stands

CHAPTER XVII

PASSIVE VOICE: FIRST CONJUGATION · ABLATIVE OF AGENT

FIRST SECTION

154. Preliminary Review. — 1. Place side by side the Indicative Active synopses (1st pers. sing.) of **dīcō, dūcō, mittō, scrībō, dēfendō.** 2. Repeat aloud each synopsis *three* times, associating with each tense its meaning. 3. Conjugate, testing your speed, *each* tense of **dīcō, dūcō, mittō, scrībō, dēfendō.** (Were you able to give these in *three* minutes?)



Coin of Julius Caesar

155. The Passive Voice. — The Active voice of a verb expresses the subject of the verb as *acting*, that is, as the doer of the action; in the Passive voice the subject of a verb is acted upon, that is, receives the action. Thus: *I call*, or *I am calling*, **vócō** (Pres. Ind. *Active*) becomes *I am called*, or *I am being called*, **vócor** (Pres. Ind. *Passive*); *I was calling*, or *I called*, **vocābam** (Imp. Ind. *Active*) becomes *I was being called*, or *I was called*, **vocābar** (Imp. Ind. *Passive*); and *I shall call*, **vocābō** (Fut. Ind. *Active*) becomes *I shall be called*, **vocābor** (Fut. Ind. *Passive*). In these tenses the Passive voice is indicated by the personal endings.

Present Indicative Passive			Personal Endings
Sing.	"Present"	"Progressive Present"	*Sing.*
1. vócor	*I am called*	*I am being called*	**-r**
2. **vocāris** (or **-re**)	*you are called*	*you are being called*	**-ris** or **-rĕ**
3. **vocātur**	*he is called*	*he is being called*	**-tur**
Plur.			*Plur.*
1. **vocāmur**	*we are called*	*we are being called*	**-mŭr**
2. **vocāminī**	*you are called*	*you are being called*	**-minī**
3. **vocántur**	*they are called*	*they are being called*	**-ntur**

Imperfect Indicative Passive		
Sing.	"Past Tense"	"Past Progressive"
1. **vocābar**	*I was called*	*I was being called*
2. **vocābāris** (or **-re**)	*you were called*	*you were being called*
3. **vocābātur**	*he was called*	*he was being called*
Plur.		
1. **vocābāmur**	*we were called*	*we were being called*
2. **vocābāminī**	*you were called*	*you were being called*
3. **vocābántur**	*they were called*	*they were being called*

Future Indicative Passive	
Sing.	
1. **vocābor**	*I shall be called*
2. **vocāběris** (or **-re**)	*you will be called*
3. **vocābitur**	*he will be called*
Plur.	
1. **vocābimur**	*we shall be called*
2. **vocābíminī**	*you will be called*
3. **vocābúntur**	*they will be called*

Observe. — The tense sign of the Future (**bĭ**) is **bĕ** in the second person singular (**vocāběris**), and **bŭ** in the third person plural (**vocābúntur**).

156. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate each tense, associating with each form its meaning. Practice for *accuracy* and *speed*. 2. Write, from memory, all the forms of each tense, marking long vowels and the accent. 3. Conjugate these Passive tenses of **laudō** and **culpō**.

157. VOCABULARY XVII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
influence, favor (*pl*, thanks)	**grátia, -ae,** *f.*	*grace, gracious*
to give thanks	**grátiās ágere**	
province	**prōvíncia, -ae,** *f.*	*provincial*
a Gaul	**Gállus, -ī,** *m.*	*Gallic*
herd, flock	**grex, grégis,** *m.*	con*greg*ate
likeness	**imā́gō, imā́ginis,** *f.*	*image, imagine*
custom, habit	**mōs, mṓris,** *m.*	*mor*al, *mor*ality
wound	**vúlnus, vúlneris,** *n.*	*vulner*able
point out, show	**dēmṓnstrō, -ā́re, -ā́vī, -ā́tus**	*demonstrate*
drive, do	**ágō, -ere, ḗgī, ā́ctus**	*ag*ent, *act*
drive together, collect, compel	**cṓgō, -ere, coḗgī, coā́ctus**	*cog*ent, *cog*ency
drive back, reduce	**rédigō, -ere, redḗgī, redā́ctus**	
learn, ascertain	**cognṓscō, -ere, cognṓvī, cógnitus**	re*cogn*ize, re*cogniti*on
carry, accomplish	**gérō, -ere, géssī, géstus**	belli*ger*ent, sug*gest*
put, place	**pṓnō, -ere, pósuī, pósitus**	op*pon*ent, *pose*, *posit*ion
leave behind	**relínquō, -ere, relī́quī, relíctus**	*relinq*uish, *relic*
eminent, unusual	**ēgrégius, -a, -um**	*egregi*ous
away from, by	**ā, ab** (*prep. w. Abl.*)[1]	*ab*sent, *ab*stain

SECOND SECTION

158. Agency with a Verb in the Passive Voice. — The English sentence (1) *The farmer praises the horse* is in the

[1] We have now met the more common prepositions used with the Ablative: **ā** (or **ab**), **ē** (or **ex**), and **dē**; **cum**, **prō**, and **sine**.

Active voice and represents the subject *farmer* as the agent, the doer-of-the-action.

In the Passive voice (2) *The horse is praised by the farmer* expresses the same thought, but in a different way; the subject now is the *horse*, and the doer-of-the-action, the agent, is indicated by the prepositional phrase *by the farmer*.

These sentences become in Latin: (1) **Agricola equum laudat**, *The farmer praises the horse;* (2) **Equus ab agricolā laudātur**, *The horse is praised by the farmer*.

159. Rule. — Agency with a verb in the Passive voice is expressed in Latin by a prepositional phrase (**ā** or **ab** with the Ablative), just as in English by an equivalent phrase.

Note. — The preposition **ā** (**ab**) means *away-from*, *from*, as in **Oppidum ā flūmine nōn longē abest**, *The town is not far distant from the river*. In Latin the agent with a verb in the Passive is really the person *from* whom comes the doing of the action; hence **ab agricolā** in (*b*) is equivalent to English *by-the-farmer*.

Do not confuse *agency* with *means*. Agency, as just explained, refers to *persons*, means refers to *things*. See **80**.

160. Indirect Agency. — Indirect agency, the person *through* whom (not *by* whom), is expressed by **per** with the Accusative: **Per amīcōs multa cognōvī**, *I learned many things through friends*.

161. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. The leader of the soldiers is praised by the soldiers. 2. The son of the farmer will be encouraged by rewards. 3. We shall learn good things (**bona**, *n. pl.*) through the messenger.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

162. *A*. 1. "Hodiē," inquit Mārcus patrī, "dē Caesare cognōvī. Galliam superāvit et in prōvinciam redēgit. Magister

Galliam in tabulā nostrā geōgraphicā dēmōnstrāvit et multa dīxit dē terrā et flūminibus Galliae.

2. Nōmina flūminum dāre possum. Ā magistrō laudābor. Plūtarchus (*Plutarch*) vītam Caesaris linguā Graecā scrīpsit.

3. Magister librum discipulīs dēmōnstrāvit. Librum legere studeō (*I am eager*). Caesar vir bonus et magnus fuit."



Julius Caesar (102–44 B.C.)
"He doth bestride the narrow world like a Colossus."
— Shakespeare

4. Mārcus, fīlius agricolae, ā magistrō saepe laudātur. Amīcus Mārcī nōn semper laudābātur. Cūr laudātur Mārcus ā magistrō?

5. Est fīdus discipulus. Estisne fīdī discipulī? Nōnne semper laudāminī?

6. Dux mīlitēs in castra dūcet; redūxit; redūcēbat; redūxerat. Caesar barbarōs Galliam relinquere coēgit. In Galliā manērē nōn potuērunt.

7. Bellum ā barbarīs parātur. Oppidum oppugnābunt. Oppidum expugnāre nōn poterunt.

8. Incolae oppidum dēfendent et servābunt. Mīles vulnere labōrābat. "Prōcēdere" (*to proceed*), inquit, "nōn possum."

9. Comitēs mīlitī auxilium dabunt; dedērunt. Mīles comitibus grātiās aget.

10. Gregēs agricolae bonī sunt ēgregiī. Praemia fīdīs servīs ab Rōmānīs dābantur. Mōrēs Rōmānōs laudāmus.

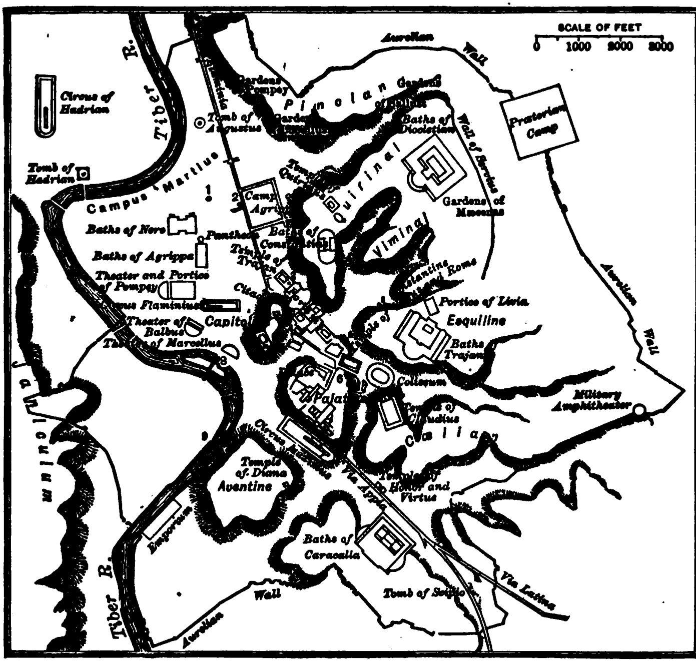
B. 1. At daybreak our soldiers will be called together by (their) leader. The camp will be attacked by the barbarians.

2. Our (soldiers) will defend the camp with weapons. They will compel the barbarians to leave many wounded in the forest.

3. Marcus, the son of the farmer, wrote about the battle

and praised our (men). Our (men) are praised by Marcus, the son of the farmer.

4. Marcus had learned many (things) about the customs of the Gauls. He has often praised the courage of the Gauls. They were waging war for (prō) liberty.



Imperial Rome

1, Column of Antoninus Pius; 2, Column of Marcus Aurelius; 3, Column of Trajan; 4, Arch of Septimius Severus; 5, Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus; 6, Arch of Titus; 7, Arch of Constantine; 8, Fabrician Bridge; 9, Sublician Bridge.

5. Cornelia gave beautiful roses to (her) mother, a beautiful woman; has given; will give. Beautiful roses will be given by Cornelia to (her) mother.

163. Derivation Exercise. — To what Latin words are "cognizant," "election," and "demonstrable" related?

Tempora mūtantur, et nōs mūtāmur in illīs[1]
Times change and we change in them

CHAPTER XVIII

PASSIVE VOICE: FIRST CONJUGATION (*Cont.*)

FIRST SECTION

164. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write a synopsis of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **vocō, laudō, culpō.** 2. Repeat each synopsis *three* times, associating with each tense its meaning. 3. Conjugate these tenses, testing your speed.


A Greek Vase
Aphrodite (Venus) and Swan

165. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive.— We have learned the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of **vocō** in the Passive voice. In these tenses the Passive is indicated by the personal endings (*e.g.* **vócor, vocābar, vocābor**). In the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, the Passive voice is expressed by using the Perfect Passive Participle **vocātus (-a, -um)** with **sum** for the Perfect; with **eram** for the Pluperfect; and with **erō** for the Future Perfect. Thus: **vocātus sum,** *I was called*, or *I have been called;* **vocātus**

[1] English parallel: "New occasions teach new duties; time makes ancient good uncouth" (*Lowell*).

éram, *I had been called;* **vocātus éro**, *I shall have been called.* These tenses are conjugated as follows:

		Perfect	
		Singular	
1.	vocātus	sum,	*I was called*, or *I have been called*
2.	vocātus	es,	*you were called*, or *you have been called*
3.	vocātus	est,	*he was called*, or *he has been called*
		Plural	
1.	vocātī	súmus,	*we were called*, or *we have been called*
2.	vocātī	éstis,	*you were called*, or *you have been called*
3.	vocātī	sunt,	*they were called*, or *they have been called*

Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
Singular		*Singular*	
1. vocātus éram,	*I had been called*	1. vocātus érō,	*I shall have been called*
2. vocātus érās,	*you had been called*	2. vocātus éris,	*you will have been called*
3. vocātus érat,	*he had been called*	3. vocātus érit,	*he will have been called*
Plural		*Plural*	
1. vocātī erāmus,	*we had been called*	1. vocātī érimus,	*we shall have been called*
2. vocātī erātis,	*you had been called*	2. vocātī éritis,	*you will have been called*
3. vocātī érant,	*they had been called*	3. vocātī érunt,	*they will have been called*

Note. — The Perfect Passive Participle is an adjective and *changes in form* to agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject. Thus: puell**a** (f. sing.) vocāt**a** (f. sing.) **est**; puell**ae** (f. pl.) vocāt**ae** (f. pl.) **sunt**; templ**um** (n. sing.) laudāt**um** (n. sing.) **est**; templ**a** (n. pl.) laudāt**a** (n. pl.) **sunt**.

166. Exercise. — Conjugate the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of **laudō** and **culpō**.

167. VOCABULARY XVIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
supply (*pl.* forces)	**cōpia, -ae,** *f.*	*copious*
need, lack	**inópia, -ae,** *f.*	
reputation, report	**fāma, -ae,** *f.*	*fame*, *fam*ous
advice, plan	**cōnsílium, cōnsílī,** *n.*	*counsel*, *counsel*or
garrison, guard	**praesídium, praesídī,** *n.*	*Presid*ent, *presid*e
shout	**clāmor, clāmōris,** *m.*	*clamor*, *clamor*ous
speaking, speech	**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis,** *f.*	*oration*, *orat*ory
speaker, orator	**ōrātor, ōrātōris,** *m.*	*orator*ical
shout	**clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	ex*claim*, pro*claim*
bring together	**compórtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*comport*
cultivate, dwell in	**cólō, -ere, cóluī, cúltus**[1]	*cult*ure, *cult*ivate
set up, decide	**cōnstítuō, -ere, cōnstítuī, cōnstitūtus**	*constitute*
consult	**cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsúluī, cōnsúltus**[2]	*consult*ation
select, choose	**dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**	
middle, middle of	**médius, -a, -um**	im*medi*ate
before	**ánte** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*ante*cedent
on account of	**própter** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	
on account of	**ob** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*ob*vious

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

168. *A.* 1. Puella ā mātre laudāta est. Māter rosās in hortō colēbat. Puella mātrī auxilium dederat.

2. Auxilium mātrī ā puellā dātum est. Puellae māter librōs dedit. Puellae ā mātre librī dātī sunt; dātī erant; dantur; dātī erunt.

---

[1] Associate **colō** with **agricola** (16) and **incola** (40).

[2] Associate **cōnsulō** with **cōnsul** (*consul, one-who-consults,* **139**). **cōnsilium** was formed from the root of **cōnsulō** : **cōnsul + ium** became **cōnsilium** (*a consulting*), a noun of action. A similar noun of action is **iūdicium** (**141**).

3. Frūmentum in oppidum comportātum est. Inopia frūmentī in oppidō fuerat. Nunc est cōpia frūmentī in oppidō.

4. Incolae oppidī bellum timēbant. Agricolae ab incolīs in oppidum vocābantur; vocātī sunt; vocābuntur. Dē perīculō cōnsulent.

5. Dux cōpiās in oppidum dūxit. Praesidia oppidī ante bellum cōnfirmāre cōnstituērunt. Mānlius in proeliō vulnerātus est. Nōn iam[1] in proeliō manēre poterat.

6. Vōx mea lībertātem semper dēfendet; dēfendit. Salūs patriae meae in lībertāte est; semper erit; semper fuit. Populus noster semper līber erit.

7. Amīcōs bonōs habēre dēbēmus. Suntne amīcī tuī bonī? Et pater et māter amīcōs meōs laudant. Amīcōs bonōs semper dēligō; dēlēgī; dēligam.

8. In mediō hortō fuit arbor magna et pulchra. Sub arbore Mārcus ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis (*of Cicero*) legēbat.

9. Terram colunt agricolae. Amīcōs colimus; coluimus; coluerāmus. Amīcī propter virtūtēs laudātī sunt.

B. 1. You will have been praised. He was praising; he was praised. We shall be able to remain in the town. The soldiers will defend the town.

2. The leader has enrolled new legions. The soldiers are being called together; have been called together. Why are the gates of the town being strengthened?

3. He wounded the leader of the barbarians with a sword.

4. We shall cultivate our friends. We ought to cultivate our friends. We have chosen good friends. The reputation of friends ought to be good. Is the reputation of your friends good?

169. Derivation Exercise. — Can you find additional English words related to **clāmō**, **portō**, and **ante**?

---

[1] **iam**: *by this time, now;* **nōn iam**: *no longer.*

Palma nōn sine pulvere[1] — *Not without dust is the palm of victory*

CHAPTER XIX

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

FIRST SECTION

170. Preliminary Review. — 1. Place side by side the Indicative Passive tenses (1st pers. sing.) of **vocō, laudō, culpō.** 2. Conjugate, testing your speed, each tense of **vocō, laudō, culpō.** (Were you able to give these in *two* minutes?)

171. Indicative Passive of *Moneō*. — We have seen that in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative the Passive voice is indicated by Passive personal endings (*e.g.* Pres. **vócor,** Imp. **vocābar,** Fut. **vocābor**). Accordingly these tenses of **móneō** become in the Passive: Present, **móneor,** *I am advised*, or *I am being advised;* Imperfect, **monēbar,** *I was being advised*, or *I was advised;* Future, **monēbor,** *I shall be advised.*

We have also seen that the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are expressed with the help of the Perfect Passive Participle (*e.g.* Perf. **vocātus sum,** Pluperf. **vocātus éram,** Fut. Perf. **vocātus érō**). These tenses, therefore, of **móneō,** become in the Passive: Perfect, **mónitus sum,** *I was advised*, or *I have been advised;* Pluperfect, **mónitus éram,** *I had been advised;* Future Perfect, **mónitus érō,** *I shall have been advised.* See page 327.

[1] English equivalent: "No cross, no crown" (*Elizabeth Barrett Browning*).

172. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate the Indicative Passive tenses of **moneō** several times, associating with each form its meaning. With the book closed, write a synopsis in the first person singular. 2. Practice giving the synopsis rapidly. 3. Write the principal parts of **videō**, and a synopsis of the Indicative Passive in the first person singular.

173. Compare the following synopses of **vocō** and **moneō**:

	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
Present	**vócō**	**vócor**	**móneō**	**móneor**
Imperfect	**vocā́bam**	**vocā́bar**	**monḗbam**	**monḗbar**
Future	**vocā́bō**	**vocā́bor**	**monḗbō**	**monḗbor**
Perfect	**vocā́vī**	**vocā́tus sum**	**mónuī**	**mónitus sum**
Pluperf.	**vocā́veram**	**vocā́tus éram**	**monúeram**	**mónitus éram**
Fut. Perf.	**vocā́verō**	**vocā́tus érō**	**monúerō**	**mónitus érō**

174. VOCABULARY XIX

ENGLISH MEANINGS	LATIN WORDS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
prudence	**prūdéntia, -ae,** *f.*	*prudence*
spirit, courage	**ánimus, -ī,** *m.*	*animus, anim*ate
influence	**auctṓritās, -tā́tis,** *f.*	*authority*
remind	**admóneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	*admon*ish
dare, venture	**aúdeō, -ēre, aúsus sum**[1]	*aud*acious, *aud*acity
dwell, inhabit	**íncolō, -ere, incóluī, —**	Cf. **incola, 40**
foresee	**prōvídeō, -ēre, prōvī́dī, prōvī́sus**	*provide, provis*ion
move back, remove	**remóveō, -ēre, remṓvī, remṓtus**	*remov*able, *remote*
sit, settle	**sédeō, -ēre, sēdī, —**	*sed*iment, *sed*entary
be eager	**stúdeō, -ēre, stúduī, —**	*stud*ent, *study*

[1] Observe that the Perfect Indicative, **aúsus sum**, *I dared*, or *I have dared*, is Passive in *form*, but Active in *meaning*. Likewise the Pluperfect is **aúsus éram**, *I had dared*, and the Future Perfect is **aúsus érō**, *I shall have dared.*

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
hold, keep	**téneō, -ēre, ténuī, —**	*ten*acious, con*tain*
obtain, hold	**obtíneō, -ēre, obtínuī, obténtus**	*obtain*
reach, extend	**pertíneō, -ēre, pertínuī, —**	*pertain*, *pertin*ent
hold back, retain	**retíneō, -ēre, retínuī, reténtus**	*retent*ion
hold up, sustain	**sustíneō, -ēre, sustínuī, susténtus**	*sustain*
necessary	**necésse** (*indeclinable adj.*)	*necess*ity
through	**per** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*per*vade, *per*ceive

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

175. *A.* 1. Pater fīlium monet; monuit; monēbat; monēbit. Fīlius ā patre monētur; monēbitur; monēbātur; monitus est; monitus erat; monitus erit.



The Arch of Trajan
(At Beneventum, South Central Italy)

2. Fīlius Sextī, ducis mīlitum, in scholā nōn studēbat. "Sine studiō," inquit magister, "puer vir bonus esse nōn potest."

3. Magister benignus erat: fīliō Sextī auxilium saepe dăbat.

4. Hodiē dīxit, "Sī (*if*) linguam Anglicam bene (*well*) cognōscere studēs, necesse est linguam Latīnam cognōscere."

5. Multī magistrum dēlectāre studēbant. Mārcus, fīlius agricolae, cum cūrā labōrābat. A magistrō saepe laudābātur.

6. Fabius agricola nunc in oppidō habitat. Et vīllam et gregēs vēndidit.[1] In oppidō multōs habet amīcōs.

7. Amīcōs in forō (*market place*) saepe videt. Multōrum fīliī cum Caesare in mediā Galliā sunt. Dē Caesare epistulās mittunt.

8. Prīncipēs Galliae Caesarī grātiās ēgērunt. Caesar Germānōs Galliam relinquere coēgerat.

9. Vīdistīne imāginem Caesaris? Quid cognōvistis dē Caesare? Cum Britannīs bellum gerere cōnstituit.

10. Incolae īnsulae Gallīs auxilium dederant. Caesar dē magnitūdine īnsulae et mōribus incolārum scrīpsit.

B. 1. Good friends will give good advice. We shall be advised by our friends. The influence of good friends is good.

2. The barbarians will not dare to attack the town. The Romans have pitched (**pōnō**) camp across the river. They will compel the Germans to leave Gaul.



The Victory Arch, New York

3. The Gauls were often waging war with the Germans. The Germans were eager to occupy and hold the beautiful fields of Gaul. The Germans dwelt across the Rhine.

4. Many Romans settled in Gaul and after a few years Roman laws extended to the Rhine.

5. For many years they retained (their) excellent (**ēgregius**) customs.

---

[1] **vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, —**: *sell* (cf. "vend," "vendor").

176. Derivation Exercise. — Give the meaning of "inanimate," "imprudence," and "improvident." Use each in a sentence.



The Arch of the Emperor Constantine

Constantine (323–337 A.D.) rescued the Empire from civil war, founded Constantinople, and made the Empire Christian

Roman Arches

(*Optional*)

177. In Rome and elsewhere triumphal arches were often erected to commemorate some great service to the State. These large and magnificent arches are often of marble and adorned with various kinds of sculpture. In appearance they recall their original, the city gate.

Three of the best known arches are at Rome: the *Arch of Septimius Severus* (cf. p. 81), the *Arch of Titus*, and the *Arch of Constantine.*

Among the modern commemorative arches that have been built after the pattern of these ancient Roman ones are the *Arch of Triumph* in Paris, the *Washington Arch* and the *Victory Arch* in New York, N. Y.

In hōc signō vincēs[1] — *In this sign thou shalt conquer*

CHAPTER XX (Review)

WORD LIST

178. Suggestions for Study. — Follow the method outlined in **55.** Give a synopsis of each starred verb, then conjugate each tense, testing your speed.

Nouns

cōpia
fāma
grātia
inopia
iūstitia
mīlitia
prōvincia
prūdentia
sagitta
vīta

---

animus
*annus
gladius
lēgātus
locus

---

arma
*castra
*cōnsilium
hīberna
iūdicium
praesidium
proelium

Nouns

aestās
arbor
auctōritās
clāmor
comes
cōnsul
*dux
eques
flūmen
frāter
grex
hiems
imāgō
iūdex
legiō
lēx
lībertās
lūx
māter
mīles
mōs
*nōmen
ōrātiō

Nouns

ōrātor
pater
pāx
pedes
pēs
prīnceps
*rēx
salūs
soror
tempŭs
timor
*virtūs
vōx
*vulnŭs

Verbs

comparō
comportō
conlocō
convocō
dēmōnstrō
nōminō
pācō

Verbs

salūtō

---

*audeō
compleō
dēbeō
doceō
*habeō
maneō
*moneō
- admoneō

moveō
- removeō

respondeō
sedeō
studeō
teneō
- obtineō
- pertineō
- retineō
- sustineō

timeō
terreō
*videō
- prōvideō

---

[1] Constantine, the first Christian emperor, saw in the sky a cross bearing a Greek motto which these words translate. (See p. 53.)

Verbs	Verbs	Adjectives	Prepositions
———	redūcō	inīquus	ā, ab
agō	gerō	iūstus	ante
cōgō	legō	medius	dē
redigō	mittō	prīmus	ob
cognōscō	pōnō	timidus	per
colō	regō	vīcīnus	prō
incolō	relinquō	———	propter
cōnstituō	*scrībō	*meus	sine
cōnsulō	cōnscrībō	noster	sub
dēfendō		tuus	trāns
dīcō	**Adjectives**	vester	
dūcō	aequus	**Adverbs**	
condūcō	crēber	cūr	
ēdūcō	ēgregius	tum	
perdūcō			
prōdūcō			

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters I–XIX

179. 1. Germānī agrōs pulchrōs Galliae occupāre studēbant.

2. Caesar mīlitēs novōs in Italiā cōnscrībere et statim cum Germānīs bellum gerere ausus est.

3. Sextius, amīcus agricolae, mīlitēs in hīberna redūxerat.

4. Dux mīlitum sagittā vulnerātus erat.

5. Fīlius ducis virtūtem et iūstitiam Caesaris laudāvit.

6. Amīcus noster saepe dē bellō et virtūte mīlitum scrīpsit.

7. Cūr nōn est Mārcus in scholā hodiē? Estne aeger? Minimē. Cum frātre in agrīs labōrat.

8. Multī discipulī hodiē adesse nōn possunt.

9. Fīlius et fīlia agricolae in scholā paucōs annōs manēre poterunt.



A Roman Cup (silver)
(From the Boscoreale villa near Pompeii)

10. Nōnne est lūx patriae nostrae lībertās? Lībertātem semper dēfendēmus.

11. Lēges sunt vōx populī. In Americā populus, nōn rēx, regit. Nostrās lēgēs iūstās laudāmus.

12. Aestāte multī gregēs in agrīs sunt.

13. In mediō flūmine est īnsula parva et pulchra. In īnsulā sunt multae arbŏrēs.

14. Agricola benignus fuit. Miserō servō pecūniam saepe dăbat.

180. Derivation Exercise, Type II. — Select *five* English words containing **nāv** (the base of **nāvis**, f., *ship*), which appears in **nāvigō** (**nāv** + **agō**), *I sail.* Write a brief definition of each and insert this exercise, when approved by the teacher, in the notebook. See the following model:

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, *call* —
*vo*cation — a *calling*, occupation
*vo*cational — pertaining to a vocation or *calling*
*voc*al — pertaining to the voice
e*voke* — *call* out
con*voke* — *call* together
*vocat*ive — case of *calling*, case of address
re*voke* — *call* back, remand
in*voke* — *call* upon, ask for
*voc*iferous — with large *calling* power, with loud tones
in*voc*ation — a *calling* upon, a prayer



A Wall Painting from Pompeii

(Psyches Gathering Flowers)

Numquam periculum sine periculō vincitur. (Publilius)
Never is peril conquered without peril

CHAPTER XXI

PASSIVE VOICE: THIRD CONJUGATION · PERSONAL PRONOUNS *EGO*, *TŪ* · INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* · REFLEXIVE PRONOUN *SUĪ* · REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES

FIRST SECTION

181. The Indicative Passive of **regō** is: Present, **régor,** *I am ruled;* Imperfect, **regēbar,** *I was being ruled, I was ruled;* Future, **régar,** *I shall be ruled;* Perfect, **rēctus sum,** *I was ruled, I have been ruled;* Pluperfect, **rēctus éram,** *I had been ruled;* Future Perfect, **rēctus érō,** *I shall have been ruled.* These tenses are conjugated on page 329.

182. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate each tense, associating with each form its meaning; then practice for *accuracy* and *speed.* 2. Write a synopsis of the Active and Passive tenses of **regō.** 3. Write a synopsis of the Indicative Passive of **dūcō, mittō, scrībō.**

183. Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Persons. — The personal pronoun of the first person is **égo,** *I,* plural **nōs,** *we;* that of the second person is **tū,** *you* (or *thou*), plural **vōs,** *you.*[1]

Since the personal endings of a verb express the person and number of the subject (*e.g.* **laudō,** *I praise*), the subject does not need to be separately expressed by a personal pronoun, except for *emphasis* (*e.g.* **Ego laudō,** *I praise*).

[1] The personal pronouns of the third person (*he, she, it;* plural *they*) are supplied by the demonstrative pronouns (**215**).

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**égo,** *I*	**nōs,** *we*	**tū,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
Gen.	**méī,** *of me*	**nóstrum,**[1] *of us*	**túī,** *of you*	**véstrum,**[1] *of you*
Dat.	**míhi,** *to me* or *for me*	**nṓbīs,** *to us* or *for us*	**tíbi,** *to you* or *for you*	**vṓbīs,** *to you* or *for you*
Acc.	**mē,** *me*	**nōs,** *us*	**tē,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
Abl.	**mē,**[2] *me*	**nṓbīs,**[2] *us*	**tē,**[2] *you*	**vṓbīs,**[2] *you*

184. The Intensive Pronoun. — In English the "compound pronouns" (first person: *myself*, plural *ourselves;* second person: *yourself* or *thyself*, plural *yourselves;* third person: *himself, herself, itself*, plural *themselves*) are called *intensive pronouns* when used to emphasize a noun or pronoun beside which they are placed, thus: *I myself; mother herself.*

In Latin the intensive pronoun (with all persons) is **ípse,** m., **ípsa,** f., **ípsum,** n., *self, very.* The intensive pronoun agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs, thus: **Ego ipse,** *I myself;* **māter ipsa,** *mother herself.* The Latin intensive pronoun is declined on page 323.

185. Exercise. — (*a*) Pronounce each verb and give its *person, number,* and *tense;* then translate and conjugate each tense for

---

[1] Also **nostrī** and **vestrī,** which are used only as Objective Genitives (**359**).

[2] The Ablative of pronouns referring to *persons* usually requires a preposition (*e.g.* **ā mē,** *from* or *by me*). The preposition **cum,** *with,* is appended as an enclitic to **mē, tē, nōbīs, vōbīs**: **mēcum,** *with me;* **tēcum,** *with you* (*thee*); **nōbīscum,** *with us;* **vōbīscum,** *with you.* Similarly with the reflexive pronoun (**186**) **sēcum,** *with himself, with herself, with themselves.*

accuracy and speed: 1. regimus, rēximus, regēmus, regēmur, rēctī sumus, rēxerāmus. 2. regit, regitur, regēbat, regēbātur, reget, regētur, rēxit, rēctus est. 3. regis, regēs, regeris, regēris, regēbās, rēxerās, regēbāris, rēxistī, rēctus erās, rēxeris. 4. rēxistis, regētis, regitis, rēxerātis, regēbātis, rēxeritis, rēxērunt, rēxēre.

(*b*) Pronounce and translate: 1. Multī mīlitēs propter virtūtem ā duce nostrō laudātī sunt; laudābuntur.

2. Legiōnēs novae mediā aestāte cōnscrībentur; cōnscrīptae sunt. Dux castra ad flūmen Rhēnum pōnet; posuit; posuerat.

3. Nōs ipsī patriam nostram dēfendēmus. Patria ā nōbīs semper dēfendētur; dēfēnsa est. Sine auxiliō nostrō lībertās esse nōn poterit.

4. Quid tibi dīxit amīcus noster? Multōsne annōs in Galliā fuit?

5. Dux nōs convocāvit et perīculum magnum nōbīs dēmōnstrāvit. Perīculō magnō nōn territī sumus.

6. Tūne ipse hīberna vīdistī? Hīberna nōn longē ab oppidō absunt.

7. Prīmā lūce barbarī ē silvīs ēductī sunt et castra oppugnāvērunt. Nostrī clāmōribus nōn territī sunt.

8. Ego et mātrem et patrem dē librīs bonīs cōnsulam. Dē Rōmānīs cognōscere studeō.

9. Rōmānī agrōs pulchrōs Galliae multōs annōs dēfendērunt.

186. The Reflexive Pronouns. — In English the compound pronouns are called *reflexive pronouns* when used as the *object* of a verb or preposition and separated from the noun or pronoun to which they *refer*, thus: *I blame myself; you blame yourself.*

In Latin the reflexive pronoun with the first and second persons is expressed by the personal pronoun in the required case, thus: **Mē culpō**, *I blame myself;* **tē culpās**, *you blame yourself.*

The reflexive pronoun with the third person is expressed by **suī** (Gen.), (*of*) *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, in the required case, thus: **Puer sē** (Acc. object) **laudat,** *The boy praises himself;* **Puerī sē** (Acc. object) **laudant,** *The boys praise themselves.* The reflexive pronoun of the third person usually refers for its identity to the subject of the verb in the clause. The Latin reflexive pronoun of the third person is declined as follows:

	Singular and *Plural*
Nom.	———
Gen.	**suī**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Dat.	**sibi**, *to* (or *for*) *himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Acc.	**sē** or **sēsē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Abl.	**sē** or **sēsē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*

187. Use of the Reflexive Pronouns.

Singular	*Plural*
1. **mē laudō**, *I praise myself*	1. **nōs laudāmus**, *we praise ourselves*
2. **tē laudās**, *you praise yourself*	2. **vōs laudātis**, *you praise yourselves*
3. **sē laudat**, *he praises himself*, or *she praises herself*	3. **sē laudant**, *they praise themselves*

NOTE. — The intensive pronoun is often added to the reflexive for special emphasis, thus: **mē ipsum laudō**, *I praise my own self*, or *I praise myself* (with vocal emphasis in English).

188. The Reflexive Possessives. — With a pronoun of the first or second person the corresponding possessive adjective is used reflexively, thus: **Ego mātrem meam laudō,** *I praise my (own) mother;* **Nōs mātrem nostram laudāmus,** *We praise our (own) mother.*

With a noun or pronoun of the third person the re-

flexive possessive adjective is **súus, -a, -um,** *his own, her own, its own, their own,* thus: **Agricola fīlium suum laudat,** *The farmer praises his own son;* **Puella frātrem suum laudat,** *The girl praises her own brother.*[1]

189. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. You (*sing.*) praise your books, I (praise) mine. 2. Our friend told me many things concerning the war. 3. He showed us his own sword and horse. 4. The soldiers carry their own grain. 5. Good men do not praise themselves.

SECOND SECTION

190. VOCABULARY XXI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
meeting, council	**concílium, concílī,** *n.*	*council*
signal, standard	**sígnum, -ī,** *n.*	*sign, sign*ify
truth	**vēritās, -tātis,** *f.*	*verit*able
mention	**commémorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*commemorate*
explore	**explṓrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*explor*er
scout	**explōrātor, -tṓris,** *m.*	*explorat*ion
announce, declare	**nū́ntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	pro*nounce*
lead away	**abdū́cō, -ere, abdū́xī, abdúctus**	*abduct*
lose	**āmíttō, -ere, āmī́sī, āmíssus**	*amiss*
commit	**commíttō, -ere, commī́sī, commíssus**	*committ*ee, *commiss*ion
to engage in battle	**proélium commíttere**	
send away, dismiss	**dīmíttō, -ere, dīmī́sī, dīmíssus**	*dismiss*
send ahead	**praemíttō, -ere, praemī́sī, praemíssus**	*premis*e
run	**cúrrō, -ere, cucúrrī, cúrsum**	*curr*ent, ex*curs*ion
cut down, kill	**occī́dō, -ere, occī́dī, occī́sus**	homi*cide*, in*cis*ive
seek	**pétō, -ere, petī́vī (pétiī), petī́tus**	*petit*ion, com*pete*

[1] The Romans often, for special emphasis, used with any possessive adjective the possessive Genitive of the intensive pronoun, thus: **Dux mīlitēs suōs ipsīus laudat,** *the leader praises his own soldiers* (lit. *his own soldiers of himself*). **Ipsīus** is masc. sing. to agree with **dux**.

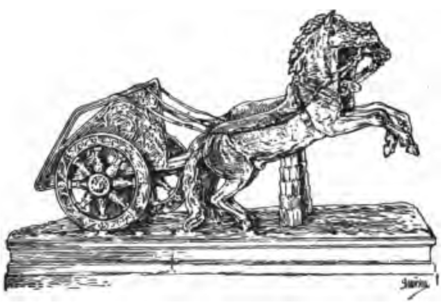
TRANSLATION EXERCISES

191. *A.* 1. Prīmā lūce dux ipse mīlitēs suōs ā flūmine abdūxit et equitēs praemīsit.

2. Ubi (*when*) equitēs Rōmānī barbarōs vīdērunt, proelium committere contendērunt. Multī equitēs sagittīs ā barbarīs vulnerātī sunt.

3. Peditēs tandem equitibus auxilium dedērunt; barbarī vērō (*but*), ubi (*when*) prīnceps suus signum dedit, in dēnsīs silvīs salūtem petiērunt. Multī autem (*however*) occīsī sunt.

4. Dux Rōmānus explōrātōrēs in silvās dēnsās dīmīsit; deinde concilium convocāvit equitumque virtūtem magnā cum laude commemorāvit.



A Two-Horse Chariot, or Biga

The body of the chariot, richly adorned with leaves, was used for centuries as an episcopal throne

5. Servus ad amīcum dominī suī cucurrit et veniam (*forgiveness*) implōrāvit.

6. Iūstitia lēgibus dēfenditur; dēfendētur; dēfēnsa erit. Vēritātem dēfendere nōs ipsī semper dēbēmus.

7. Amīcus noster magnam pecūniam āmīsit. Magna pecūnia ab amīcō nostrō āmissa est. Quid tibi nārrāvit dē pecūniā suā? Vōsne mē culpātis?

B. 1. We shall not seek peace. Peace will not be sought by our allies. 2. Were the scouts sent across the river? Was the battle begun (**committō**) at dawn? They did not dare to engage in battle. 3. What did the scouts announce to you concerning the river? 4. The fields of the Gauls were being occupied by the Germans. They did not fear the Romans because of (their) small number. 5. Caesar promised aid to the Gauls. The chiefs of Gaul thanked Caesar.

192. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Select for the notebook *five* English words related to **mittō**.

LATIN SELECTION

193. Queen Elizabeth and Sir Walter Raleigh

Courtesy wins a royal friend. Elisabētha, rēgīna Britannōrum, forte (*by chance*) cum multīs comitibus in viā ambulābat. Subitō (*suddenly*) ante pedēs multum lutum (*mud*) vīdit. Rēgīna stābat incerta (*uncertain*); sed aderat iuvenis (*young man*); rēgīnam salūtāvit et novum pallium (*cloak*) in lutō posuit; tum ad sociōs recurrit (*ran back*). Laeta rēgīna super (*upon*) pallium ambulāvit neque pedēs maculāvit (*soiled*). Iuvenis ā rēgīnā in numerō amīcōrum habitus est.



The Victorious Charioteer

Comes facundus in viā prō vehiculō est. (Publilius)
A chatty companion on a journey is as good as a carriage

CHAPTER XXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -*US* AND -*ER* · DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE · FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS · ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE

FIRST SECTION

194. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write side by side the synopses in the Indicative Passive of **regō, mittō, dīcō, dūcō**. 2. Conjugate *each* tense, testing your speed. 3. Review the Translation Exercises (**191**) for oral and written work.

195. Comparison of Adjectives in English. — In English a descriptive adjective regularly *changes in form* to express the quality in different degrees, thus: *high*, *higher*, *highest*. But with many adjectives the adverbs *more* and *most* are used to express greater degrees of the quality, thus: *more beautiful*, *most recent*.

A descriptive adjective usually has "three degrees of comparison," named Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

Note. — The Positive degree (cf. **pōnō**, *I place*, *assign*) assigns the quality without comparison (*e.g. the high wall*); the Comparative degree (cf. **cómparō**, *I bring together*, *compare*) states the quality *in comparison* with that of one or more other objects (*e.g. The wall is higher than the tree*); the Superlative degree (cf. **súper + lātus**, *carried above*) states the quality as in the highest degree, — above two or more other objects (*e.g. This mountain is the highest of the three*).

196. Comparison of Adjectives in Latin. — Adjectives are regularly compared in Latin, as in English, by changes in form:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
high	*higher*	*highest*
áltus, álta, áltum	**áltior,** *m., f.,* **áltius,** *n.*	**altíssimus, -a, -um**
free	*freer*	*freest*
līber, lībera, līberum	**lībérior,** *m., f.,* **lībérius,** *n.*	**lībérrimus, -a, -um**
sick	*sicker*	*sickest*
aéger, aégra, aégrum	**aégrior,** *m., f.,* **aégrius,** *n.*	**aegérrimus, -a, -um**

197. Rule. — The Comparative is formed by adding **-ior** to the *base;* and the Superlative is formed by adding **-issimus** to the *base.* Adjectives ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the *Nominative masculine* of the Positive.

198. The Declension of the Comparative. — The Positive and Superlative have the case endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative has the case endings of the Third Declension, thus:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc., Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**áltior**	**áltius**	**altiōrēs**	**altiōra**
Gen.	**altiōris**	**altiōris**	**altiōrum**	**altiōrum**
Dat.	**altiōrī**	**altiōrī**	**altiōribus**	**altiōribus**
Acc.	**altiōrem**	**áltius**	**altiōrēs (-īs)**	**altiōra**
Abl.	**altiōre**	**altiōre**	**altiōribus**	**altiōribus**

Observe. — The masculine, feminine, and neuter forms are alike in the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. It will, therefore, save time to give but one form in these cases.

199. Suggestions for Study.—1. Repeat the declension of **áltior** several times *from memory.* 2. Pronounce carefully the adjectives of the following list in the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative degrees. 3. Practice giving the comparison of the adjectives *from memory.* 4. Decline rapidly the Comparative of **lóngus**, and of **púlcher.**

Positive	Comparative		Superlative
	M., F.	N.	
lóngus, -a, -um	lóngior	lóngius	longíssimus, -a, -um
fídus, -a, -um	fídior	fídius	fīdíssimus, -a, -um
lắtus, -a, -um	lắtior	lắtius	lātíssimus, -a, -um
fírmus, -a, -um	fírmior	fírmius	firmíssimus, -a, -um
aéger, aégra, aégrum	aégrior	aégrius	aegérrimus, -a, -um
líber, líbera, líberum	lībérior	lībérius	lībérrimus, -a, -um
púlcher, púlchra, púlchrum	púlchrior	púlchrius	pulchérrimus, -a, -um

200. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.—Adverbs in English are formed from adjectives by adding *-ly*; the Comparative adverb is expressed by prefixing *more* to the Positive adverb; the Superlative adverb by prefixing *most* to the Positive adverb.

Adverbs in Latin are regularly formed from adjectives by *adverbial endings.* Thus adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form their adverbs as follows:

Positive		Comparative		Superlative	
firmly,	fírmē	*more firmly,*	fírmius	*most firmly,*	firmíssimē
far,	lóngē	*farther,*	lóngius	*farthest,*	longíssimē
freely,	líberē	*more freely,*	lībérius	*most freely,*	lībérrimē
feebly,	aégrē	*more feebly,*	aégrius	*most feebly,*	aegérrimē

201. Rule.—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions regularly form the Positive adverb by adding **-ē**

to the *base* of the adjective; the Comparative is formed by adding **-ius**[1]; the Superlative by adding **-issimē**; but all adjectives ending in **-er** form the Superlative adverb by adding **-rimē** to the *Nominative masculine* of the Positive.

202. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Pronounce carefully the above adverbs in the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*. Then cover the Comparative and Superlative forms, and give these forms for each of the adverbs *from memory*. 2. Write the comparison of the following adjectives: **áltus, fírmus, tárdus, cértus, iūstus, aéger, līber, púlcher, nōtus, crēber,** and **dēnsus**. 3. Form the adverb from each of these, and write its comparison.

203. VOCABULARY XXII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
painstaking, care	**dīligéntia, -ae,** *f.*	*diligence*
wrong	**iniūria, -ae,** *f.*	*injury, injurious*
memory	**memória, -ae,** *f.*	*memoir, memorial*
example	**exémplum, -ī,** *n.*	*exemplary*
punishment	**supplícium, supplícī,** *n.*	*supplicate*
speed, swiftness	**celéritās, -tātis,** *f.*	*celerity, accelerate*
citizenship, state	**cīvitās, -tātis,** *f.*	*civil, city, citizen*
worth, position	**dígnitās, -tātis,** *f.*	*dignity*
worthy	**dígnus, -a, -um**	*dignified*
work, trouble	**lábor, labōris,** *m.*	*labor, elaborate*
prohibit, prevent	**prohíbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	*prohibit*
large, distinguished	**ámplus, -a, -um**	*ample, amplify*
the rest, remaining	**réliquus, -a, -um**	*relic*
altogether, all	**ūnivérsus, -a, -um**	*universe, universal*
with difficulty	**aégrē** (*adv.*)	
unexpectedly	**imprōvīsō**[2] (*adv.*)	*improvident*
far	**lóngē** (*adv.*)	Cf. **longus, 64**
first; at first	**prīmum; prīmō** (*advs.*)	Cf. **prīmus, 134**
suddenly	**súbitō** (*adv.*)	

[1] It is really the Accusative singular neuter of the Comparative adjective.
[2] **in** (*not*) + **prō** (*before*) + p. p. p. of **videō** (*see*), *unforeseen*.

SECOND SECTION

204. The Comparative with *Quam*.—In the English sentence (1) *Summer is longer than winter (is)*, a comparison is expressed by the Comparative adjective *longer* followed by the conjunction *than*. The two things compared are in the same case, for *summer* is the subject of *is*, and *winter* is the subject of *is* understood. The sentence becomes in Latin: **Aestās longior est quam hiems (est).**

Also (2) *He suffered more from fear than (from) wounds* becomes: **Timōre magis labōrābat quam vulneribus (labōrābat).** Here the things compared are *Ablatives of Cause.*

205. Rule.—In comparisons, if **quam**, *than*, is expressed, the things compared are in the same case (the same usage in Latin as in English).



Roman Lamps

206. The Comparative without *Quam*.—In Latin, **quam**, *than*, is often omitted, but *only* when the things compared would be in the Nominative or Objective case in English; thus we may say in Latin: **Praemia pulchriōra sunt quam dōna** or **Praemia sunt dōnīs pulchriōra**, *Rewards are more beautiful than gifts.* In the latter sentence **quam** was omitted and the second thing compared is in the Ablative case.

207. Rule.—In comparisons, if **quam**, *than*, is omitted, the second thing compared is put in the Ablative case, which preferably comes before the Comparative.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

208. *A.* 1. Bonī amīcī bene (*well*) monent. Dīgnī amīcī melius (*better*) monēbunt quam indīgnī.

2. Amīcī nostrī auctōritātem magnam habēre dēbent. Auctōritās et dīgnitās sunt praemia labōris.

3. Cīvitās ā bonīs virīs firmē dēfenditur; semper dēfēnsa est; dēfendētur. Quis nōn laudat supplicium malōrum hominum?

4. Templum altius est quam mūrus; est mūrō altius. Arbor altissima est; est altior quam porta; est portā altior. Arborēs pulchrae ā templō nōn longē absunt.

5. Frāter meus hodiē aegrior est quam herī (*yesterday*); in scholā esse nōn poterit. Ubi sunt reliquī discipulī hodiē? Num aegrī sunt?

B. 1. First he spoke freely concerning the danger, then (**deinde**) he led (his) soldiers out from the camp. He dared to engage in battle with the Germans. 2. The courage and swiftness of the soldiers pleased the leader. The diligence of the leader was praised by the soldiers. 3. We hold in memory (*Abl. of means*) the good men of our country. All the good (men) are eager to uphold the dignity of the state. Many punishments have been announced by just laws. 4. The good example of our friends prevented the wrong; they gave large gifts to the good man. 5. The picture of our mother is very beautiful. I have not seen a more beautiful woman than our mother.

209. Derivation Exercise. — Can you give additional English words related to **firmus**, **līber**, and **multus**?

Virtūs hominem iungit Deō. (Cicero) — ***Virtue unites man with God***

CHAPTER XXIII

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE · DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

FIRST SECTION

210. The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective. — The interrogative pronoun *who? which?* is **quis**, m., f., **quid**, n. The interrogative adjective, *which? what? what kind of?* is **quis** (or **quī**), m., **quae**, f., **quod**, n. The interrogative pronoun is declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**quis**, *who?*	**quid**, *what?*	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cúius**[1], *of whom? whose?*	**cúius**, *of what?*	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cui**[2], *to (for) whom?*	**cui**, *to (for) what?*	**quíbus**	**quíbus**	**quíbus**
Ac.	**quem**, *whom?*	**quid**, *what?*	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**,[3] *whom?*	**quō**, *what?*	**quíbus**[3]	**quíbus**[3]	**quíbus**

NOTE. — In the *plural*, the interrogative pronoun and the interrogative adjective have the same forms. In the *singular*, the interrogative *pronoun* has the same forms for the masculine and feminine; as an inter-

[1] Pronounced rapidly as *koó-i-us* (*koó-yus*).

[2] Pronounced rapidly as *koó-i* (*kwi*).

[3] The Ablatives (masc. and fem.) **quō**, **quibus**, are used chiefly with prepositions. **cum** is affixed as an enclitic: **quōcum**, **quibúscum**, *with whom?*

rogative *adjective* the Nominative singular masculine is **quis** or **quī**, and the feminine forms differing from the masculine are: Nom. **quae**, Acc. **quam**, Abl. **quā**. The Nominative and Accusative singular neuter are **quod**.

211. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Decline the interrogative *pronoun*. 2. Decline the interrogative *adjective*. 3. Write all the forms with their meanings.

212. Exercise. — 1. Quis librum meum habet? 2. Cui librum tuum dedistī? 3. Quae flūmina magna in Galliā sunt? 4. Quid dīxit explōrātor dē flūmine? 5. Cuius castra oppugnāvērunt barbarī? 6. Ā quō laudātus est Quīntus Cicerō? 7. Quod oppidum cīvitātis nostrae est pulcherrimum? 8. Quis nōn audet prō Americā cum Germānīs bellum gerere? 9. Quī discipulī hodiē absunt? 10. Quis ā scholā longissimē habitat?



A Greek Monument

213. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives. — In English the Demonstratives are *this* (plural *these*), *that* (plural *those*). They serve to point out persons or things for special attention, and are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. Thus: (as pronouns) *This is my brother; These are my books, those are yours; Who said this?* — (as adjectives) *This tree is beautiful; These farmers are carrying grain to that town.*

In Latin there are *five* Demonstratives: 1. **hic**, m., **haec**, f., **hŏc**, n., *this* (near the speaker), thus: **hic puer**, *this boy* (here); **haec puella**, *this girl* (here); **hoc templum**, *this temple* (here). 2. **ille**, m., **illa**, f., **illud**, n., *that* (at a distance), thus: **ille equus**, *that horse* (there); **illa arbor**, *that tree* (there); **illud praemium**, *that reward* (there). 3. **iste**, m., **ista**, f., **istud**, n., *this*, or *that* (near, or belonging to, the one addressed), thus: **iste liber**, *that book* (of yours), or *your book*. 4. **is**, m., **ea**, f., **id**, n., *this*, or *that*

(being mentioned by the speaker), is less emphatic than **hic** and **ille**, thus: **is mīles**, *this soldier;* **ea legiō**, *this legion;* **id flūmen**, *this river.* 5. **īdem**, m., **éadem**, f., **ídem**, n., *same*, thus: **īdem amīcus**, *the same friend;* **eadem aquila**, *the same eagle;* **idem nōmen**, *the same name.*

The Demonstratives are declined on page 323.

214. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice on the declensions of **hic**, **is**, **ille**, and **īdem** for accuracy and speed. 2. With the book closed, write all the forms of each Demonstrative. 3. Compare your written work with the book and correct any errors. 4. Decline all the Demonstratives, testing your speed. Can you give them in *two* minutes?

215. Uses of the Demonstratives.—1. The Latin Demonstratives, like the English Demonstratives, are used as *adjectives* and as *pronouns*. As adjectives, they agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they belong, thus: **hic puer**, *this boy;* **huius puerī māter**, *this boy's mother.* As pronouns they agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer, thus: **Ille est frāter meus**, *That is my brother;* **Illī sunt amīcī meī**, *Those are my friends.*

2. The Latin Demonstratives are also used for emphasis as *personal pronouns* of the *third person*, with the following meanings:

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*All genders*
Nom.	*he*	*she*	*it*	*they*
Gen.	*of him, his*	*of her, her, hers* [1]	*of it, its*	*of them, their, theirs* [1]
Dat.	*to* or *for him*	*to* or *for her*	*to* or *for it*	*to* or *for them*
Acc.	*him*	*her*	*it*	*them*
Abl.	*him*	*her*	*it*	*them*

[1] The forms *hers* and *theirs* are used alone, as predicate possessives, thus: *the book is hers; the rewards are theirs.*

NOTE. — The Demonstratives when used as *personal pronouns* still express their differences of meaning, thus **hic**, *he* (near the speaker in space or thought); **ille**, *he* (at a distance or for strong emphasis); **iste**, *he* (near the one addressed, sometimes contemptuous); **is**, *he* (without distinct emphasis).

216. Exercise. — 1. Hic liber est meus; librum istum nec habeō nec vīdī. Estne ille tuus? 2. Huius virī exemplum bonum est; hunc ūniversa cīvitās laudat. 3. Huic servō miserrimō et auxilium et pecūniam dābō. 4. Quis nōn studet eī lībertātem dāre? 5. Quid est pulchrius quam haec ipsa (*very*) terra? 6. Quis istud dē amīcīs vestrīs dīxit? Fuitne hic ipse? 7. Abestne longē templum illud pulcherrimum? 8. Nōn longē abest, mox id vidēbimus. 9. Memoria illīus virī in cīvitāte nostrā semper manēbit. 10. Illōrum mīlitum virtūte dēfendēmur. 11. Ubi est eius māter? 12. Quis huic librum dedit? Suntne amīcī eōrum bonī? Eōs laudō.

SECOND SECTION

217. VOCABULARY XXIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
nature	**nātū́ra, -ae,** *f.*	*natur*al, *natur*alize
manner	**módus, -ī,** *m.*	*mode*, *mod*ify
hindrance (*pl.* baggage)	**impedīméntum, -ī,** *n.*	*imped*e, *impediment*
word	**vérbum, -ī,** *n.*	*verb*al, *verb*
nothing	**níhil** (*indeclinable*)	an*nihil*ate, *Nihil*ist
demand	**pṓscō, -ere, popṓscī, —**	
think	**pútō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	com*pute*, re*pute*
argue, discuss	**dísputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*disputat*ion
check	**tárdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	re*tard*, *tard*y
fitting, agreeable	**cómmodus, -a, -um**	*commod*ious
whole, unimpaired	**íntegor, íntegra, íntegrum**	*integer*, *integr*al
thither, there	**éō** (*adv.*)	
from there, thence	**índe** (*adv.*)	
whither; whither?	**quō** (*rel. and inter. adv.*)	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

218. *A.* 1. Quis eōs mīlitēs hūc (*hither*) dūxit? 2. Hic dux hīc, ille dux ibi, castra pōnere studet. 3. Ubi incolae sunt timidiōrēs et īnfīdissimī, ibi amīcī meī habitāre nōn audent. 4. Cicerōnī ipsī nihil erat commodius quam disputāre cum amīcīs dē nātūrā amīcitiae. 5. Eō tempore cōpiae Caesaris nōn erant integrae atque multa impedīmenta celeritātem eōrum tardābant.

B. 1. From there (**illinc**) that consul will within a year send the first legion thither. 2. I lead forward your horses where (whither) that slave of yours has carried your baggage. 3. The same wrongs were mentioned by Caesar himself. 4. What queen most unjustly demanded from (**ab**) these farmers both fields and money? 5. What do you yourself think of (**dē**) the words of that scout? 6. What manner of life will these barbarous sailors demand?

219. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Find for the notebook *ten* English words related to **putō**.



Pōculum

LATIN SELECTION

220. THE COBBLER PRACTICES MEDICINE

The cobbler becomes a doctor.

Ōlim (*once upon a time*) fuit in Graeciā sūtor quī inopiā labōrābat. Post paucōs annōs in oppidum magnum ēmigrāre cōnstituit. Ibi nōn sūtor, sed medicus (*doctor*) falsus fuit. Antidotum (*remedy*) ēgregium — sīc ipse dīcēbat — vēnditābat.[1]

[1] **vēnditō, -āre**, etc., *vend, sell, peddle* (cf. "vendor").

He doesn't take his own medicine.

Et fāmam et pecūniam comparābat. Sed nōn multō post ipse morbō[1] occupātus est. Aegerrimus erat ubi (*when*) illum rēx oppidī petiit, neque rēgem salūtāre potuit. Rēx statim pōculum (*cup*) poposcit et antidotum illud in pōculō posuit; deinde (*then*) medicō falsō cum hīs verbīs dedit, "Tuum antidotum — sīc ipse dīxistī — aegrōs semper sānat."[2] Medicus falsus iam perterritus est neque propter timōrem dīcere potuit. Tandem vērō (*but*) exclāmāvit, "Veniam (*pardon*) implōrō, Domine; sūtor, nōn medicus sum."

His patients see their folly.

Itaque rēx populum convocāvit et haec dīxit, "Capita (*lives*) vestra commīsistis nōn medicō, sed sūtōrī impudīcissimō (*most shameless*), cui nēmō (*no one*) soleās (*sandals*) committere dēbet."

---

[1] **morbus**, -ī, m., *illness, disease* (cf. "morbid").
[2] **sānō, -āre**, etc., *cure, make well* (cf. "sane," "sanitary").



A Temple in Southern Italy
(Sacred to the God of the Sea)

Līberae sunt enim nostrae cōgitātiōnēs. (Cicero)
For our thoughts at least are free

CHAPTER XXIV

CARDINAL NUMERALS · ORDINAL NUMERALS
DECLENSION OF *ŪNUS, DUO, TRĒS*

FIRST SECTION

221. Numerals. — The Cardinal Numerals from *one* to *twenty* and the Ordinal Numerals from *first* to *twentieth* are given below.

Both the cardinals and ordinals are adjectives. The cardinals here given are, however, indeclinable, except **ūnus, duo, trēs** (see p. 321). The ordinals are declined like **bonus, -a, -um.**

Signs[1]	Cardinals (Telling *how many*)	Ordinals (Telling *in what order*)
I	**ū́nus, -a, -um**	**prī́mus, -a, -um**
II	**dúo,** m., **dúae,** f., **dúo,** n.	**secúndus, -a, -um**
III	**trēs,** m., f., **tría,** n.	**tértius, -a, -um**
IIII or IV	**quáttuor**	**quā́rtus, -a, -um**
V	**quī́nque**	**quī́ntus, -a, -um**
VI	**sex**	**sextus, -a, -um**
VII	**séptem**	**séptimus, -a, -um**
VIII	**óctō**	**octā́vus, -a, -um**
VIIII or IX	**nóvem**	**nṓnus, -a, -um**
X	**décem**	**décimus, -a, -um**

[1] These signs originated in holding up the fingers to indicate the numbers; — therefore the numbers from *one* to *ten* are called *digits*, from **digitus**, *finger*. I, the Roman sign for one, stands for *one* finger, II is for *two* fingers, V (representing the angle between the thumb and the rest of the hand) for *five* fingers (the whole hand), VI for the *hand* plus *one finger*, X for *two hands* (crossed), *i.e. ten* fingers, etc.

Signs	Cardinals	Ordinals
XI	**ūndecim**[1]	**ūndécimus, -a, -um**
XII	**duódecim**	**duodécimus, -a, -um**
XIII	**trédecim**	**tértius décimus**[2]
XIV	**quattuórdecim**	**quārtus décimus**[2]
XV	**quíndecim**	**quíntus décimus**[2]
XVI	**sēdecim**	**séxtus décimus**[2]
XVII	**septéndecim**	**séptimus décimus**[2]
XVIII	**duodēvīgíntī**[3]	**duodēvīcénsimus,**[3] **-a, -um**
XVIIII or XIX	**ūndēvīgíntī**[3]	**ūndēvīcénsimus,**[3] **-a, -um**
XX	**vīgíntī**	**vīcénsimus, -a, -um**

222. Suggestions for Study. — On a sheet of paper place the Roman signs (I–XX), and opposite each write the cardinals and the ordinals, marking long vowels and the accent.

SECOND SECTION

223. VOCABULARY XXIV

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
stir, stir up	**éxcitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*excite*, *excit*able
incite	**íncitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	
pleases	**plácet, -ēre, plácuit, —** (*w. Dat.*)	*please*
it displeases	**dísplicet, -ēre, displícuit, —** (*w. Dat.*)	*displease*

then, next	**deínde**	and so	**ítaque**
already	**iam**	no longer	**nōn iam**
even, also	**étiam**	therefore	**ígitur**
indeed, certainly, at least	**quídem** (*postpositive*)	but	**sed**

[1] Observe the numerals *eleven* to *seventeen*: **ūndecim** = **ūnus** + **decem**, **duodecim** = **duo** + **decem**, etc. In the numerals from *thirteen* to *seventeen* the ending **-decim** corresponds to *-teen* (*i.e. ten*) in English.

[2] Each of the two ordinals is declined; *e.g.* **annō tertiō decimō**, *in the thirteenth year.*

[3] **duo-dē-vīgintī**, *two-from-twenty;* **ūn-dē-vīgintī**, *one-from-twenty;* **duo-dē-vīcēnsimus**, *two-from-twentieth;* **ūn-dē-vīcēnsimus**, *one-from-twentieth.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

224. *A.* **1.** Prīmus quidem ōrātor incitātus erat agricolārum iniūriīs; dē hīs iniūriīs multa verba dīxit.

2. Deinde cum illō disputāvērunt longum tempus et secundus et tertius ōrātor.

3. Itaque hīs tribus ōrātiōnibus excitātus est populus ūniversus.

4. Etiam tunc Cicerō nōn vīsus est; tandem ex templō est ēductus ā cōnsule ipsō.

5. Ibi quīndecim equitēs et vīgintī peditēs ā frātre meō iam vīsī sunt.

B. 1. This judge, once upon a time, was more unjust than that friend of yours. 2. But no longer is the punishment of good men pleasing to him. 3. And so the seventh legion remained that summer in the same camp. 4. At last two farmers came hither from that place with three horses. 5. To Cicero indeed it was displeasing to be stirred (**excitārī**) by the shouts of bad men.

225. Derivation Exercise. — Find English words related to the Latin numerals **ūnus** to **decem**.

THE ROMAN PUBLIC BATHS

(Optional)

226. The magnificent *Thermae*, or Public Baths, were a great feature of Rome under the Empire. Among the most famous of these were the *Baths of Caracalla* (one of the halls of which is reproduced in the great central hall of the Pennsylvania Station in New York, N. Y.). The Baths of Caracalla could accommodate 1600 bathers at once. They had separate rooms for warm, hot, and cold baths. In the *frigidarium*, or

room for the cold bath, was an immense swimming pool whose dimensions were approximately 172 × 78 feet.

The Roman Baths were great popular social centers; for connected with them were gymnasiums, lecture halls, libraries,



Interior of the Baths of Caracalla

shaded walks, and fountains; they were beautified with precious marbles, painting, and sculpture, and they were practically free. In many ways they were like our modern clubs, community playgrounds, and the Y. M. C. A.

Vōx clāmantis in dēsertō — *The voice of one crying in the wilderness*

CHAPTER XXV (Review)

227. Vocabularies and Syntax. — (*a*) Review carefully Vocabularies XXI–XXIV. (*b*) Practice, for accuracy and speed, on **concilium, cīvitās, labor, hic, īdem, ille, ipse, is, vocō, moneō, nūntiō, abdūcō, praemittō, duo, trēs, ūnus.** (*c*) Review the Rules of Syntax for Chapters I–XXIV, pages 338–339.

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters I–XXIV

228. 1. Cui igitur frāter tuus ostendit illōs trēs librōs?

2. Itaque hanc aestātem Caesar in oppidō parvō cum quīnque legiōnibus manēbat.

3. Dīligentia et peditum et equitum ā cōnsule, virō dīgnissimō, laudābitur.

4. Nōnne erat imāgō aquilae signum decimae legiōnis?

5. Dux noster quattuor explōrātōrēs ad flūmen praemittere dēbet.

6. Sex annīs Gallia virtūte et labōre mīlitum Rōmānōrum pācāta erit.

7. Vērusne cīvitātis Rōmānae amīcus erat ille rēx?

8. Crēbrīs clāmōribus mīlitum revocābātur.

9. Num amīcus tuus erit iūstior quam meus pāter?

10. Illā quidem hieme dux timidus cum Gallīs proelium committere nōn ausus est.



A Christian Inscription

"Saturninus and Musa made this memorial for their beloved son."
(On the right Christ is represented as the good shepherd)

LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

(For Reference)

THE FORM OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

229. "About four fifths of all the borrowed words in our language we find to come from the Latin, either directly or through the French. The French language, indeed, consists almost wholly of Latin words, and the same thing is true of Spanish, Italian, and Portuguese. So if we take a word from any of these tongues, we are pretty apt to get one which was originally Latin. . . . While the basis of English is a Germanic dialect, not very different from what we call Low Dutch, more than half its words came from the Latin language. . . . Since so large a number of Latin words have been taken into English, we should learn to recognize borrowed Latin words when met in English. In this way a flood of light is poured on the meaning of a large part of our English speech."[1]

While many Latin words have been taken *unchanged* into English, most of the words from Latin have *changed* somewhat in form. These changes came about naturally and followed definite paths. *The types of changes are illustrated by the following words.*

I. Latin Words Unchanged in English

(*A*) Nouns — VILLA; ODIUM; PENINSULA; CAMERA; MILITIA; CONSUL; ORATOR; ARBOR; LABOR. (*B*) Adjectives — BONUS; ALBUM; MISER; PAUPER; NOSTRUM; MEDIUM. (*C*) Verbs — VETO.

---

[1] Cf. *The Latin in English*, pp. xii, xv, by Harry Pratt Judson, President of the University of Chicago.

II. Latin Words Changed in English

(*A*) Nouns

1. Base unchanged: **ōrātiō**, *oration;* **signum**, *sign;* **verbum**, *verb;* **impedīmentum**, *impediment.*

2. Base changed:

(*a*) **pictūra**, *picture;* **fābula**, *fable;* **statua**, *statue;* **rosa**, *rose;* **nātūra**, *nature;* **lēgātus**, *legate;* **templum**, *temple.*



A Roman Woman and Her Maid

(*b*) **victōria**, *victory;* **iniūria**, *injury.*

(*c*) **prūdentia**, *prudence;* **dīligentia**, *diligence.*

(*d*) **aedificium**, *edifice* (cf. **officium**, *office*); **cōnsilium**, *counsel;* **concilium**, *council.*

(*e*) **lībertās**, *liberty;* **auctoritās**, *authority;* **dignitās**, *dignity.*

(*B*) Adjectives

1. Base unchanged: **longus**, *long;* **benignus**, *benign.*

2. Base changed:

(*a*) **prīmus**, *prime.*

(*b*) Base, with change of spelling: **secundus**, *second.*

(*c*) **ēgregius**, *egregious;* **barbarus**, *barbarous.*

(*C*) Verbs

1. Verb root unchanged: **respondeō**, *respond.*

2. Verb root changed: (*a*) **servō**, *preserve;* **ambulō**, *amble;* **implōrō**, *implore;* **convocō**, *convoke;* **comparō**, *compare;* **prōvideō**, *provide;* **prōdūcō**, *produce;* **explōrō**, *explore;* **disputō**, *dispute;* **excitō**, *excite;* **incitō**, *incite.*

(*b*) **exspectō**, *expect;* **dēterreō**, *deter;* **exclāmō**, *exclaim;* **sustineō** (**sub** + **teneō**), *sustain;* **repetō**, *repeat;* **committō**, *commit;* **occurrō**, *occur.*

3. Base of the Perfect Passive Participle:

(*a*) **condūcō**, *conduct;* **dīmittō** (**dī(s)** + **mittō**), *dismiss.*

(*b*) **līberō**, *liberate;* **nōminō**, *nominate;* **prōmittō**, *promise.*

THE IMPORTANCE OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

230. We have been considering changes in the form of Latin words when taken into English. It now remains for us to see in the following selections how important these Latin words are. They will be found to carry the burden of the thought. In the following paragraph from the *Declaration of Independence*, words from Latin are underscored.

"When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the *political*[1] bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth the separate and equal station to which the laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation."

Read the passage aloud, but omit the Latin words. Is there any real meaning left in the paragraph?

In the following selection from President Wilson's Message to Congress, April 2, 1917, the English words from Latin are underscored.

"But the right is more precious than peace, and we shall fight for the things which we have always carried nearest our hearts — for *democracy*,[1] for the right of those who submit to authority to have a voice in their own governments, for the rights and liberties of small nations, for a universal dominion of right by such a concert of free peoples as shall bring peace and safety to all nations and make the world itself at last free. To such a task we can dedicate our lives and our fortunes, everything that we are and everything that we have, with the pride of those who know that the day has come when America is privileged to spend her blood and her might for the principles that gave her birth and happiness and the peace which she has *treasured*.[1] God helping her, she can do no other."

---

[1] From the Greek language.

Similarly in the following passages Latin words are underscored.

1. "The fact that what is called a complete English dictionary contains three Latin or Greek derivations to one word from a Saxon or any other Gothic source, shows us that to the educated man the livest part of his language, so far as science and the higher order of things are concerned, is the Latin and Greek contingent." — DR. W. T. HARRIS, late U. S. Commissioner of Education.

2. "A cultural education must include the classics." — THEODORE ROOSEVELT.

3. "We should have scant capital to trade on were we to throw away the wisdom we have inherited and seek our fortunes with the slender stock we ourselves have accumulated. This, it seems to me, is the real, the prevalent argument for holding every man we can to the intimate study of the ancient classics. . . . What you cannot find a substitute for is the classics as literature; and there can be no first hand contact with that literature if you will not master the *grammar*[1] and the *syntax*[1] which convey its subtle power." — WOODROW WILSON.

4. "A mastery of the literature and the history of the ancient world makes every one fitter to excel than he would have been without it. . . . Let no one be afraid of the name, 'dead languages.' No language is dead which perfectly conveys thoughts that are alive and are as full of *energy*[1] now as they ever were." — VISCOUNT BRYCE, former Ambassador from Great Britain to the United States.

---

[1] From the Greek language.

Accipere quam facere iniūriam praestat. (Cicero)
It is better to suffer wrong than to do it

CHAPTER XXVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS ENDING IN *-IŌ*

FIRST SECTION

231. Third Conjugation Verbs in *-iō*. — Certain verbs in **-iō** have the Present Infinitive in **-ĕre** and are called "**-iō** verbs of the Third Conjugation." Verbs in **-iō**, with the infinitive in **-ĕre**, are conjugated like **cápiō**, *I take.* The Principal Parts of **capiō** are: **cápiō, cápere, cēpī, cáptus.**

Indicative Active			Indicative Passive		
Present: *I take*, etc.			Present: *I am taken*, etc.		
	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	**cápiō**	**cápimus**	1.	**cápior**	**cápimur**
2.	**cápis**	**cápitis**	2.	**cáperis**	**capíminī**
3.	**cápit**	**cápiunt**	3.	**cápitur**	**capiúntur**
Imperfect: *I was taking*, etc.			Imperfect: *I was being taken*, etc.		
1.	**capiēbam**	**capiēbámus**	1.	**capiēbar**	**capiēbámur**
2.	**capiēbās**	**capiēbátis**	2.	**capiēbáris**	**capiēbáminī**
3.	**capiēbat**	**capiēbant**	3.	**capiēbátur**	**capiēbántur**
Future: *I shall take*, etc.			Future: *I shall be taken*, etc.		
1.	**cápiam**	**capiēmus**	1.	**cápiar**	**capiēmur**
2.	**cápiēs**	**capiētis**	2.	**capiēris**	**capiēminī**
3.	**cápiet**	**cápient**	3.	**capiētur**	**capiéntur**

Indicative Active		Indicative Passive	
Perfect: *I took*, or *I have taken*, etc.		Perfect: *I was taken*, or *have been taken*, etc.	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1. **cēpī**	**cēpimus**	1. **cáptus** sum	**cáptī** **súmus**
2. **cēpístī**	**cēpístis**	2. **cáptus** es	**cáptī** **éstis**
3. **cēpit**	**cēpērunt** (**-ēre**)	3. **cáptus** est	**cáptī** sunt
Pluperfect: *I had taken*, etc.		Pluperfect: *I had been taken*, etc.	
1. **cēperam**	**cēperāmus**	1. **cáptus** **éram**	**cáptī** **erāmus**
2. **cēperās**	**cēperātis**	2. **cáptus** **érās**	**cáptī** **erātis**
3. **cēperat**	**cēperant**	3. **cáptus** **érat**	**cáptī** **érant**
Future Perfect: *I shall have taken*, etc.		Future Perfect: *I shall have been taken*, etc.	
1. **cēperō**	**cēpérimus**	1. **cáptus** **érō**	**cáptī** **érimus**
2. **cēperis**	**cēpéritis**	2. **cáptus** **éris**	**cáptī** **éritis**
3. **cēperit**	**cēperint**	3. **cáptus** **érit**	**cáptī** **érunt**

232. Suggestions for Study.—1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. Write a synopsis, with the meanings. 3. Conjugate the Present, Imperfect, and Future Active of **fugiō**, *I flee*, and **faciō**, *I make*.

SECOND SECTION

233. VOCABULARY XXVI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
preserve	**cōnsérvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*conservation*
call out	**ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*evoke*
recall	**révocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*revoke*
order	**iúbeō, -ēre, iússī, iússus**	
show	**osténdō, -ere, osténdī, osténtus**	*ostentatious*
accept, receive	**accípiō, -ere, accēpī, accéptus**	*acceptable*
take, accept	**excípiō, -ere, excēpī, excéptus**	*exception*
begin, undertake	**incípiō, -ere, incēpī, incéptus**	*incipient*
intercept, cut off	**intercípiō, -ere, intercēpī, intercéptus**	*interception*

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
desire	**cúpiō, -ere, cupīvī (cúpiī), cupītus**	*cup*idity
do, make	**fáciō, -ere, fēcī, fáctus**	*fact*ory, *fact*or
act, deed	**fáctum, -ī,** *n.*	*fact*
flee	**fúgiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus**	*fugit*ive
flight	**fúga, -ae,** *f.*	
throw, hurl	**iáciō, -ere, iēcī, iáctus**	pro*ject*ile
understand, see through	**perspíciō, -ere, perspéxī, perspéctus**	*perspic*uous
snatch	**rápiō, -ere, rápuī, ráptus**	*rap*id, *rapt*ure
snatch away	**ērípiō, -ere, ērípuī, ēréptus**	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

234. *A.* 1. Iam haec legiō in peditēs Gallōs tēla iaciēbat; subitō iussa est equitēs barbarōs intercipere. 2. Exercitus Rōmānus multā cum celeritāte hōs servōs timidōs in fugam dabit. 3. Facta ēgregia decimae legiōnis ā Caesare praemia dīgnissima accipient. 4. Nōnne multa tēla iēcimus in mūrum? 5. Prīmum ille lēgātus tertiam legiōnem ex oppidō ēvocāvit; deinde et tertiam et quīntam legiōnem ad flūmen convocāvit; sed tandem Caesar ipse eum cum hīs cōpiīs in oppidum revocāvit.

B. 1. This disloyal scout began to lead the fifth legion away from the river. 2. We had not at that time seen through the evil plans of the leader, had we? 3. The Gallic chief snatched two arrows away from the soldier. 4. The kind leader desired to save the inhabitants of this town, but many had already fled. 5. This soldier will carry the standard to Caesar himself.



A Grecian Urn

235. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Find, with the help of the dictionary, *five* English words related to **capiō** and arrange them in the notebook.

CHAPTER XXVII

LATIN PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES

FIRST SECTION

236. Latin Prefixes. — Many English words have been formed by means of prefixes; thus from "turn" was formed "*re*-turn," with the Latin prefix **re-** (*back*, *again*), and from "make," "*re*-make." Such a built-up word is called a compound. Many English compound words come from Latin compound words. In the English "*a*-vert," *turn away*, we find the Latin prefix **ā** (**ab**), *away from* + **vertō**, *turn*. Other familiar compounds are "*re*-vert," "*con*-vert," "*in*-vert"; also "*ab*-dicate," "*con*-voke," "*ex*-cite," "*de*-port." These and numerous other Latin prefixes appear in English. *The following prefixes, already learned, are assembled here for special study.*

ā-, **ab-** (also **abs-**, **au-**), *away-from:* **āmittō**, *I send away, lose.*

ad-,[1] *to, towards:* **admittō**, *I send to, admit.*

con- (also **com-**, **col-**, and **co-**), *together, with:* **cōnscrībō**, *I enroll.*

con- (intensive): **cōnfirmō**, *I make very strong.*

dē-, *from, down-from:* **dēdūcō**, *I lead down.*

ē-, **ex-**, *from, out-from:* **exportō**, *I carry out, export.*

in- (also **im-**, **il-**), *into, in, on:* **importō**, *I carry into, import.*

in- (also **im-**) negative, *not:* **inimīcus** (**in** + **amīcus**), *unfriendly*, **inīquus** (**in** + **aequus**), *unjust.*

NOTE. — We have also met the Latin prefixes **dis-** (**dī-**), **ob-** (**oc-**), **per-**, **prae-**, **prō-**, and **re-** (**red-**). These were explained at their first appearance. The following Latin compounds will serve to recall them to mind:

dīmittō	**ob**sideō	**per**dūcō	**prae**mittō	**prō**cēdō	**re**cēdō
discēdō	**oc**cīdō	**per**spiciō	**prae**sidium	**prō**videō	**red**igō

[1] In compounds, if **ad** comes before a consonant, the **d** usually changes to that consonant.

237. Exercise. — (*a*) With reference to each of the following compounds, answer *three* questions: 1. What is the simple verb? 2. What is the prefix? 3. What thought has the prefix contributed to the meaning of the word?

abdūcō	**cōgō**	**cōnfirmō**	**dēligō**	**excipiō**
absum	**committō**	**cōnscrībō**	**ēdūcō**	**expugnō**
accipiō	**comportō**	**cōnservō**	**ēripiō**	**exspectō**
adsum	**condūcō**	**convocō**	**ēvocō**	**incipiō**

(*b*) Form five Latin verbs from the simple verb **dūcō** by using the prefixes **ad-**, **con-**, **dē-**, **ē-**, and **in-**. State the meaning of each compound. In the same way form as many compounds as you can from **mittō** and **portō**, stating the meanings in each case.

(*c*) In each of the following English words, state (1) the prefix, and (2) what the prefix has contributed to the meaning of the word. Consult an English dictionary.

abnormal	*collision*	*coöperate*	*illuminate*
accept	*condemn*	*deduct*	*immigrate*
addition	*contract*	*emigrate*	*intransitive*

(*d*) Write, with meanings, five English words to illustrate the use of each of the following prefixes: *a-* (*ab-*), *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-* (*ex-*), *in-*. State what is contributed by the prefix in each word.

SECOND SECTION

238. Latin Suffixes. — Examine carefully each of the words in the following Table of Suffixes. Learn the effect of each suffix upon the meaning, and associate each derivative with the word to which it is related.

A. Nouns Formed from Verbs

Action Nouns. — 1. **-OR** forms nouns denoting activity, condition, or state: TIMOR, *fear* (**timeō**, *I fear*), *i.e.* the *act* of fearing. CLĀMOR, *shout* (**clāmō**, *I shout*), *i.e.* the *act* of shouting.

2. **-TOR** indicates the agent or doer: ŌRĀTOR, *orator*, *speaker* (**ōrō**, *I speak*, *ask*), *i.e.* the one who *does* the speaking. EXPLŌRĀTOR, *one who investigates*, *scout* (**explōrō**, *I investigate*), *i.e.* the one who *does* the investigating.

B. Nouns Formed from Other Nouns

Condition or Quality Nouns. — 1. **-TŪS** forms nouns denoting a condition or quality: VIRTŪS, *manliness* (**vir**, *man*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being a true man. SERVITŪS, *slavery* (**servus**, *slave*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being a slave.

2. **-TĀS** forms nouns denoting a quality, condition, or characteristic: AUCTŌRITĀS, *authority* (**auctor**, *adviser*), *i.e.* the *characteristic* of being an adviser. CĪVITĀS, *citizenship* (**cīvis**, *citizen*), *i.e.* the *condition* of being a citizen.

3. **-IA** forms nouns denoting condition: MĪLITIA, *military service* (**mīles**, *soldier*), *i.e.* the *condition* of being a soldier.

C. Nouns Formed from Adjectives

Condition or Quality Nouns. — 1. **-TĀS** forms nouns denoting condition or quality: LĪBERTĀS, *freedom* (**līber**, *free*), *i.e.* the *condition* of being free. DĪGNITĀS, *worth* (**dīgnus**, *worthy*), *i.e.* the *quality* of being *worthy*. CELERITĀS, *swiftness* (**celer**, *swift*), *i.e.* the *quality* of being swift. VĒRITĀS, *truth* (**vērus**, *true*), *i.e.* the *quality* of being true.



A Roman Medallion

2. **-IA** and **-TIA** form nouns denoting condition or quality: MEMORIA, *memory* (**memor**, *mindful*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being mindful. AMĪCITIA, *friendship* (**amīcus**, *friendly*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being a friend. IŪSTITIA, *justice* (**iūstus**, *just*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being just. PRŪDENTIA, *prudence* (**prūdēns**, *prudent*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being prudent. DĪLIGENTIA, *care* (**dīligēns**, *careful*), *i.e.* the *condition* or *quality* of being careful.

Sōlem enim ē mundō tollere videntur quī amīcitiam ē vītā tollunt. (Cicero)
For they who take friendship out of life seem to take the sun from heaven

CHAPTER XXVIII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN · AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE

FIRST SECTION

239. Use of the Relative Pronoun in English. — The forms of the relative pronoun in English are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*. Clauses introduced by relative pronouns are called Relative Clauses, thus:

(1) *I saw the boy who* (or *that*) *was standing near the temple.* Here the main clause is *I saw the boy;* the relative clause describes the boy. The relative pronoun *who* is the Subject of the verb in the relative clause, and is in the Nominative case. Its antecedent *boy* is the Object of the main verb, and is in the Objective case. Since the relative stands in place of its antecedent *boy*, it is, like *boy*, masculine and third person singular (as is shown by the verb). Thus we see that the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number, but its case is determined by its use in the relative clause, and is not necessarily the same as that of its antecedent.



A Roman Medallion

240. The Relative Pronoun in Latin. — The relative pronoun in Latin, **quī**, m., **quae**, f., **quod**, n., *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*, is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**[1]	(all genders)		**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**[2]	(all genders)		**quibus**	(all genders)	
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	(all genders)	

ENGLISH MEANINGS

Nominative:	*who* (P), *which* (T), *that* (P, T), *what* (T)
Genitive:	*whose* (P), *of whom* (P), *of which* (T)
Dative:	*to* or *for whom* (P), *to* or *for which* (T)
Accusative:	*whom* (P), *which* (T), *that* (P, T), *what* (T)
Ablative:	*from whom* (P), *from which* (T), *from what* (T)

The English forms used in referring to persons are marked P; those used with things are marked T; those used either with persons or things are marked P, T.



The Emperor Trajan goes to dedicate his Forum

(Trajan is the figure in high relief at the right)

[1] Pronounced *cŏŏ́-yus*.

[2] Pronounced *cŏŏ́-i* (*kwi*).

241. The Use of the Relative Pronoun in Latin. — Translate the following examples:

1. **Puerum vīdī qui ad templum stābat.** (*Subject*)
2. **Haec puella parva cuius māter ē vītā excessit.** (*Poss. Gen.*)
3. **Hic est mīles cui dux praemia dedit.** (*Indir. Obj.*)
4. **Bellum, quod**[1] **cum Germānīs gessērunt, longum fuit.** (*Object*)
5. **Gladius quō mīles sē dēfendit longus est.** (*Abl. of Means*)
6. **Frāter meus, quōcum**[2] **ad urbem vēnī.** (*Abl. of Accom.*)
7. **Eā aestāte, quā pater ad bellum vocātus est.** (*Abl. of Time When*)
8. **Cīvēs, ā quibus urbs dēfēnsa erat, laudātī sunt.** (*Abl. of Agent*)
9. **Vulnera, quibus labōrābat, erant plūrima.** (*Abl. of Cause*)
10. (*a*) **Ego, quī amīcus sum, dīxī.** (*Antecedent, First Per.*)
    (*b*) **Tū, quī amīcus es, dīxistī.** (*Antecedent, Second Per.*)
    (*c*) **Ille, quī amīcus est, dīxit.** (*Antecedent, Third Per.*)

242. Rule. — In Latin a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *person*, and *number*, but its *case* is determined by its use in the Relative clause.

243. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. The Veneti had many boats *with which* they sailed to Britain. 2. This woman *whose* son was killed in battle is always grieving (**doleō**). 3. We *who* were present thanked him. 4. *What* (**quae**, *n. Acc. pl.*) we learned concerning the war terrified us. 5. We praise the man *who* (or *that*) fights in behalf of (**prō**) his country. 6. I have already read the book (**librum quem**) you gave me. 7. We have already read the books you gave us.

---

[1] In English, the relative pronoun, if used in the *objective* case, may be omitted. In Latin the relative pronoun is *never* omitted.

[2] See footnote 2, page 114, and footnote 3, page 126.



The Alban Hills

To the right is the Tomb of Caecilia Metella, on the Appian Way

(150)

SECOND SECTION

244. VOCABULARY XXVIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
children	**līberī, -ōrum,** *m.*	
go to, advance	**accēdō, -ere, accéssī, accessūrus**	*accede, access*ion
yield, give up	**concēdō, -ere, concéssī, concessūrus**	*concede, concess*ion
go away, depart	**discēdō, -ere, discéssī, discessūrus**	
go out	**excēdō, -ere, excéssī, excessūrus**	*exceed, excess*ive
go forward, advance	**prōcēdō, -ere, prōcéssī, prōcessūrus**	*proceed, process*ion
go back	**recēdō, -ere, recéssī, recessūrus**	*recede, recess, recess*ional
come up, succeed	**succēdō, -ere, succéssī, successūrus**	*succeed, success*
struggle, hasten	**conténdō, -ere, conténdī, conténtum**	*contend, content*ion
fight	**dī́micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**	
hurry	**própero, -āre, -āvī, —**	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES[1]

245. *A.* 1. Prīmum Aenēās ā patriā discessit; deinde ad multās terrās nāvigāvit; tandem ad Italiam accessit. 2. Quod nōmen habēbat eius fīlius? 3. Iam Aenēās ē vītā excesserat; cuius fīlius, nōmine Ascanius, ad rēgnum patris successit. 4. Sed posteā Amūlius, rēx inīquus, quī ipse fīliōs nōn habēbat, nōlēbat (*was unwilling*) rēgnum duōbus fīliīs Rhēae Silviae concēdere. 5. Itaque hōs līberōs servī posuērunt in

---

[1] First read the marginal summary in **246**, and observe in the text the Latin equivalents of the proper names. See the footnotes.



"The Shepherd," a Roman Painting
(From the tomb of Statilius Taurus, of about the time of Vergil)

arcā ligneā,[1] ad flūmen properāvērunt, et arcam in aquam coniēcērunt.

B. 1. Who saved the children, Romulus and Remus? 2. Whither did the kind shepherd[2] carry them? 3. Afterwards Romulus built a town near the river, and the name of this town was Rome. 4. The Romans had seized the Sabine women; therefore the Sabines went out from many towns and fought with them. 5. At last the Sabine women hastened to go to the battle; peace was made; the Sabine men went back to their own (**sua**) towns.

LATIN SELECTION

246. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Aeneas comes from Troy.

Ubi (*when*) Trōia ā Graecīs occupāta est, Aenēās patriam relīquit et ad Italiam paucīs cum sociīs nāvigāvit. Quī in Italiā ā rēge Latīnō in amīcitiam acceptus est.

Ascanius builds Alba Longa on the Alban Hills.

Postquam (*after*) Aenēās ē vītā excessit, Ascanius, fīlius eius, rēgnum excēpit et Albam Longam, oppidum novum, aedificāvit.

---

[1] See footnote 2, p. 153. [2] See footnote 4, p. 153.

King Amulius sets Romulus and Remus adrift upon the Tiber.

Post multōs annōs Amūlius frātrem suum occīdere, quī rēx erat Albānōrum, cōnsilium cēpit et rēgnum occupāvit. Sed fīlia rēgis fīliōs duōs parvulōs[1] habuit, quōs Amūlius in animō habēbat occīdere. Itaque hōs, quōrum nōmina erant Rōmulus et Remus, in arcā ligneā[2] posuit arcamque in flūmen coniēcit. Tum in hīs locīs vāstae sōlitūdines[3] erant.

The floating cradle grounds on the river bank. A wolf befriends the children; a shepherd rescues them.

Pater autem (*however*) puerōrum erat deus; quī eōs et (*also*) servāvit. Ad rīpam (*bank*) enim flūminis, ubi (*where*) arca relīcta erat, lupam (*wolf*) mīsit; quae puerōs parvulōs dēfendēbat. Eōs tandem vīdit pāstor[4] benignus, quī suscēpit eōs et ad vīllam suam parvam sēcum portāvit.

Romulus and Remus found Rome.

Rōmulus et Remus, cum prīmum (*as soon as*) virī fuērunt, Amūlium, rēgem illum malum, occīdērunt rēgnumque Numitōrī dedērunt. Deinde oppidum suum ad illud flūmen, in eō ipsō locō ubi servātī erant, posuērunt. Huius oppidī nōmen erat Rōma.

How the Romans won their Sabine wives.

In eō oppidō nōn erant multae fēminae. Itaque Rōmānī Sabīnōs, quī nōn longē habitābant, cum fēminīs et fīliābus ad spectaculum (*a public show*) invītāvērunt (*invited*). Fīliās Sabīnōrum cēpērunt et in mātrimōnium dūxērunt (*married*). Ea fuit causa bellī cum Sabīnīs, sed fēminae pācem implōrāvērunt.

---

[1] **parvulus, -a, -um** (diminutive of **parvus, -a, -um**, *small*), *very small*, *tiny*.

[2] **arca lignea**, *a chest of wood* (cf. English "ark").

[3] **sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis**, f., "solitude."

[4] **pāstor, pāstōris**, m. (from **pāscō**, *I feed*), lit., *one who feeds*, *shepherd* (cf. English "pastor," "pasture").

Vita sine litteris mors est — *Life without learning is death*

CHAPTER XXIX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *POSTQUAM, UBI, DUM.* CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH *QUOD, QUIA*

FIRST SECTION

247. Temporal Clauses. — In the complex sentence, *I saw your brother after I received your letter*, the principal clause is *I saw your brother.* The past tense (*I saw*) expresses the action of the verb merely as in the past; the particular time referred to in the past is not indicated. The subordinate clause, *after I received your letter*, indicates more definitely (or *defines*) the *time* referred to by the principal clause, and is, therefore, called a *Temporal* clause; it is introduced by a temporal conjunction (*after*). Other Temporal conjunctions are *when* and *while.*

These Temporal conjunctions in Latin are: **postquam,** *after;* **ubi,** *when;* and **dum,** *while.*

EXAMPLES OF TEMPORAL CLAUSES

1. **Postquam epistulam tuam accēpī, frātrem tuum vīdī,** *After I received your letter, I saw your brother.*

2. **Ubi eum vīdī, dē frātre tuō rogāvī,** *When I saw him, I asked about your brother.*

3. **Dum in Italiā sum, multa oppida pulcherrima vīdī,** *While I was in Italy, I saw many very beautiful towns.*

248. Rules. — 1. A Temporal clause introduced by **postquam,** *after*, or **ubi,** *when*, if it refers to *past* time, gener-

ally has the Perfect Indicative, which is often translated by the English "Past Perfect."

2. A Temporal clause introduced by **dum**, *while*, if it refers to *past* time, regularly has the "vivid Present" Indicative, which is usually translated by the English "Past Progressive."

249. Causal Clauses. — In the complex sentence, *We fight for our country, because we love liberty*, the principal clause is *we fight for our country*. The verb *we fight* expresses the action as a *fact*, that is, as true at the time of speaking (the present). The subordinate clause, *because we love liberty*, gives the cause or reason of the action expressed in the principal clause, and is, therefore, called a *Causal* clause. It is introduced by a Causal conjunction (*because*). The verb, *we love* (Present Indicative), expresses the action of the verb as a *fact*, that is, as true at the time of speaking (the present).

The sentence becomes in Latin: **Prō patriā nostrā pugnāmus, quod** (or **quia**) **lībertātem amāmus.**[1]

EXAMPLES OF CAUSAL CLAUSES

1. **Rēx Rōmānōs vincere nōn potuit, quod Horātius pontem dēfendit,** *The king could not conquer the Romans, because Horatius defended the bridge.*

2. **Patriam nostram amāmus, quia nostra est,** *We love our country, because it is ours.*

3. **Illōs discipulōs, quod fīdī sunt, laudāmus,** *We praise those pupils, because they are faithful.*

[1] Instead of a subordinate (causal) clause we may use a coördinate statement with the conjunction **nam**, *for*, or **enim** (postpositive), *for*, thus: **Prō patriā nostrā pugnāmus, nam lībertātem** (or **lībertātem enim**) **amāmus.**

250. Rule. — A Causal clause introduced by **quod** or **quia**, *because*, has the Indicative to assert the reason as a fact.

251. VOCABULARY XXIX

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
apply, employ	**adhíbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	Cf. **habeō, 112**.
hold together, confine	**contíneō, -ēre, -uī, conténtus**	*contain, content*
alarm, excite	**commóveō, -ēre, commōvī, commōtus**	*commot*ion
arouse, disturb	**permóveō, -ēre, permōvī, permōtus**	
throw to, add	**adíciō, -ere, adiēcī, adiéctus**	*adjec*tive
hurl	**coníciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniéctus**	*conjec*ture
throw into, inspire	**iníciō, -ere, iniēcī, iniéctus**	*inject*
throw against, oppose	**obíciō, -ere, obiēcī, obiéctus**	*object, objec*tion
throw forward	**prōíciō, -ere, prōiēcī, prōiéctus**	*project, projec*tion
throw back	**reíciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiéctus**	*reject, rejec*tion
throw across, pierce	**trāíciō, -ere, trāiēcī, trāiéctus**	

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES[1]

252. *A.* 1. Ubi Porsena, rēx Etrūscus, multōs et peditēs et equitēs in (*against*) incolās Rōmae dūxit, Horātius pontem dēfendit. 2. Magnō timōre Rōmānī commovēbantur, quod

[1] First read the marginal summary in **253**, and observe in the text the Latin equivalents of the proper names. See the footnotes.

mūrī nōn erant firmī; multam dīligentiam adhibēbant; mūrōs cōnfirmābant. 3. Sed Iāniculum oppidī mūrīs **nōndum** (*not yet*) inclūsum (*inclosed*) erat; novum mūrum Rōmānī obicere Etrūscīs[1] nōn poterant. 4. Postquam igitur Porsena Iāniculum cum celeritāte occupāvit, magnus timor Rōmānīs[1] iniectus est. 5. Tandem Etrūscī ad pontem accessērunt; hic pōns ab Horātiō dēfendēbātur; eius virtūs Rōmānīs[1] multum adiēcit animum.



Etruscan Gate at Volterra

B. 1. The three Romans dared to fight with a great number of Etruscans. 2. Porsena's soldiers hurled many weapons; Horatius was not disturbed, but dared to defend the bridge. 3. When the bridge fell (**cecidit**, *fr.* **cadō**) into the river, Horatius threw himself forward into the water. 4. Horatius himself was not wounded, but his friend was pierced by an arrow. 5. At last the forces of Porsena were thrown back; Rome was saved.

LATIN SELECTION

253. Horatius Defends the Bridge

The enemy approach. Dum Tarquinius Superbus[2] cum Rōmānīs bellum gerit, auxilium Porsenae, rēgis Etrūscō-

---

[1] Dative with the compound verb.

[2] Cf. p. 5.

rum,[1] petiit; quī auxilium dedit et multōs mīlitēs contrā (*against*) Rōmānōs dūxit et Iāniculum[2] occupāvit.

The Romans fight and flee.

Magnō in perīculō erat Rōma. Agricolae cum līberīs in oppidum properāvērunt et mūrōs cōnfirmāre contendērunt. Porsena ipse suōs dūxit et cum Rōmānīs proelium commīsit. Rōmānī magnā cum fortitūdine pugnābant, sed tandem ad pontem fugiēbant, ubi autem stābat Horātius.

Horatius and his two comrades must "keep the bridge."

Iam Porsena cum multīs mīlitibus ad pontem accedēbat. Horātius tamen (*nevertheless*) manēbat et cum duōbus sociīs, quod reliquī Rōmānī magnō timōre iam discesserant, pontem contrā tantam (*so great*) multitūdinem dēfendere audēbat.

"Brave Horatius stands alone."

Postquam Rōmānī trāns flūmen fūgērunt, pontem rescindere (*to cut down*) contendērunt — id enim Horātius iusserat. Tum Horātius sociōs dīmīsit et ipse sōlus mānsit.

The Romans cut down the bridge. Horatius swims to safety.

Neque multō post magna pārs pontis in flūmen cecidit (*fell*). Tum dēmum (*at length*) Horātius in flūmine salūtem petiit. Tēla multa Etrūscī iēcērunt, ille tamen sine vulneribus trānāvit (*swam across*).

Suggested Reading: Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, "Horatius."

---

[1] **Etrūscus**, -a, -um, *Etruscan*. Etruria is north of the Tiber. Cf. map facing p. 62.

[2] **Iāniculum**, n., a hill across the Tiber from early Rome. Cf. map, p. 100.



Horatius at the Bridge

Post nūbēs sōl — *After the clouds the sun*

CHAPTER XXX (REVIEW)

254. Vocabularies and Syntax. — (*a*) Review carefully Vocabularies XXVI–XXIX. (*b*) Practice, for accuracy and speed, on **terra, hortus, templum, cōnsilium, mīles, aestās, pater, flūmen, tempus, ego, tū, hic, ille, īdem, is, ipse, quis, quī, bonus, vocō, moneō, habeō, regō, capiō, sum, possum.** (*c*) Review the Rules of Syntax, I–XXIX, pp. 338–339.

SENTENCES ILLUSTRATING SYNTAX IN CHAPTERS I–XXIX

255. Be prepared for oral and written work. Parse the words in heavy-faced type.

1. **Num** Appiō Claudiō Caecō[1] **dōna** lēgātī placēbant? 2. **Cōnsulisne** equus in illō proeliō **sagittā** trāiectus est? 3. **Nōnne** Pyrrhus ipse **eā hieme multōs** mīlitēs ex Italiā ēdūxit? 4. Haec pōma putrida maculāvērunt illa bona pōma; itaque malī amīcī certē puerōs bonōs maculābunt. 5. Prīmum Rōmulus et Remus in arcā ligneā **sunt positī**; deinde haec arca ā servīs Amūlī in flūmen coniecta est. 6. Porsena, **rēx** Etrūscōrum, **cum Rōmānīs** proelium commīsit; **eōs cum celeritāte** in fugam dedit. 7. Quis studet **trēs annōs** in Galliā bellum gerere? 8. Elisabētha in lutum **prōcēdere** nōn cupiēbat; imprōvīsō iuvenis ēgregius accessit; novum pallium subitō in viam prōiēcit. 9. Īnfīdōs mīlitēs **iūdicī** ad supplicium dabimus. 10. Populus **ā rēge** convocātus est; deinde hic dīxit: "Ille homō nōn est **medicus**, sed sūtor impudīcissimus."

256. Derivation Exercise, Type III. — Select *five* words related to **dīcō**, and after each write an English sentence in which the word is cor-

---

[1] See **257**.

rectly used. Arrange this exercise, when approved by the teacher, in the notebook, following the model:

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus — *send*

mission — He was sent on a mission to Europe.
missionary — He was sent as a missionary to China.
missive — The letter was a formidable missive.
missile — Stones were the missiles of early warfare.
transmit — They will transmit the message to us.
remission — He preached the remission of sins.
commit — It was committed to his care.
submit — They submitted to the inevitable.
submissive — The slave was not submissive.
omit — Omit the non-essential.

LATIN SELECTIONS

257. King Pyrrhus' Envoy Comes to Rome

King Pyrrhus wishes peace. His envoy Cineas tries bribery.

Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, quī cum Rōmānīs bellum gesserat [280 B.C.], tandem pācem facere studēbat. Itaque lēgātum, nōmine Cīneam, dē pāce mīsit. Cīneās, lēgātus rēgis, in animō habēbat dōna magna senātōribus (*senators*) Rōmānīs dare. [Hōc modō pācem cōnfirmāre rēgēs saepe student.] Sed Rōmānī dōna rēgis nōn accēpērunt.



Pyrrhus

The Greek king who assisted the Greek cities of Southern Italy against Rome. He was one of the best generals of antiquity and as chivalrous as brave.

In the senate house Appius Claudius the

Dum in cūriā (*senate house*) Cīneās et virtūtem Pyrrhī laudat et

Blind raises his voice against peace.

dē pāce multa dīcit, senātōrēs prīmum pācem facere cupiēbant. Tandem in cūriam ab amīcīs ductus est Appius Claudius Caecus — id cognōmen (*particular name*) eī propter caecitātem (*blindness*) datum erat. Contrā (*against*) pācem ōrātiōnem habuit[1] et senātōrēs iussit lēgātum rēgis dīmittere, neque verba facere dē pācis condiciōnibus (*terms*).

The senate refuses peace.

Permōtī sunt senātōrēs verbīs Appī et lēgātō respondērunt, "Dum in Italiā rēx cum multīs mīlitibus manet, Rōmānī nōn possunt cum illō pācem facere. Prīmum necesse est Pyrrhum ex Italiā in Ēpīrum recēdere."

The envoy reports to the king.

Lēgātus, quī pācem facere nōn potuerat, ad rēgem discessit et dīxit, "Rōma est templum et senātōrēs Rōmānī sunt rēgēs."

Suggested Readings:

Greek Cities in Southern Italy, Morey, *Roman History*.
The War with King Pyrrhus, Morey, *Roman History*.
Plutarch, *Lives*, "Pyrrhus."

---

258. The Romans Occupy Tarentum

The Romans declare war on Tarentum.

Tarentum urbs (*city*) magna et pulchra fuit in Italiā. Incolae eius urbis erant Graecī; multās enim urbēs et in Italiā et in Siciliā Graecī habēbant. Eam urbem Rōmānī occupāvērunt [272 B.C.]. Tarentīnī (*the Tarentines*) iniūriam fēcerant lēgātīs Rōmānīs quī dē commerciō vēnerant. Quā dē causā Rōmānī Tarentīnīs bellum indīxērunt.

King Pyrrhus helps Tarentum.

Tarentīnī auxilium petiērunt ā Pyrrhō, quī erat rēx Ēpīrī et orīginem suam ab Achille (*Achilles*) trāxit (*traced*). Pyrrhus in Italiam cum multīs

[1] **ōrātiōnem habēre**; *to make a speech, to speak.*



Coins of the Greek City of Tarentum
(Issued 500–350 B.C.)

mīlitibus et elephantīs vēnit. Tum prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Contrā rēgem missus est Pūblicus Valerius Laevīnus, quī tum erat cōnsul.

The Roman consul captures Pyrrhus' scouts.

Explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī ubi Laevīnus cēpit, per castra Rōmāna dūxit et mīlitēs Rōmānōs eīs ostendit. Deinde ad rēgem illōs remīsit. Explōrātōrēs rēgī dīxērunt: "Captī sumus et, postquam per castra Rōmāna ductī sumus, remissī sumus. Mīlitēs Rōmānōs vīdimus; quī magnā cum fortitūdine pugnābunt."

Pyrrhus' elephants win the battle.

Paulō post (*a little later*) proelium commissum est. Pyrrhus tandem vīcit auxiliō elephantōrum, quōs Rōmānī numquam anteā vīderant et equī timēbant. Postquam nox proeliō fīnem dedit, Laevīnus per noctem fūgit.

Pyrrhus treats his captives with chivalry.

Multī Rōmānī captī sunt; quōs Pyrrhus magnō honōre tractāvit (*treated*). Multī occīsī erant, quōrum corpora sepelīrī (*to be buried*) iussit. Ubi suōs mortuōs (*dead*) vīdit, caelum (*sky*) suspexit cum hāc vōce:

"Altera (*another*) victōria tālis (*such*) nōs perdet (*will be our ruin*)."

(*End of First Half Year*)

Virtūtum amīcitia adiūtrīx ā nātūrā data est. (Cicero)
Friendship was given by Nature as a helpmeet of the virtues

CHAPTER XXXI

FOURTH CONJUGATION: *AUDIŌ* · EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE

FIRST SECTION

259. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the synopsis of **capiō** in the Indicative, Active and Passive side by side. 2. Conjugate each tense twice, testing your speed.

260. Fourth Conjugation. — Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in **-iō** (*e.g.* **audiō**, *I hear*). The Present Infinitive Active ends in **-īre** (*e.g.* **audīre**, *to hear*). The Perfect Indicative Active regularly ends in **-īvī** (*e.g.* **audīvī**, *I have heard*, *I heard*). The Perfect Passive Participle regularly ends in **-ītus** (*e.g.* **audītus, -a, -um,** *having been heard*). The characteristic vowel is **ī**. Learn the Indicative Active, page 333.


A Coin of Vespasian
(Reverse of Coin on page 88)

261. Observe. — In the Present Indicative Active of **capiō** (an **-iō** verb of the Third Conjugation) the **i** of the Present stem (**capi-**) is *short* in all the forms; in **audiō** (Fourth Conjugation) the **ī** of the Present stem (**audī-**) is *long*, except before a vowel, and in **audit,** *he hears.* All verbs in **-iō** are alike in the Imperfect Indicative and in the Future Indicative.

262. VOCABULARY XXXI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
penalty	**poéna, -ae,** *f.*	*pen*al
illness	**aegritū́dō, -tū́dinis,** *f.*[1]	
guard, watchman	**cū́stōs, custṓdis,** *m.*	*custod*ian, *custody*
keep watch	**vígilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*vigil*ant
laugh, laugh at	**rī́deō, -ēre, rī́sī, rī́sus**	de*ride*, *rid*icule
it is permitted	**lícet, -ēre, lícuit, lícitum est**	il*licit*
send back	**remíttō, -ere, remī́sī, remíssus**	*remit*, *remiss*
assign, distribute	**tríbuō, -ere, tríbuī, tribū́tus**	*tribute*, con*tribute*
conquer	**víncō, -ere, vī́cī, víctus**	con*vince*, con*vict*
sleep	**dórmiō, -īre, dórmiī, dormī́tum**	*dorm*ant, *dormit*ory
fortify	**mū́niō, -īre, -iī, -ītus**	am*munit*ion
punish	**pū́niō, -īre, -iī, -ītus**	*puni*tive, im*punity*
come	**véniō, -īre, vēnī, véntum**	*ven*ture, ad*venture*
come together, meet	**convéniō, -īre, convēnī, convéntus**	*convene*, *convent*
come through, arrive	**pervéniō, -īre, pervēnī, pervéntum**	
against	**cóntrā** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*pro* and *con* (*contra*)
never	**númquam** (*adv.*)	

SECOND SECTION

263. Expressions of Cause. — The English sentence *The soldier is suffering* (A) *because-of-wounds* (B) states a *fact* (A), and the *cause* for that fact (B). We may also say: *The soldier is suffering from*, or *on-account-of*, or *as-a-result-of, wounds.* Thus we see that in English we have several

[1] Associate the noun **aegritū́dō**, *illness*, with the adjective **aeger, aegra, aegrum**, *ill*. The suffix **-tūdō** expresses a quality or condition. (Cf. the suffixes **-tūs, -tās, -ia, 238**). The English suffix "*-tude*" represents the Latin suffix **-tūdō**, as in "forti*tude*," from **fortitū́dō**, *bravery*.

phrases to express a *cause* or *reason*. Each of these phrases conveys about the same idea.

This sentence becomes in Latin: **Mīles vulneribus** (or **propter vulnera,** or **ob vulnera,** or **ex vulneribus**) **labōrat.** Thus we see that in Latin the cause may be expressed in several ways, but with practically the same meaning.

264. Rule. — Cause is expressed in Latin by the *Ablative alone;* by **ob** or **propter** with the *Accusative;* by **ē (ex)** or **dē**[1] with the *Ablative.*

265. Exercise. — Express in Latin in four ways: 1. The town suffers *from* lack of grain. 2. He fled *on account of* fear.



A Roman Traveling Carriage

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

266. *A.* 1. Custōdī nōn licet dormīre. 2. Ob fugam hunc mīlitem timidum pūnīre dēbent. 3. Octāva enim legiō Fabiō lēgātō ā duce tribūta erat. 4. Ille vir miser propter aegritūdinem semper vigilābat. 5. Iam barbarī ad flūmen con-

[1] *e.g.* **multīs dē causīs** : *for (from) many reasons;* **quā dē causā?** *for what reason?*

vēnērunt; hūc pervenient cum celeritāte; vincentne mīlitēs Rōmānōs? 6. Rīdēbis verba mea, et licet rīdēre.

B. 1. In that year this foot-soldier was punished because of (his) fear. 2. On account of the lack of men, we shall never take that town, which has been fortified with a great wall. 3. Your friend will not come to this place, because the seventh legion has been sent back to the small camp. 4. It is never lawful to punish the good, for, because of (their) virtue, they do nothing contrary to the laws of the state. 5. Because of his father's illness, the scout has not come to our camp.

267. Derivation Exercise, Type II.—Find, for the notebook, *five* English words related to **audiō**.

The Roman Roads

(Optional)

268. The entire country occupied by the Romans was covered with a network of great roads for commercial and military purposes. They were built somewhat as our macadam roads are, and were so perfectly constructed that many of them are still in use.

The most famous of the Roman roads was the *Appian Way*, the "Queen of Roads," which ran nearly southeast from Rome. It was built as far as possible in a straight line, cutting through hills and bridging ravines. It had a pavement of hard stone resting upon several layers of smaller stones partially set in lime. The visitor to Rome usually makes at least one excursion out upon the Appian Way.

"Awe-struck I gazed upon that rock-paved way,
The Appian Road; marmorean witness still
Of Rome's resistless stride and fateful will."

(*Aubrey de Vere.*)



On the Old Appian Way

(Claudian aqueduct in the background ; Alban hills at the right)

Sine virtūte amīcitia esse nōn potest. (Cicero)
Without Virtue Friendship cannot be

CHAPTER XXXII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: *AUDIŌ* (*Cont.*) · ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

FIRST SECTION

269. **Preliminary Review.** — 1. Write the synopsis of **audiō** in the Indicative Active, marking long vowels and the accent. 2. Conjugate each tense, testing your speed. 3. Review the Translation Exercises (**266**).

270. Indicative Passive of *Audiō*. — The tenses of **audiō** become in the Passive: **aúdior, audiēbar, aúdiar, audītus sum, audītus éram, audītus érō.** See pages 333–334.

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. With the book closed, write a synopsis of the Indicative Passive. 3. Conjugate each tense several times.

271. VOCABULARY XXXII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
boat	**nāvígium, nāvígī,** *n.*	*navig*ate
age	**aétās, aetā́tis,** *f.*	
height, depth	**altitū́dō, -tū́dinis,** *f.*	*altitude*
size, importance	**magnitū́dō, -tū́dinis,** *f.*	*magnitude*
multitude	**multitū́dō, -tū́dinis,** *f.*	*multitude*
office, honor	**hónor, honṓris,** *m.*	*honor*able
authority	**potéstās, -tā́tis,** *f.*	Cf. **possum, 101**
overcome, surpass	**súperō, -ā́re, -ā́vī, -ā́tus**	in*super*able

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
drive, defeat	**péllō, -ere, pépulī, púlsus**	*pulse*
drive together, force	**compéllō, -ere, cómpulī, compúlsus**	*compel*, *compuls*ion
drive out	**expéllō, -ere, éxpulī, ex-púlsus**	*expel*, *expuls*ion
drive on, incite	**impéllō, -ere, ímpulī, impúlsus**	*impel*, *impulse*
drive back, repulse	**repéllō, -ere, réppulī, repúlsus**	*repel*, *repuls*ion
hinder	**impédiō, -íre, -ívī, im-pedítus**	*impede*, *imped*iment
come upon, find	**invéniō, -íre, invénī, invéntus**	*invent*, *invent*ion
between, among	**ínter** (*prep. w. Acc.*)	*inter*vene
meanwhile	**ínterim** (*adv.*)	
over, upon	**súper** (*prep. w. Abl. and Acc.*)	*super*human



Basilica (Court House) in the Forum of Trajan

This style of building, with wide central aisle and narrower side aisles, became the model for the early Christian churches

SECOND SECTION

272. Ablative of Specification. — In the English sentence, *He surpassed his brother in courage,* the prepositional phrase *in courage* specifies in what respect *he surpassed his brother.* The sentence becomes in Latin : **Frātrem virtūte superāvit.** Here we see that in Latin the Ablative *without a preposition* is used to specify *in what respect* the statement is made.

273. Rule. — The Ablative *without a preposition,* used to specify *in what respect* the statement is made, is called the *Ablative of Specification.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

274. *A.* 1. Inter Galliam et Germāniam est flūmen Rhēnus; hoc Italiae flūmina magnitūdine superat. 2. Ubi ille dux multa nāvigia ūnum in locum compulit, deinde studēbat barbarōs ad bellum impellere. 3. Et aetāte et potestāte Appius Claudius reliquōs Rōmānōs superābat. 4. Subitō trēs aquilae ā Gallīs vīsae sunt super castra Rōmāna. 5. Interim labor mīlitum nostrōrum altitūdine illīus flūminis impediēbātur.

B. 1. Among the inhabitants of this town my brother excelled in dignity; and so, many honors had been given to him. 2. The farmer himself had driven a great multitude of bad boys from these fields. 3. First, the Gauls were repulsed; then, when they were driven out of the wood, they came to a river; there they found many boats. 4. What scout can surpass this man in speed and diligence? 5. Because of illness the consul was forced to depart from Gaul.

275. Derivation Exercise. — To what Latin words are "audience," "attributable," and "victory" related?

The Aqueducts of Rome

(Optional)

276. Rome's water supply came from the hills through aqueducts, of which there were eventually as many as fourteen, one of them fifty-nine miles long. In the plain near the city the streams were carried on lofty arches, the ruins of which are still conspicuous. These aqueducts are said to have brought more water to the city than flowed past it in the Tiber. The *Claudian* Aqueduct (see p. 167) was one of the most famous of these imposing structures.

Rome still has an abundant supply of water brought in part by the ancient aqueducts, and is, as in ancient times, famous for its beautiful fountains.



A Roman Aqueduct in Southern France
(The *Pont du Gard* at Nîmes)

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō. (Juvenal)
A healthy mind in a healthy body

CHAPTER XXXIII

THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEMS · ABLATIVE OF MANNER

FIRST SECTION

277. Third Declension Nouns with *I*-Stems. — Thus far in the Third Declension we have considered only nouns with the *base* ending in a consonant; now we meet nouns whose "stem" ends in **-i**.[1] These have in the Genitive plural **-ium**; neuter nouns with **i**-stems have in the Ablative singular **-ī**, and in the Nominative and Accusative plural **-ia**; masculine and feminine nouns with **i**-stems have in the Accusative plural **-īs** or **-ēs**.

	hóstis, m. or f., *enemy* (Stem: **hosti-**)	**nū́bēs**, f., *cloud* (Stem: **nūbi-**)	**ánimal**, n., *animal* (Stem: **animāli-**)	**urbs**, f., *city* (Stem: **urbi-**)
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom.	**hóstis**	**nū́bēs**	**ánimal**	**urbs**
Gen.	**hóstis**	**nū́bis**	**animā́lis**	**úrbis**
Dat.	**hóstī**	**nū́bī**	**animā́lī**	**úrbī**
Acc.	**hóstem**	**nū́bem**	**ánimal**	**úrbem**
Abl.	**hóste**	**nū́be**	**animā́lī**	**úrbe**
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**hóstēs**	**nū́bēs**	**animā́lia**	**úrbēs**
Gen.	**hóstium**	**nū́bium**	**animā́lium**	**úrbium**
Dat.	**hóstibus**	**nū́bibus**	**animā́libus**	**úrbibus**
Acc.	**hóstēs (-īs)**	**nū́bēs (-īs)**	**animā́lia**	**úrbēs (-īs)**
Abl.	**hóstibus**	**nū́bibus**	**animā́libus**	**úrbibus**

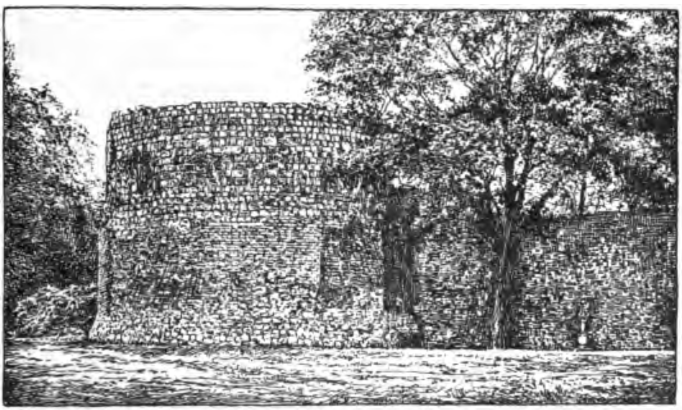
[1] The term "base" designates the unchanging part of a noun to which its case endings are added. The "stem," however, of the First Declen-

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. Write the declension of **nox**, Gen. **nóctis**, f., *night*, and **mōns**, Gen **móntis**, m., *mountain*.

278. *I*-Stem Nouns: How Recognized. — The following nouns have **i**-stems:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns in **-is** or **-ēs** not increasing in the Genitive;[1]
2. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x** (after a consonant); also **nox**, Gen. **noctis**, f., *night;*
3. Neuter nouns in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**;
4. All nouns in **-ns** or **-rs**.

Note. — A few **i**-stem nouns (masc. and fem.) have in the Accusative singular both **-em** and **-im**. Of these the most important are: **ignis, turris, avis, cīvis, fīnis, nāvis**.



The Roman Tower at York, England

sion ends in **ā**, which appears in **-ārum** of the Genitive plural; that of the Second Declension ends in **-o**, which appears in **-ōrum** of the Genitive plural. Similarly nouns of the Third Declension with **-ium** in the Genitive plural are said to have **i**-stems.

[1] A noun "increases" in the Genitive if in the singular the Genitive has *more* syllables than in the Nominative. Thus **hostis**, Gen. **hostis**, does *not* increase in the Genitive, while **mīles**, Gen. **mīlitis**, does increase.

279. The Gender of Nouns with *I*-Stems. — 1. Nouns ending in **s** or **x** (after a consonant) are generally feminine: as **mēns, mentis**, f., *mind;* **pars, partis**, f., *part;* but **mōns, montis**, *mountain*, and **pōns, pontis**, *bridge*, are masculine.

2. Nouns ending in **ēs** (not increasing in the Genitive) are feminine: as **nūbēs, nūbis**, f., *cloud;* **famēs, famis**, f., *hunger, famine.*

3. Nouns ending in **is** (not increasing in the Genitive) are masculine or feminine: as **ignis, ignis**, m., *fire;* **turris, turris**, f., *tower.*

4. Nouns ending in **e, al, ar** are neuter: as **mare, maris**, n., *sea;* **animal, animālis**, n., *animal;* **calcar, calcāris**, n., *spur.*

280. VOCABULARY XXXIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
cause	**caúsa, -ae,** *f.*	*caus*al
bird	**ávis, ávis,** *f.*	*avi*ator, *avi*ation
citizen	**cī́vis, cī́vis,** *m.*	*civi*l, *civi*c
end (*pl.* territory)	**fī́nis, fī́nis,** *m.*	*fin*al, *fin*ish
fire	**ígnis, ígnis,** *m.*	*ign*ite, *ign*eous
sea	**máre, máris,** *n.*	*mar*ine, *mar*iner
mind	**mēns, méntis,** *f.*	*ment*al, de*ment*ed
death	**mors, mórtis,** *f.*	*mort*al, *mort*gage
ship	**nā́vis, nā́vis,** *f.*	*nav*y, *nav*al
part	**pars, pártis,** *f.*	*part*ial, *party*
bridge	**pōns, póntis,** *m.*	*pont*oon
tower	**túrris, túrris,** *f.*	*turr*et
climb, mount	**ascéndō, -ere, ascéndī, ascēnsus**	*ascend*, *ascens*ion
descend	**dēscéndo, -ere, -ī, dēscēnsum**	con*descend*
lead across	**trādū́cō, -ere, trādū́xī, trāductus**	*traduce*
drag	**tráhō, -ere, trā́xī, tráctus**	at*tract*, *tract*or
neighboring	**fīnítimus, -a, -um**	
highest, top of	**súmmus, -a, -um**	*sum*, *summ*it
at night	**nóctū** (*adv.*)	

SECOND SECTION

281. The Manner of an Action. — The manner of an action may be expressed in English by an *adverb*, thus: *He defended the city bravely.* Instead of the adverb *bravely*, we may say *with bravery*. Similarly, instead of *very-bravely*, we may say *with-great-bravery*. Thus, in place of an adverb and equivalent to it, we often use in English a *prepositional phrase* to express the manner of an action. Latin does the same, thus: **Urbem fortissimē** (adv.) **dēfendit,** *He defended the city very-bravely;* **Urbem cum magnā fortitūdine dēfendit,** *He defended the city with-great-bravery.*



Mosaic of Parrots and Cat

NOTE.— The preposition **cum** may be omitted *only* if an adjective (or limiting Genitive) is used with the noun in the phrase expressing manner. Thus: *He answered with great dignity,* **Cum magnā dīgnitāte** (or **Magnā dīgnitāte**) **respondit.**

282. Rule. — The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative with **cum**; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective (or limiting Genitive) is used with the noun expressing manner.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

283. *A.* 1. Mentem sānam (*sound*) in corpore sānō habēre dēbeō. 2. Cūr cōnsulēs in hanc partem urbis ascendērunt? 3. Dux mīlitum cum hostibus proelium committere parat; nautae multās nāvēs in mare iam trāxērunt, et hostēs nostrōs repellent. 4. Multā nocte (*late at night*) ille custōs pontis



A Roman Fleet in Harbor

ob aegritūdinem vigilāre nōn poterat. 5. Quā dē causā sunt multa animālia in silvīs et montibus?

B. 1. The consul's slave will *lead*[1] these animals *across* the bridge to yonder[2] high mountains. 2. Many birds had been seen among the clouds by the citizens of our city. 3. When the Romans (had) climbed the mountain, they fought with great bravery; at last night made an end of the battle. 4. Those towers surpass your ship in height. 5. Meanwhile at night many fires had been seen on the top of the mountain.

284. Derivation Exercise. — Give the meaning of "urbanity," "civics," "immortality," and "marines." Use each in a sentence.

---

[1] **trādūcō**, *I lead across*, takes two accusatives. [2] **ille**.

Nihil est vēritātis lūce dulcius. (Cicero)
Nothing is sweeter than the light of truth

CHAPTER XXXIV

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES · COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

FIRST SECTION

285. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the declension of **hostis**, marking long vowels and the accent. 2. Decline (orally), giving the gender and stem of each, **nūbēs**, **animal**, **urbs**, **nox**, **mōns**. 3. Repeat the declension of these nouns. Can you give them in *one* minute?

286. Third Declension Adjectives. — Adjectives of the Third Declension are divided into two classes, those with consonant stems, and those with **i**-stems. *Those with **i**-stems are by far the more numerous.*[1]

The adjectives with **i**-stems, like **i**-stem nouns, have in the Genitive plural **-ium**; in the Ablative singular *always* **-ī** (never **-e** like most of the **i**-stem nouns); in the Accusative plural the masculine and feminine forms have both **-ēs** and **-īs**; the neuter Nominative and Accusative plural ends in **-ia**.

Adjectives of the Third Declension are also classified according to the number of forms in the Nominative singular. A few adjectives in **-er** have no ending in

[1] In this book the *only* Third Declension adjective with a consonant stem is **vetus**, m., f., n., *old*, Gen. **veteris** (cf. "*veter*an").

the Nominative singular masculine (*e.g.* **celer**, m., **celeris**, f., **celere**, n., *swift*) and, therefore, are called "adjectives of *three* forms."[1] Most adjectives, however, have in the Nominative the same forms for the masculine and feminine, and are, therefore, "adjectives of *two* forms" (*e.g.* **fortis**, m., f., **forte**, n., *brave*). Numerous adjectives



The Acropolis of Athens

(in **-āx**, **-āns**, and **-ēns**) have but one form for all genders in the Nominative singular, and are called "adjectives of *one* form" (*e.g.* **audāx**, m., f., n., *bold*). The declension of **ācer**, **facilis**, **audāx**, and **prūdēns** is given on page 320.

287. Observe. — All adjectives of the Third Declension have the *same forms* for all genders in all cases except the Nominative and Accusative, singular and plural. It will save time, therefore, to give but *one* form in the cases where all forms are the same.

[1] The adjectives in **-er**, except **celer**, *swift*, "lose the **e**" (*e.g.* **ācer**, m., **ācris**, f., **ācre**, n., *sharp*, *keen*, *spirited*).

288. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. Write the declension of **ācer, facilis, audāx, prūdēns**. 3. Decline (orally), testing your speed, **omnis**, *all*, and **difficilis**, *difficult*. 4. Decline **proelium ācre, mīles audāx**, and **māter prūdēns**.

289. These adjectives are compared as follows:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ācer-, m., ācris, f., ācre, n.	ācrior, m. f., ācrius, n.	ācerrimus, -a, -um
fortis, m. f., forte, n.	fortior, m. f., fortius, n.	fortissimus, -a, -um
facilis, m. f., facile, n.	facilior, m. f., facilius, n.	facillimus, -a, -um
audāx, m. f. n.	audācior, m. f., audācius, n.	audācissimus, -a, -um
prūdēns, m. f. n.	prūdentior, m. f., prūdentius, n.	prūdentissimus, -a, -um

Observe. — 1. The Comparative degree is formed by adding **-ior**, m., f., **-ius**, n. to the *base* of the Positive. 2. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** (**-a, -um**) to the masculine form (Nominative singular) of the Positive. 3. **facilis** forms the Superlative by adding **-limus** (**-a, -um**) to the *base* of the Positive (similarly **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *similar*; **dissimilis**, *dissimilar*; **humilis**, *humble, lowly*; **gracilis**, *slender*). 4. Other adjectives form the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**) to the *base* of the Positive.



A Roman Salt Dish

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Write the comparisons of the adjectives in **289**. 2. Decline, testing your speed, the Comparative of **ācer**, and of **fortis**.

290. VOCABULARY XXXIV

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
grieve	**dóleō, -ēre, -uī, dolitūrus**	con*dole*
grief	**dólor, dolṓris,** *m.*	*dolor*ous
it is fitting	**opórtet, oportḗre, opórtuit,** —	
private	**prīvā́tus, -a, -um**	*privac*y
sacred, holy	**sácer, sácra, sácrum**	*sacra*ment
difficult	**diffícilis,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*difficul*ty
cavalry (*adj.*)	**equéster,** *m.,* **-tris,** *f.,* **-tre,** *n.*	*equestr*ian
infantry (*adj.*)	**pedéster,** *m.,* **-tris,** *f.,* **-tre,** *n.*	*pedestr*ian
brave	**fórtis,** *m., f.,* **fórte,** *n.*	*forti*fy
heavy, serious	**grávis,** *m., f.,* **gráve,** *n.*	*grav*ity
immortal	**immortā́lis,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*immortali*ty
light	**lévis,** *m., f.,* **léve,** *n.*	*lev*ity
every (*pl.* all)	**ómnis,** *m., f.,* **ómne,** *n.*	*omnibus*
enough, quite	**sátis** (*indecl. adj., and adv.*)	*satis*fy

SECOND SECTION

291. Measure or Degree of Difference. — The English sentences (1) *He is much taller than his brother*, and (2) *He is a foot taller than his brother*, state a comparison (here a *difference*). The amount (*degree*) of the difference is indicated: (*a*) by an adverb, *much*; and (*b*) by the measure of the difference, *a foot* (*one foot*). We may also say in English, *He is taller by a foot.* This is the Roman way of saying it (*i.e.* with the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*). Thus we have in Latin: (1) **Multō altior est quam frāter** (lit. *he is taller by much*), *He is much taller than his brother.* (2) **Ūnō pede altior est quam frāter** (lit., *he is taller by a (one) foot*), *He is a foot taller than his brother.*

292. Rule. — In Latin the Measure or Degree of Difference is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. — If a superlative adjective or adverb is used, the degree of difference suggested is expressed by the adverb **longē**, as: *This road will be far* or *much the easiest*, **Hoc iter longē facillimum erit.**

293. Observe. — To express distance, as *The city was five miles distant from the river*, we may say in Latin either: (*a*) **Urbs ā flūmine quīnque passuum mīlia aberat**, or (*b*) **Urbs ā flūmine quīnque passuum mīlibus aberat.** In (*a*) we have "extent of distance"; in (*b*) "measure of degree of difference."

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

294. *A.* 1. Multī elephantī sunt equīs audāciōrēs, sed omnēs equī multō sunt celeriōrēs quam elephantī. 2. Mors patris erat mātrī meae dolor ācerrimus. 3. Nōn oportēbat morte illīus rēgis inīquī dolēre. 4. Satis facile dē monte quōvīs (*any*) dēscendere, sed ascendere altissimum in montem difficillimum est. 5. Prīmum cōpiae Rōmānae et pedestrēs et equestrēs ācre proelium commīsērunt cum Pyrrhī mīlitibus atque hōs fortitūdine superāvērunt; deinde, ubi paulō post[1] elephantōs vīdērunt, timēbant; tandem per noctem magnā celeritāte fugērunt.

B. 1. Will it not be fitting to build here a holy temple to the immortal gods? 2. Part of the soldiers were grieving, not because of lack of grain, but because of the death of our prudent leader. 3. The cavalry forces will not be braver than the infantry. 4. My sword is much heavier than yours, but the rest-of my arms are a little lighter. 5. All the private citizens of this small town had laughed at the "very sacred" birds of the consul, and so they paid a serious penalty.

295. Derivation Exercise. — Give additional English words related to **omnis**, **trahō**, and **urbs**.

---

[1] The prepositions **ante** and **post** are also used as adverbs, *e.g.* **paulō post** (lit. *afterwards by-a-little*), *a little later;* **paucīs post annīs**, *a few years later.*

LATIN SELECTIONS

296. SPARTAN COURAGE

A Spartan question. Rēx Spartānus dīxit, "Meī cīvēs nōn rogant, 'Quam multī sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

A Spartan answer. Ōlim dux hostium — quī iam proelium committere parābat — ducī Spartānō dīxit, "Sōlem (*sun*) propter multitūdinem tēlōrum et sagittārum vidēre nōn poteritis." Statim dux Spartānus respondit, "In umbrā (*shade*) igitur pugnābimus."

The walls of Sparta. Ōlim rēx Spartānus rogātus est, "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Rēx statim respondit, "Nostra urbs mūrōs habet optimōs, incolārum virtūtem."



Within the Hall of the Vestals

297. VESTA AND THE VESTALS

The ever-burning fire. Per annōs multōs Rōmānī omnēs erant agricolae; in vallibus gregēs custōdiēbant (*guarded*) et, ubi nox aderat, compellēbant eōs ad collēs (*hills*). In domiciliīs manēbant fēminae et ignem servābant. Difficile enim erat novum ignem facere.

Vesta's temple. Quia Vesta, dea Rōmāna, custōs erat focī, eam Rōmānī colēbant et eī post annōs multōs templum ē marmore (*marble*) albō in Forō dēdicāvērunt (*dedicated*). Quod templum parvum et rotundum (*round*) pictūra nostra ostendit (Cf. p. 81). Ignis sacer in templō Vestae servābātur, quō in locō focus erat cīvitātis Rōmānae.

The Vestals. Puellae annōrum fermē sex (*about six years old*) ā Pontifice Māximō (*the Pontifex Maximus*) dēligēbantur et XXX (trīgintā) annōs in Ātriō (*Hall*) Vestae habitābant. Eae appellābantur Vestālēs.

Their duties and privileges. Fīdae erant Vestālēs et amābantur. Eīs honōrēs tribuēbantur. Trīgintā annōs, ut (*as*) dīximus, in Ātriō Vestae habitābant; tum eīs licēbat Ātrium Vestae relinquere et domicilia prīvāta repetere. Īnfīdae Vestālēs — perpaucae (*very few*) īnfīdae erant — semper pūniēbantur et ad mortem condemnābantur (*were condemned*).

The story of Tuccia. Ōlim Tuccia, bona et fīda Vestālis, accusābātur (*was being accused*). Inimīcī eius dīxērunt, "Nōn est bonae virtūtis." Tuccia autem (*however*) Vestam implōrāvit. Dea benigna virginī (*maiden*) auxilium dedit et mīrāculō (*miracle*) auxilium manifēstum (*manifest*) fēcit. Nam dum Tuccia crībrum (*sieve*) aquā complet et aquae plēnum crībrum suprā caput tollit, deae auxiliō aqua in crībrō mānsit.

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī. (Horace)
Sweet and seemly it is to die for fatherland

CHAPTER XXXV (Review)

WORD LIST

298. Suggestions for Study. — Review carefully, testing your speed on the starred words.

Nouns

causa
poena
nāvigium

aegritūdō
aetās
altitūdō
*animal
avis
cīvis
corpus
custōs
dīgnitās
dolor
dux
eques
fīnis
flūmen
frāter
*hostis
*ignis
magnitūdō
*mare
māter
mēns
*mōns
*mors

Nouns

multitūdō
nāvis
nox
nūbēs
*pars
pater
pēs
pōns
potestās
servitūs
soror
*turris
*urbs
virtūs

Verbs

superō
vigilō

doleō
licet
oportet
rīdeō

ascendō
dēscendō
*pellō
compellō

Verbs

expellō
impellō
repellō
remittō
trādūcō
trahō
tribuō
*vincō

audiō
dormiō
impediō
mūniō
pūniō
*veniō
conveniō
inveniō
perveniō

Adjectives

*ācer
*audāx
celer
difficilis
equester
*facilis
fīnitimus

Adjectives

fortis
gravis
immortālis
levis
omnis
pedester
prīvātus
*prūdēns
sacer
summus

Adverbs

interim
noctū
numquam
paulō
satis

Conjunctions and Prepositions

contrā
enim
inter
nam
super
ubi

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters XXXI–XXXIV

299. 1. Dī immortālēs dolōrem graviōrem meō patrī dedērunt quam tuō, nam omnēs amīcōs iam āmīsit.

2. Interim barbarī ē castrīs contrā Rōmānōs ēductī erant; prīmum ācerrimō animō pugnābant; rēx enim ipse inter prīmōs mīlitēs stābat et cōnsilia prūdentia dabat.

3. Hae nāvēs in omnēs maris partēs pervenient summā cum celeritāte; nāvēs enim multō sunt omnibus animālibus celeriōrēs.

4. In summō monte hostēs nostrī castra posuērunt; itaque propter magnam montis altitūdinem ad haec castra nōn possumus ascendere.

5. Omnēsne mentis dolōrēs vincuntur magnitūdine animī?

6. Gravī aegritūdine hic cīvis nōn potest esse turris sacrae custōs; eumne igitur ad urbem Rōmam remittēmus?

7. Licēbitne hanc multitūdinem virōrum prīvātōrum ob verba audācia pūnīre?

8. Ōlim multō erat difficilius quam nunc facere ignem novum; magnā igitur dīligentiā in Vestae templō ignis sacer semper colēbātur.



Tuccia Lifting the Sieve

9. Hunc ignem colere habēbātur honor summus; multae puellae esse Vestālēs cupiēbant; Vestālēs reliquās Rōmānās et virtūte et potestāte superābant.

10. Iūdex inīquus iussit Tucciam prīmō crībrum aquā complēre, deinde hoc crībrum aquae plēnum super caput tollere; hic labor certē satis difficilis erat.

300. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Select for the notebook *ten* English words related to **sedeō** (174). Bear in mind that after a prefix the verb root **sed** weakens to **-sid**.



In the Atrium of a Roman House

LATIN WORDS IN ALGEBRA AND BIOLOGY

(Optional)

301. In Algebra the term *equation* (Latin **aequātiō**, from **aequō**, *I make equal*) is an expression of equality; and in Biology the nerves which *bear* (Latin **ferō**, *I bear*) the nervous impulse *to* (Latin **ad-**, **af-**, *to*) the brain are called *afferent*, while *efferent* nerves *bear* the nervous impulse *from* (Latin **ē-**, **ex-**, **ef-**, *from*) the brain. And in science generally most technical terms are derived from Latin (or Greek).[1]

[1] Scientists in America, England, France, Germany, Russia, and elsewhere, are continually studying different plants and animals. For their

Observe carefully the following terms used in (*A*) Algebra and (*B*) Biology.

A. Algebra

TERM	LATIN SOURCE	MEANING
exponent	**expōnō**, *I place out;* **expōnēns** (present participle), *placing out*	A symbol setting forth the power to which the base is to be raised.
fraction	**frangō**, *I break;* **frāctiō**, *breaking*	A part into which a whole has been broken.
radical	**rādīx**, *root;* **rādīcālis** (adj.), *of a root*	The sign of a root $\surd$, originally the letter **r**, the initial of **rādīx**.

B. Biology

TERM	LATIN SOURCE	MEANING
auditory	**audiō**, *I hear;* **audītor**, *a hearer;* **audītōrius**, *of a hearer*	Pertaining to the sense or the organ of hearing.
respiration	**respīrō**, *I breathe back;* **respīrātiō**, *a breathing back*	Breathing in and out.
terminal	**terminus**, *end;* **terminālis**, *of an end*	Occurring at the end, as "terminal buds."

The following terms used in one or the other of these sciences are from Latin: *annual, bacillus, bivalve, coefficient, deciduous, duct, equation, factor, insoluble, integer, involuntary, motor nerves, perennial, primary, sensory, simultaneous, subtract, vaccine, valve, voluntary.*

Reason out the meanings. Consult an English dictionary, if necessary.

Exercise. — On a page of the notebook place these terms of Latin origin used in Algebra and Biology, and *add others* as you meet them.

---

convenience Latin names are usually adopted in advanced scientific works. Thus the *English* or *house sparrow* is called **Passer domesticus**, and the *American elm*, **Ulmus americāna**, so that scientists of different countries may always use the same terms.

Nihil est virtūte amābilius. (Cicero)
Than Virtue nothing is more lovable

CHAPTER XXXVI

ADVERBS FROM THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

FIRST SECTION

302. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the comparison of the following adjectives and their adverbs: **firmus, longus, līber, aeger.** 2. Write the comparison of: **ācer, facilis, prūdēns, audāx.**

303. Adverbs from Adjectives of the Third Declension. — The *Positive* adverb regularly ends in **-ter** added to the stem; all stems being treated as **i**-stems except those in **-āx** and **-ns**, the latter of which lose the **-i** of the stem. Thus: **ācer**, m., **ācris**, f., **ācre**, n., *sharp*, **ācriter**, *sharply*; **fortis**, m. f., **forte**, n., *brave*, **fortiter**, *bravely*; **audāx**, m. f. n., *bold*, **audācter**, *boldly*; **prūdēns**, m. f. n., *prudent*, **prūdenter**, *prudently*.

The *Comparative* adverb regularly ends in **-ius** added to the *base* of the Positive adjective, thus: **ācrius**, *more sharply*; **fortius**, *more bravely*; **audācius**, *more boldly*; **prūdentius**, *more prudently*.

The *Superlative* adverb regularly ends in **-issimē** added to the base, thus: **fortissimē**, *most bravely*. But all adjectives in **-er** form their Superlative adverb by adding **-rimē** to the *masculine* form of the Positive, thus: **ācerrimē** *most sharply*; and the six adjectives in **-lis**, with their Superlative adjective in **-limus**,[1] form their Superlative

[1] Cf. **289** — **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike* (also **humilis**, *humble*, **gracilis**, *slender*, which are not

adverb by adding **-limē** to the base of the Positive, thus: **facillimē**, *most easily*.

The comparison of adverbs from Third Declension adjectives is also given on page 321.

304. Certain adjectives have irregular comparison:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	**melior,** m. f., **melius,** n., *better*	**optimus, -a, -um,** *best*
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	**peior,** m. f., **peius,** n., *worse*	**pessimus, -a, -um,** *worst*
magnus, -a, -um, *large*	**maior,** m. f., **maius,** n., *larger*	**maximus, -a, -um,** *largest*
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	**minor,** m. f., **minus,** n., *smaller*	**minimus, -a, -um,** *smallest*
multus, -a, -um, *many a, much* (pl. *many*)	. . . . **plūs,**[1] n., *more* (pl. **plūrēs,** m. f., **plūra,** n.)	**plūrimus, -a, -um,** *most*

305. The adverbs from these adjectives are:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bĕnĕ, *well*	**melius,** *better*	**optimē,** *best*
mălĕ, *ill*	**peius,** *worse*	**pessimē,** *worst*
magnopere,[2] *greatly*	**magis,**[2] *more*	**maximē,**[2] *most*
parum, *little*	**minus,** *less*	**minimē,** *least*
multum, *much*	**plūs,** *more*	**plūrimum,** *most*

used in this book). The Positive adverb of **facilis** is **facile,** *easily* (neut. Acc. sing. used as an adv.); cf. **prīmum,** *at first.* The Positive adverb of **difficilis** is **difficulter,** *with difficulty*

[1] **plūs** is used as a neuter noun or as an adverb. In the plural it is an adjective.

[2] **magnopere** = **magnō opere** (Abl. of **opus,** *work*), Ablative of Manner; **magis** and **maximē** express *degree*, and are used to compare adjectives in **-ius** and **-eus**, thus: **magis dubius,** *more doubtful;* **maximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. Write the comparison of these irregular adjectives and their adverbs, marking long vowels and the accent.

306. Derivation Exercise. — Examine the following English words related to these irregular adjectives and adverbs, determine the exact meaning of each, and use each in an English sentence: *bene*factor, *bene*fit, *bene*ficent, *bene*ficiary, *male*factor, *male*volent, *major*, *major*ity, *maximum*, *minor*, *minor*ity, *minimum*, *plur*al, *plur*ality.



A Coin of Augustus

307. VOCABULARY XXXVI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
arm, equip	**ármō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*arma*ment
esteem, love	**dīligō, -ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus**	
careful	**dīligēns,** *m., f., n., Gen.* **dīligéntis**	*diligent*
with care	**dīligénter** (*adv.*)	*diligent*ly
understand	**intéllegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus**	*intellig*ent
nevertheless	**támen** (*adv.*)	

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

308. *A.* 1. Maiōra castra illae trēs legiōnēs bene dēfendērunt; minōra tamen ab hostibus facillimē sunt expugnāta. 2. Ācriter et fortiter Rōmānī proelium committēbant; imprōvīsō dē nūbibus multitūdō avium ad terram dēscendit; omnēs mīlitēs magnopere timēbant; hōc modō fīnis proeliō celeriter datus est. 3. Servōs armāre erat exemplum pessimum; sed cōnsulēs animōs cīvium male intellegēbant. 4. Plūrimī dominī cum servīs in agrīs dīligentissimē labōrant; illi ā servīs magnopere dīliguntur. 5. Numquam meliōrem custōdem illīus pontis inveniēs quam fīlium amīcī meī prūdentissimum.

B. 1. Our leader is diligently fortifying the city, for we cannot easily drive the enemy from our territory. 2. Often the best men are disturbed by pain of body and soul more seriously than the most wicked. 3. This diligent woman, whose husband was fighting with Caesar, very prudently had plowed all her field. 4. This small boy hurled the weapon much more boldly than did that larger slave. 5. Who will understand Cicero's words more easily, more quickly, than the best citizens of Rome?

309. Derivation Exercise, Type III. — Find for the notebook *six* English words related to **vincō**. After each write an English sentence in which the word is correctly used, and insert this exercise, when approved by the teacher, in the notebook.

LATIN SELECTION

310. ANDROCLUS AND THE LION

Androclus is matched against an African lion.

In Circō Maximō hominēs cum animālibus saepe pugnābant. Inter quae ōlim erat leō immānis (*huge*). Cum hōc leōne Androclum servum pugnāre dominus crūdēlis (*cruel*) iusserat et spectātōrēs multī aderant; quī spectābant leōnem magnā cum admīrātiōne (*astonishment*) et dīcēbant, "Hodiē Androclus cum illō leōne pugnābit, sed leōnem occīdere nōn poterit. Numquam enim immāniōrem leōnem vīdimus."

The strange conduct of the lion.

Leō postquam Androclum vīdit, prīmum spectābat eum, deinde ad eum accessit et caudam (*tail*) blandē (*in a friendly way*) movēbat, tum ad pedēs Androclī recubuit. Quod spectātōrēs intellegere nōn poterant; itaque dīcēbant "Mīrum (*strange*) est, ille leō et ille homō sunt amīcī!"

Androclus' Story.

Tum Androclus dē leōne nārrāvit: "In Africā in agrīs labōrābam. Quia dominus meus crūdēlis erat, fūgī in montēs et in cavernam (*cave*) vēnī. Nōn multō post in eandem cavernam vēnit hic leō, cui pēs ūnus cruentus (*bloody*) erat. Pedem cruentum leō ostendit, in quō invēnī stirpem (*thorn*) ingentem. Quem extrāxī (*pulled out*) et vulnus siccāvī (*stanched*). In eādem cavernā nōs, leō et homō, habitābāmus. Dum in silvīs errō, ā mīlitibus tandem captus ex Āfricā in Italiam tractus sum."

Androclus receives the lion and his freedom.

Haec dīxit Androclus. Eī lībertās data est et leō. In urbe saepe Androclus cum leōne ambulābat; quōs ubi populus vīdit, exclāmābat, "Hic est leō amīcus hominis, hic est homō medicus leōnis."



Vēritās vōs līberābit[1] — *The truth shall make you free*

CHAPTER XXXVII

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

FIRST SECTION

311. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the comparison of **ācer, fortis, audāx, prūdēns, facilis**; then form the Positive adverb of each adjective and write its comparison, giving with each degree its meaning. 2. Write the comparison of the irregular adjectives **bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus**; then form the Positive adverb of each adjective and write its comparison, giving with each degree its meaning. 3. Give the comparison of these ten adjectives, and that of their adverbs.

312. Dative with Adjectives. — In Latin the Dative is used with certain adjectives, just as their equivalents in English are used with the prepositions *to* and *for*. Thus **Pater est mihi benignus**, *Father is kind to me.* Here **mihi** indicates the person to whom the quality expressed by the adjective is directed or referred.

Familiar adjectives used with the Dative are: **amīcus**, *friendly*, **inimīcus**, *unfriendly*; **aequus**, *fair*, **inīquus**, *unfair*; **facilis**, *easy*, **difficilis**, *difficult*; **iūstus**, *just*, **iniūstus**, *unjust*; **similis**,[2] *like*, **dissimilis**,[2] *unlike*; **idōneus**, *suitable*.

313. Rule. — The Dative of Reference is used with certain adjectives to indicate that *to which* the quality expressed by the adjective is directed or referred.

314. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. This language is not difficult for me. Is it difficult for you? 2. The leader of

[1] Motto of the Johns Hopkins University.

[2] The Genitive also is used with **similis** and its compounds: **Frāter est sorōris similis**, *The brother is like the sister* (cf. the expression "the like of").

the enemy was very unjust to all the inhabitants. 3. Caesar himself chose a place suitable for a camp. 4. The son is like (his) father in character (**virtūs**).

315. VOCABULARY XXXVII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
guard	**custṓdia, -ae,** *f.*	*custody*
household, slaves of the household	**família, -ae,** *f.*	*family*
intimate	**familiā́ris,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*familiar*
letter (of the alphabet)	**líttera, -ae,**[1] *f.*	*liter*ary
zeal, enthusiasm	**stúdium, stúdī,** *n.*	*study, studi*ous
journey	**íter, itíneris,** *n.*	*itiner*ary
old man	**sénex, sénis,** *m.*	*sen*ile
force, violence	**vīs,**[2] **vim** (*Acc.*), *f.*	*vim*
put away, hide	**ábdō,**[3] **-ere, ábdidī, ábditus**	
add	**áddō, -ere, áddidī, ádditus**	*addit*ion
give up, surrender	**dḗdō, -ere, dḗdidī, dḗditus**	
give back	**réddō, -ere, réddidī, rédditus**	
hand over	**trā́dō, -ere, trā́didī, trā́ditus**	*trait*or
set on fire	**incéndō, -ere, incéndī, incḗnsus**	*incend*iary, *incense*
send to the help of, yield	**submíttō, -ere, submī́sī, submíssus**	*submit, submiss*ion
take back, receive	**recípiō,**[4] **-ere, recḗpī, recéptus**	*recipi*ent, *receipt*

moreover, on the other hand	**autem** (*conj. postpositive*)
among, at the home of	**apud** (*prep. w. Acc.*)
in truth, but	**vērō** (*adv. postpositive*)
not only . . . but also	**nōn modō . . . sed etiam**

---

[1] In place of **litterae** (*letters, writing, a letter*), the Romans often used **epistula** (from the Greek), *a letter;* cf. "epistle."

[2] **vīs** has no Genitive singular; the Dative and Ablative singular are **vī**; the plural is **vīrēs** (*strength*), **vīrium, vīribus, vīrīs** (**vīrēs**), **vīribus.**

[3] Compounds of **-dō** are generally of the Third Conjugation.

[4] **sē recipere,** *to withdraw* (lit. *to take one's self back*); cf. **mē recipiō,** *I withdraw,* **tē recipis, sē recipit,** etc.

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

316. *A*. 1. Quis vestrum cōnsulis litterās vīdit? Apud quem erit hodiē cōnsul ipse? 2. Iam tibi Caesar satis magnum auxilium mīsit; mihi vērō meās legiōnēs reddere nōn vult (*does not wish*). 3. Quibus tribuērunt Rōmānī custōdiam ignis sacrī? 4. Illae cohortēs, quae prīmō sē ad flūmen recēpērunt, ibi nōn modō sē dēdidērunt sed etiam centuriōnēs suōs prīncipī barbarōrum trādidērunt. 5. Nōs quidem ad oppidum longō itinere nōs recipiēmus; vōs vērō ad silvam vīcīnam vōs celerrimē recipere dēbētis.



A Gallic Chief Surrenders to Caesar

B. 1. When the barbarians had hidden away all their arms and burned all their buildings, then at last they surrendered to Caesar. 2. My father called together all his family and his most intimate friends; then he read to them the orator's letter. 3. The soldiers were already fighting with very great energy, but new zeal was added to their energy by the words of this old man. 4. Not only has the eighth legion marched[1] to the small mountain, but it has also already

[1] *to march* = **iter facere.**

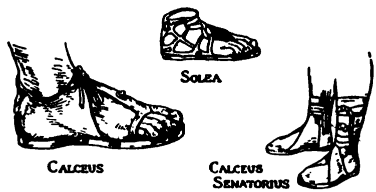
pitched its camp there. It was difficult to find a place suitable for a camp. 5. Once upon a time a lion suffered greatly from a serious wound; but Androclus easily pulled out the thorn from his foot.

LATIN SELECTION

317. The Miser's Shoes

A practical joker exchanges the miser's shoes for the consul's.

Senex, nōmine Albulus, quī dīves et avārus erat, sordidās vestēs gerēbat. Omnēs cīvēs cognōscēbant avārī soleās. Ōlim senex sē lavābat apud thermās (*baths*) pūblicās. Interim vir iocōsus locum intrāvit. Ubi vīdit vestīmenta (*clothes*) Albulī, statim calceōs eius cēpit. Apud eāsdem thermās cōnsul sē lavābat.



Roman Shoes

What happened then.

Postquam Albulus sē lavit, calceōs suōs nōn vīdit, sed purpureōs (*purple*) cōnsulis. Deīs grātiās ēgit prō tantō (*such*) mīrāculō, et cum cōnsulis soleīs discessit. Cōnsul vērō ubi suōs calceōs invenīre nōn potuit et cognōvit calceōs Albulī, vix continuit īram. Albulum līctōrēs (*lictors*) ad cōnsulem trāxērunt et accūsāvērunt. Ille multīs cum lacrimīs veniam petiit frūstrā. Nam cōnsul asperā vōce līctōrēs iussit avārum pūnīre.

What became of the shoes.

Deinde Albulus ad Tiberim flūmen, quod nōn longē aberat, dēscendit. Tum, dum magnā vōce exclāmat, "Numquam iterum (*again*) dominum perdētis," calceōs in flūmen abiēcit.

Carmina morte carent. (Ovid) — *Poetry cannot die*

CHAPTER XXXVIII

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

FIRST SECTION

318. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the synopsis in the Indicative Active of **habeō** and **moveō**; then conjugate all the tenses of each verb. 2. Write the synopsis in the Indicative Active of **gerō, mittō, petō, pōnō, accipiō, faciō**; then conjugate all the tenses of each verb in order.

319. The Ablative of Separation. — In English we indicate *separation* or *removal* by *from, away-from, out-from, out-of, down-from.* The equivalent Latin prepositions are **ā (ab)**, *away-from* (*from*), **ē (ex)**, *out-from* (*out-of, from*), **dē**, *down-from* (*from*).

In Latin with a verb of motion *actual separation* is regularly expressed, as in English, *by a preposition with the Ablative*, thus:

1. **Ā flūmine castra mōvit,** *He moved the camp from (away-from) the river;*
2. **Eōdem diē ex urbe discessit,** *The same day he left the city* (lit. *the same day he-went-away from (out-from) the city*);
3. **Prīmā lūce Caesar cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūxit,** *At dawn Caesar led his troops from the camp (led-out . . . out-from)*;
4. **Incolae dē montibus dēscendērunt et in agmen impetum fēcērunt,** *The inhabitants came-down from (down-from) the mountains and made an attack upon the line.*

Separation was felt to be *implied* (not *actual*) in the verbs **careō**, *I lack*, *am without*, *need*, and **līberō**, *I set free.* With these verbs separation is regularly expressed by the Ablative *without a preposition*, thus:

5. **Multī cīvēs frūmentō carēbant**, *Many citizens were without grain;*

6. **Patriam nostram perīculō līberāre dēbēmus**, *We ought to free our country from peril.*

320. Rule. — Actual separation or removal is regularly expressed in Latin by **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, **dē**, with the Ablative; but if the separation is *figurative* (not actual), the Ablative is used *without* a preposition.

NOTE. — With names of cities and towns, separation is expressed *without a preposition*; if **ā (ab)** is used, the meaning is *from-the-vicinity-of*, *from-the-direction-of*. Thus **Rōmā vēnit**, *He came from-Rome*; but **Ab Rōmā vēnit**, *He came from-the-vicinity-of* (*from-the-direction-of*) *Rome.*

Also, the Ablatives **domō**, *from home*, and **rūre**, *from the country*, are used without a preposition.

321. LATIN PHRASES (Review)

ENGLISH MEANINGS	LATIN PHRASES
to accept as a friend	**in amīcitiam accipere**
to intend	**in animō habēre** (*w. inf.*)
about (*with numerals*)	**ad** *or* **circiter** (*adv.*)
to engage in battle	**proelium committere**
to wage war	**bellum gerere** (*w.* **cum** *and Abl.*)
to pitch camp	**castra pōnere**
to break camp	**castra movēre**
to make a journey, to march	**iter facere**
to inform	**certiōrem**[1] **facere** (*lit.* to make more certain); *pl.* **certiōrēs facere**
to put to flight	**in fugam dare**

[1] Cf. **certior** (pred. adj.) **factus sum**, *I was informed*; **certiōrēs** (pred. adj.) **factī sumus**, *we were informed.*

LATIN PHRASES (Review) — Continued

English Meanings	Latin Phrases
to attempt to escape	**fugā salūtem petere**
to be grateful	**grātiam habēre** (*w. Dat.*)
to give thanks	**grātiās agere** (*w. Dat.*)
to give each other, exchange	**inter sē dare**
at dawn	**prīmā lūce**
late at night	**multā nocte**
until late at night	**ad multam noctem**
at midnight	**mediā nocte**
a few years after	**post paucōs annōs**, *or* **paucīs post** (*adv.*) **annīs**
a little afterwards	**paulō post** (*lit.* afterwards by a little)
and not long afterwards	**nec (neque) multō post**
to be very powerful	**plūrimum** (*adv.*) **posse**
as soon as	**cum prīmum** (*lit.* when first)
as soon as possible	**quam prīmum**
as quickly as possible	**quam celerrimē**[1]
to pay the penalty	**poenam dare**
for the future	**in reliquum** (*sc.* **tempus**)
to suffer from wounds	**vulneribus labōrāre**
to deliver a speech	**ōrātiōnem habēre**
to make an end (of), stop	**fīnem facere** (*w. Gen.*)

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

322. *A.* 1. Cum prīmum lēgātus hostēs in fugam dedit, statim Caesarem hāc dē victōriā certiōrem fēcit. 2. Dux Rōmānus maximam grātiam habēbat huius oppidī incolīs, quōrum ad vīgintī in amīcitiam populī Rōmānī accēpit. 3. Nec multō post, ab illīs sorōribus, quae inter sē magnopere amant, ego dē morte patris meī certior factus sum. 4. Cōn-

[1] quam with any superlative adjective or adverb = "as possible."

sul, quī gravibus vulneribus labōrābat, tamen ōrātiōnem habēre studēbat. 5. Amīcus meus in Galliā circiter trēs annōs bellum gessit; cupit autem in reliquum hīc in Italiā habitāre.



Portrait Statue of a Roman Woman

B. 1. The tenth legion, with which Caesar had arrived at daybreak, engaged in battle with the Gauls as quickly as possible; the latter, however, were much more powerful. 2. Until late at night these soldiers intended to attempt to escape. 3. Did you not as soon as possible thank the doctor (**medicus**) who put an end to your illness? 4. A few years ago those two friends, to whom has been assigned the guarding of the bridge, exchanged swords. 5. Why did the avaricious old man throw away his dirty shoes into the Tiber? We, at least, do not understand this part of the story very well.

LATIN SELECTIONS

323. Caesar's Daughter Julia; Cicero's Daughter Tullia

Cicero sends a letter of sympathy to Caesar in Britain.

Hāc aestāte [54 B.C.] Iūlia, Caesaris fīlia, quae Pompeiī uxor (*wife*) erat, ē vītā excessit. Quod ubi audīvit Cicerō, cuius frāter cum Caesare in Britanniā erat, Caesarī dē morte eius fīliae epistulam hūmānissimam (*very sympathetic*) scrīpsit.

Caesar in turn expresses his sympathy.

Post paucōs annōs Cicerō fīliam suam Tulliam āmīsit [45 B.C.]. Dolōrem fīliae āmissae graviter sustinēbat. Ex litterīs et ex studiīs sōlācium

(*solace*) petēbat multōsque librōs scrīpsit. Caesar, quī Cicerōnem dīligēbat, epistulam statim scrīpsit; quod idem fēcērunt amīcī Cicerōnis multī. Ūna epistula, quam Servius Sulpicius scrīpsit, est bene nōta. Ā multīs etiam nunc legitur.

324. TWO PATRIOTIC BROTHERS

A Roman mother and her sons. Cornēlia fīlia fuit Pūblī Cornēlī Scīpiōnis Āfricānī, quī Hannibalem vīcit [202 B.C.]. Illīus marītus fuit Tiberius Semprōnius Gracchus. Fīliōs duōs habuērunt, quōrum senior fuit Tiberius Semprōnius Gracchus, minor Gāius Semprōnius Gracchus.


Scipio Africanus

"These are my jewels." Ōlim mātrōna nōbilissima Cornēliae ōrnāmenta sua ostendēbat, quae erant pulcherrima et pretiōsissima. Ea Cornēlia laudāvit, deinde fīliōs suōs ad sē vocāvit: "Haec," inquit, "sunt mea ōrnāmenta."

Cornelia's epitaph. Monumentum Cornēliae, quod ā populō Rōmānō dēdicātum est, īnscrīptiōnem brevem habuit: "Māter Gracchōrum."

The education and success of her sons. Tiberius et Gāius praeceptōrēs (*teachers*) Gracchōs habēbant et litterās Graecās magnō cum studiō legēbant. Tiberius et ōrātor clārus et mīles fortis fuit. Mūrōs Carthāginis prīmus cōnscendit [146 B.C.]. Ā cīvibus et laudābātur et amābātur.

Their sympathy for the poor. In omnī parte Italiae multitūdō magna erat servōrum. Cīvēs plūrimī, quibus difficile erat in

agrīs vīvere, iam in urbem vēnerant. Quod cīvitās Rōmāna magnō in perīculō iam erat, patriae auxilium dare Tiberius et Gāius studēbant. In animō habēbant multōs cīvēs ex urbe in agrōs redūcere et agrōs pūblicōs, quōs iam obtinuerant dīvitēs (*rich*) paucī, distribuere. Et Tiberius et Gāius ab inimīcīs occīsī sunt.

Their death for their country. Hōrum frātrum duōrum memoriam populus Rōmānus semper colēbat. Statuae eīs dēdicātae sunt. Quam vērē (*truly*) dīxit Horātius poēta (*poet*):

"Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī."
Sweet and seemly it is to die for fatherland.



A Roman Mother and her Sons

Vincit quī sē vincit — *Who conquers self is truly conqueror*

CHAPTER XXXIX

FOURTH DECLENSION · DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR

FIRST SECTION

325. Fourth Declension. — Nouns of the Fourth Declension are mostly *masculine;* among the few feminine nouns are **manus**, *hand*, and **domus**, *home;* the only neuter noun used in this book is **cornū**, *horn*, *wing* (of an army). The Genitive singular ends in **-ūs** (*e.g.* **manūs, domūs, cornūs**). These nouns are declined as follows:

mánus,[1] f., *hand* (Stem: **manu-**)		**córnū**, n., *horn* (Stem: **cornu-**)	**dómus**, f., *home* (Stem: **domu-**)
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom.	**mánus**	**córnū**	**dómus**
Gen.	**mánūs**	**córnūs**	**dómūs**
Dat.	**mánuī** or **-ū**	**córnū**	(**dómuī**) **dómō**[2]
Acc.	**mánum**	**córnū**	**dómum**
Abl.	**mánū**	**córnū**	(**dómū**) **dómō**[2]
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**mánūs**	**córnua**	**dómūs**
Gen.	**mánuum**	**córnuum**	(**dómuum**) **domṓrum**[2]
Dat.	**mánibus**	**córnibus**	**dómibus**
Acc.	**mánūs**	**córnua**	(**dómūs**) **dómōs**[2]
Abl.	**mánibus**	**córnibus**	**dómibus**

[1] **manus**, *hand*, often means a *company*, *force*, *band* (*cf.* a "handful" of men).

[2] Second Declension forms. These (except in the Genitive plural) are more common.

Observe. — 1. For convenience the u of the stem is printed as a part of the case endings. 2. In the declension of **cornū**, n., the forms of the singular, except the Genitive, are the same.

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Write the declension of **impetus**, m., *attack.* 2. Decline together **magnus exercitus**, *a large army.* Practice for accuracy and speed.

326. VOCABULARY XXXIX

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
arrival	**advéntus, -ūs,**[1] *m.*	*Adventist*
army	**exércitus, -ūs,** *m.*	*exercise*
cavalry	**equitā́tus, -ūs,** *m.*	
attack	**ímpetus, -ūs,**[1] *m.*	*impetuous*
magistrate	**magistrā́tus, -ūs,** *m.*	*magistrate*
birth	**nā́tus, nā́tūs,**[2] *m.*	*natal, native*
senate	**senā́tus, -ūs,**[1] *m.*	*senator*
intrust, order	**mándō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*mandate*
gather	**cólligō, -ere, collḗgī, colléctus**	*collect*
catch sight of, see	**cōnspíciō, -ere, cōnspéxī, cōnspéctus**	*conspicuous*
sight	**cōnspéctus, -ūs,** *m.*	
undertake	**suscípiō, -ere, suscḗpī, suscéptus**	*susceptible*
right	**déxter, déxtra, déxtrum**	*dexterous*
left	**siníster, sinístra, sinístrum**	*sinister*

SECOND SECTION

327. The Dative of the Possessor. — In Latin with the verb **sum** a Dative may indicate the possessor, thus: **Mihi sunt agrī multī** (lit. *there are to me many fields*). Here the statement, **sunt agrī multī**, *there are many fields*, is made

[1] *Notes on word formation:* (*a*) The suffix **-tus** added to a verb root denotes the *action* expressed by the verb, or the *result of the action:* **adventus**, *a coming to, arrival;* **impetus**, *a seeking against, attack.* (*b*) The suffix **-ātus** added to the base of a noun denotes *office* or *official body:* **senātus**, *an official body of old men, the senate.*

[2] Cf. **maior nātū** (Abl. of Specification), *older;* **maximus nātū**, *oldest;* **minor nātū**, *younger;* **minimus nātū**, *youngest.*

with-reference-to-me (**mihi**); hence the sentence is equivalent to the English, *I have many fields.*

NOTE. — We may also say: **(Ego) agrōs multōs habeō.**

328. Rule. — The Dative of the Possessor is used with the verb **sum**, the thing possessed being the subject.



Interior of a Roman House

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

329. *A.* 1. In cōnspectū omnium magistrātuum illa domus pulcherrima cīvium malōrum manū incēnsa est. 2. Deinde Gallī in sinistrum cornū exercitūs Rōmānī subitō impetum magnā vī fēcērunt. 3. Hoc bellum contrā Germānōs, quōrum magna multitūdō flūmen Rhēnum iam trāducta est, nōs omnēs acrī studiō suscipiēmus. 4. Auxiliō nostrō hostēs, quī in Gallōs impetum fēcerant, pācem petere coāctī sunt. 5. Ubi adventus exercitūs nostrī hostibus nūntiātus est, quam maximās cōpiās collēgērunt.

B. 1. The boy is very like his father; the daughter, however, is unlike both father and mother. 2. The senate will choose a house suitable for the highest (**summus**) magistrate. 3. This leader, who is much younger than I, will gather as large an army as possible. 4. To the oldest senator was intrusted the most difficult task (work). 5. The cavalry of the Gauls was on our right wing; against this part of the enemy Caesar made an attack as soon as possible.

LATIN SELECTION

330. The Haunted House in Athens[1]

The haunted house.

Erat in urbe antīquā (*ancient*) spatiōsa (*spacious*) et pulchra domus. Sed nēmō ibi habitāre audēbat; per silentium (*silence*) enim noctis saepe sonus ferrī (*sound of iron*) et clangor vinculōrum (*clang of chains*) erant, deinde veniēbat imāgō, senex quī squālidam (*unkempt*) barbam et capillōs (*locks of hair*) longōs habēbat. Etiam vincula gerēbat (*he wore*). "Imāginem," inquit dominus, "saepe vīdī neque dormīre posteā potuī; territus sum. In mente meā memoria imāginis manet." Deinde domus dēserta (*deserted*) erat, quam tamen dominus prōscrīpsit (*advertised*). Pretium parvum erat.



A Coin of Athens

A philosopher rents the house.

Athēnodōrus philosophus domum vīdit, titulum (*notice*) lēgit, dē pretiō parvō rogāvit. Ubi dominus dē imāgine nārrāvit, philosophus rīsit et pretium dedit. (Philosophī enim imāginēs nōn timent.)

---

[1] This ghost story can easily be presented as a little play in Latin or in English. It is especially appropriate for the Latin Club at Halloween.

At midnight the ghost appears.

Ubi nox adfuit, iubet servōs librōs suōs et lūmen (*lamp*) et tabulās in ātriō pōnere. Servōs dīmittit et scrībere incipit. Mediā nocte clangor ferrī et vinculōrum fuit. Iam in ātriō sonābant vincula. Athēnodōrus tamen scrībēbat neque oculōs (*eyes*) sustulit. Tum maximus clangor vinculōrum erat. Philosophus respexit (*looked back*) et post sē vīdit imāginem quae stābat et digitō (*finger*) signa faciēbat. "Nōn est," inquit philosophus, "vēra (*real*) imāgō." Oculōs āvertit et scrībēbat. Mox clangōrem vinculōrum super caput suum audiēbat. Iterum (*again*) spectāvit imāginem, quae signa ut (*as*) anteā (*before*) faciēbat. Timēbat et lūmen sustulit. Imāgō in hortum praecessit. Philosophus vērō cum timōre imāginem spectābat et ipse in hortum ambulāvit. Ubi in hortum vēnit imāgō, subitō non fuit. Philosophus herbām (*grass*) et folia (*leaves*) ibi posuit.

The ghost is laid.

Ubi lūx erat, ad magistrātum contendit et dē imāgine nārrāvit, "Vēra imāgō," inquit, "fuit; oculīs meīs ipse vīdī." Postquam locum effōdērunt (*dug up*), ossa (*bones*) et vincula vīdērunt, quae collēgērunt et in terrā rīte (*duly*) abdidērunt. In illā domō imāgō posteā numquam vīsa est.



From a Roman Lamp
(Mercury brings a Soul to Charon)

Iūstitia omnibus — *Justice to all*

CHAPTER XL (REVIEW)

WORD LIST

331. Suggestions for Study. — Review carefully, testing your speed on the starred words.

NOUNS

causa
custōdia
familia
littera
poena
—
nāvigium
studium
—
aegritūdō
aetās
altitūdō
animal
avis
cīvis
custōs
dolor
fīnis
hostis
ignis
*iter
magnitūdō
mare
mēns
*mōns
*mors
multitūdō

NOUNS

*nāvis
nox
*pars
pōns
potestās
senex
turris
*urbs
vīs
—
adventus
cōnspectus
*domus
equitātus
exercitus
*impetus
magistrātus
*manus
nātus
senātus

VERBS

armō
*mandō
superō
vigilō
—
*doleō

VERBS

licet
oportet
rīdeō
—
abdō
addō
dēdō
reddō
*trādō
ascendō
dēscendō
colligō
dīligō
intellegō
cōnspiciō
incendō
*pellō
compellō
expellō
impellō
repellō
*recipiō
suscipiō
remittō
submittō
trādūcō
trahō

VERBS

tribuō
*vincō
—
audiō
dormiō
impediō
mūniō
pūniō
veniō
conveniō
inveniō
perveniō

ADJECTIVES

*ācer
*audāx
celer
dexter
*difficilis
dīligēns
dissimilis
equester
*facilis
familiāris
fīnitimus
*fortis
gravis

Adjectives	Adverbs	Adverbs	Conjunctions and Prepositions
*idōneus	*ācriter	*magnopere	apud
immortālis	*audācter	*male	contrā
levis	autem	noctū	enim
omnis	*bene	numquam	inter
pedester	*celeriter	paulō	nam
prīvātus	*dīligenter	plūs	nōn modō . . . sed etiam
*prūdēns	*facile	*prūdenter	super
sacer	*fortiter	satis	
*similis	*graviter	tamen	
sinister	interim	vērō	
summus			

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters XXXI–XXXIX

332. 1. Mediā nocte hic magistrātus, cui nōs auxilium saepe submīserāmus, tandem ad itineris suī fīnem pervēnit.

2. Tū quidem patrī es similis; ego autem sum similior mātrī.

3. Amīcus vester aegritūdine gravī in senātū adesse nōn poterat.

4. Plūrimae nāvēs etiam turrēs altitūdine superant.

5. In Gallōs, quī sē ad montem celeriter recēperant, equitātus Rōmānus impetum ā dextrō cornū magnā vī fēcit.

6. Tiberius Gracchus, quī multō maior nātū erat Gāiō, partem cīvium ex urbe in agrōs remittere magnopere cupiēbat.

7. Ille leō, quōcum Androclus in cavernā habitābat, dominō suō erat multō benignior quam spectātōrēs.

8. Interim cōpiae pedestrēs nōn sōlum iter ad flūmen cum celeritāte fēcērunt, sed etiam pontem satis firmum ibi aedificāvērunt.

9. Mortis timōre saepe virī fortiōrēs fugā salūtem petiērunt.

10. Audīvistisne, virī optimī, ōrātiōnem quam Cicerō apud senātum hodiē habuit?

11. Postquam dux barbarōrum omnēs domōs incolārum incendit, cōpiās suās ex urbe ēdūxit.

12. Pater meus, cui nōn est pecūnia magna, est tamen beātus (*happy*); habet enim amīcōs multōs et fīdōs.

LATIN SELECTION

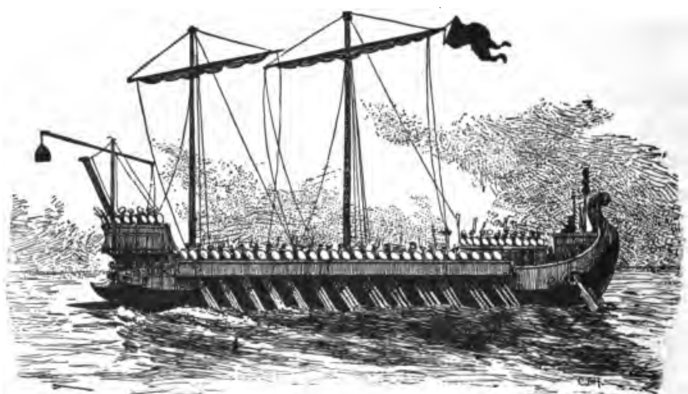
333. The Shipwreck and the Rescue

The dangerous coast. Ūna pars Britanniae ad septentriōnēs spectat. Eius partis in lītore rūpēs (*cliffs*) asperrimae sunt. Nāvēs ibi multae naufragium (*shipwreck*) faciunt.

The lighthouse. Itaque incolae in rūpe maximā turrim aedificāvērunt, quam habitābat senex cum fīliā. Noctū semper lucernam (*lantern*) incendēbant nautāsque dē perīculō monēbant.

The wreck. Ōlim postquam fuērunt multōs diēs continuae (*continuous*) tempestātēs, tandem custōdēs ē turrī magnam vīdērunt nāvem quae in saxīs erat; mox etiam paucōs vīdērunt nautās quī signa faciēbant auxiliumque petēbant.

The rescue. Tum fīlia parva cum patre nāviculam (*boat*) dēdūxit et fortiter nāvem magnam petēbant. Difficile erat, quod fluctūs magnī erant atque ventus violentus. Perīculō tamen nōn territī ē morte nautās ēripuērunt omnēsque nautās ad turrim reportāvērunt.



A Roman Ship at Sea

FAMILIAR QUOTATIONS FROM THE LATIN

(*Optional*)

334. Quotations from the Latin frequently appear as mottoes, maxims, and phrases of various sorts. Nearly every state has a Latin motto. Thus, the motto on the seal of Connecticut, beneath three vines, is **Quī trānstulit sustinet**, *He who transplanted, sustains.* Universities usually have Latin mottoes: thus that of Harvard is **Vēritās**, *Truth;* and that of Syracuse is **Scientia suōs cultōrēs corōnat**, *Wisdom crowns those who seek her.* Often graduating classes choose a Latin motto, as **Labor omnia vincit**, *Work overcomes every obstacle.* Many families have Latin mottoes inherited from the days of heraldry when Latin was the international language. The motto of George Washington's family was **Exitus acta probat**, *Action is tested by results.*

Again, many hymns have Latin names, as **Tē Deum Laudāmus** and **Stābat Māter**; in fact many hymns are still sung entirely in Latin. The Lord's Prayer is often called the **Pater Noster**, these being the words with which it begins in Latin. In English literature we meet Latin quotations, as in Scott's "Ivanhoe" and often in Thackeray. As a title for one of his essays Stevenson selected a quotation from Horace, **Virginibus Puerīsque**, *For Lads and Lasses.*

Translate the following mottoes:

1. Massachusetts: **Ēnse [1] petit placidam [2] sub lībertāte quiētem.[3]**
2. Virginia: **Sīc semper tyrannīs.[4]**
3. New York: **Excelsior.[5]**
4. North Carolina: **Esse quam vidērī.**
5. Arkansas: **Rēgnant [6] populī.**
6. District of Columbia: **Iūstitia omnibus.**
7. United States: **Ē plūribus ūnum.**

---

[1] **ēnsis**, *sword.* [2] **placidus**, *peaceful.* [3] **quiēs**, *rest.* [4] **tyrannus**, *tyrant.* [5] **excelsus**, *high.* [6] **rēgnō**, *rule.*

LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES IN COMMON USE

(Optional)

335. In addition to the large number of English words that have come from Latin, we have numerous Latin words and phrases in current use. These have really become a part of the English language, and are pronounced as English words. Among the most familiar are:

alias:	*at another time, otherwise*
alibi:	*presence elsewhere*
alter ego:	*another self*
ante bellum:	*before the war*
bona fide:	*in good faith*
casus belli:	*a cause of war*
Dei gratia:	*by the grace of God*
Deo volente (D.V.):	*God willing*
ex cathedra:	*from the seat of authority*
ex tempore:	*at the moment*
in toto:	*entirely*
ipse dixit:	*he himself said it*; a dogmatic assertion
ipso facto:	*by the fact itself*
lapsus linguae:	*a slip of the tongue*
modus operandi:	*method of working*
per se:	*by itself*
post mortem:	*after death*
prima facie:	*at first sight*
pro tempore:	*for the time being*
sine die:	*without a fixed date appointed*
terra firma:	*firm ground*
verbatim:	*word for word*
via:	*by way of*
vice versa:	*the terms being exchanged, conversely*
viva voce:	*with the living voice, orally*
vox populi:	*the voice of the people*

Exercise. — Use each of these Latin phrases in an English sentence.

Trāicit et fātī lītora magnus amor. (Propertius)
Great love o'erpasses e'en the coasts of fate

CHAPTER XLI

INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS

FIRST SECTION

336. Indirect Object with Certain Intransitive Verbs. — Certain verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. In Latin, therefore, these verbs cannot have a direct object. They may have an indirect object.

Their English meanings are: *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust* (and their contraries); also *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*. Memorize the whole list for future convenience.

The more common of these verbs are given in the following Vocabulary (**339**).

NOTE. — These Latin verbs are intransitive, because they really have not quite the same meaning as the English verbs used to translate them (which are transitive). A word in one language often represents a thought not fully covered by a word in another language; thus English *injure* is really somewhat different from **noceō**, which was felt by the Romans as *I-am-harmful (to)*. Likewise **placeō** was felt to be not quite like *I-please*, but rather as *I-am-pleasing* (*to*); **imperō** was felt as *I-give-an-order* (*to*), rather than as *I-command.*

The Accusative case of *neuter pronouns* and *neuter adjectives* (used as nouns) is often used with these verbs, thus: **Id imperat amīcus meus**, *My friend orders this.*

In the Passive voice these verbs are used *only impersonally*, and retain the Dative used with the Active, thus: **Lēgibus pārētur**, *The laws are obeyed* or *obedience is given to the laws* (lit. *it is obeyed to the laws*).

337. Rule. — Certain verbs which are transitive in English are *intransitive* in Latin, and the English object becomes in Latin a *Dative of the Indirect Object.* In the

Passive these verbs are used *only impersonally*, and the English subject is expressed in Latin by the *Dative*.

338. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Write in a column the English verbs given in **336**, and opposite each place its Latin equivalent if given in the following Vocabulary. 2. Write the principal parts of each Latin verb, marking long vowels and the accent. 3. Repeat the English verbs with their Latin equivalents from memory.

339. VOCABULARY XLI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
command, order	**ímperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**	
commander	**imperātor, -tōris,** *m.*	*emperor*
command, power	**impérium, impérī,** *n.*	*empire*
threaten	**mínor, -ārī, minātus sum**[1]	*mina*tory
envy	**invídeō, -ēre, invīdī, invīsum**	*invid*ious
injure	**nóceō, -ēre, nócuī, nocitūrus**	in*noc*ent
persuade	**persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum**	*persuas*ion, *persuas*ive
benefit	**bene fáciō, -ere, fēcī, fáctum**	*benefit*, *benefact*or
kindness	**benefícium, -ī,** *n.*	*benefic*ent
began	**coépī, coepísse, coéptus sum**[2]	
trust	**cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum**[3]	*confide*, *confid*ent
believe, intrust to	**crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus**	in*cred*ible, *credit*
pardon	**ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum**	*igno*ble
hate	**ōdī, ōdísse, —**[2]	*od*ious, *od*ium
spare	**párcō, -ere, pepércī, pársum**	*pars*imonious
obey	**pāreō, -ēre, -uī, paritūrus**	
resist	**resísto, -ere, réstitī, —**	*resist*ance
serve	**sérviō, -īre, -iī, servītum**	*serv*ice
not . . . even	**nē . . . quidem**	

[1] **minor,** *threaten*, is Passive in form, but Active in meaning. Since it *puts aside* most of the Active forms, it is called a *deponent* verb (cf. **dēpōnō,** *I place down, put aside*).

[2] **coepī** and **ōdī** lack the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. **ōdī,** however, has the meaning of a Present. Such verbs are called *defective*, because they *lack* certain tenses.

[3] Like **audeō** (174), **cōnfīdō** is semi-deponent: it has no Active

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

340. *A.* 1. Nē hostēs quidem ōdisse dēbēmus, nam etiam eīs sunt multae virtūtēs. 2. Quis potest hīs nautīs bene facere? Ego quidem eīs persuādēre cupīvī, sed verbīs meīs nōn satis ab eīs crēditum est. 3. Tibi ignōscō, sed numquam tibi cōnfīdam, nam et mihi et amīcīs meīs multum nocuistī. 4. Prīmum hī cīvēs imperiīs meīs resistere coepērunt, sed paulō post facillimē illīs ā mē persuāsum est. 5. Quid igitur vōbīs ā cōnsule imperātum est? Cūr id nōn facitis? Quī timor est vōbīs? Nōnne estis, mīlitēs, līberīs pessimīs simillimī?

B. 1. That king, who has been pardoned by Caesar, will now serve the Roman state with great diligence. 2. He began to envy this general, whose fame was very great. 3. The lieutenant to whom you gave your letter will have chosen a suitable place for the camp. 4. Not even a private citizen ought to receive favors from the enemy. 5. They believed, but did not pardon, the consul, for their chief had not been spared by him.

The Roman House

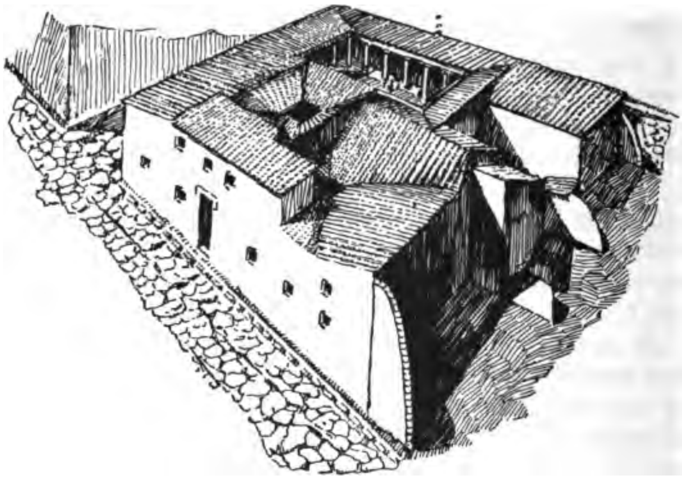
(Optional)

341. The Roman house usually consisted of two parts, each surrounding a central area toward which the roof sloped inwards. Through the **vestibulum** (*vestibule*) one entered the **ātrium**, a large court. In its center, beneath an opening to the sky, was a basin (**impluvium**) to catch the rain water. The **ātrium** was frequently used as a public reception room. At its rear was the **tablīnum**, or office of the master of the house.

---

forms in the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. The Passive forms have always, however, an *active meaning*, thus: *He trusted his friend*, **Amīcō cōnfīsus est.**

The second part of the house began behind the **tablinum** with the **peristȳlium**,[1] a Greek portico usually surrounding a garden;



The House of the Vettii, at Pompeii

about the **peristȳlium** were the rooms devoted to the home life of the family.[2]

Roman Wall Decorations

The Romans did not have wall paper, but decorated their plastered walls with fresco paintings. Favorite pictures were scenes from mythology, also landscapes, gardens, harbors, and fountains.[3]

---

[1] Like the *patio* of a Spanish home.

[2] Cf. Pellison, *Roman Life in Pliny's Time*, pp. 58–79; Johnston, *The Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 117–157.

[3] A room from a Roman villa near Pompeii may be seen in the Metropolitan Museum, New York, N. Y. A complete restoration of a Roman house is at Saratoga, N. Y. (the *Pompeia*). See also the Frontispiece and the illustrations on pages 66, 112, 186, 205, 224.

Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius)
"A friend in need is a friend indeed"

CHAPTER XLII

FIFTH DECLENSION

FIRST SECTION

342. Fifth Declension. — Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **-ēs**, and are feminine.[1] Only *two* words of this declension (**diēs**, m., *day*, and **rēs**, f., *thing*) are declined in full; **fidēs**, f., *good faith*, has only the singular; **spēs**, f., *hope*, has in the plural only the Nominative and Accusative. These nouns are declined as follows:

	díēs, m. f.,[1] *day* (Stem: **diē-**)	**rēs**, f., *thing* (Stem: **rē-**)	**fídēs**, f., *good faith* (Stem: **fidē-**)	**spēs**, f., *hope* (Stem: **spē-**)
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom.	**díēs**	**rēs**	**fídēs**	**spēs**
Gen.	**diēī**	**rĕ́ī**	**fídĕī**	**spĕ́ī**
Dat.	**diēī**	**rĕ́ī**	**fídĕī**	**spĕ́ī**
Acc.	**díem**	**rem**	**fídem**	**spem**
Abl.	**díē**	**rē**	**fídē**	**spē**
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	**díēs**	**rēs**	(lacking)	**spēs**
Gen.	**diērum**	**rērum**		—
Dat.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**		—
Acc.	**díēs**	**rēs**		**spēs**
Abl.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**		—

[1] Except **diēs**, m., *day*, and **merīdiēs**, m., *midd ιy* (from **media diēs**). And **diēs** is usually *feminine* when meaning an *appointed time*, or *time in general.*

Observe. — In the Genitive singular the final **-e** of the stem is *long* after a vowel, but *short* after a consonant. The Ablative singular ends in **-ē**.

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. With the book closed, write the declension of **prīma aciēs**, *the first battle line.*

343. VOCABULARY XLII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
ditch	**fóssa, -ae,** *f.*	
to dig a ditch	**fóssam perdúcere**	
hour	**hṓra, -ae,** *f.*	*hour*
rampart, palisade	**vā́llum, -ī,** *n.*	*wall*
earth wall, embankment	**ágger, ággeris,** *n.*	ex*agger*ate
marching column	**ágmen, ágminis,** *n.*	
rear guard	**novíssimum ágmen**	
line of battle	**áciēs, aciḗī,** *f.*	
plain	**plānítiēs, plānitiḗī,** *f.*	*plane*
hope, hope for	**spḗrō, -ā́re, -ā́vī, -ā́tus**	de*spair*
lose hope, despair	**dēspḗrō, -ā́re, -ā́vī, -ā́tus**	*desperate*
grain supplies	**rēs frūmentā́ria, rĕ́ī frūmentā́riae,** *f.*	
military affairs, art of war	**rēs mī́litā́ris, rĕ́ī mīlitā́ris,** *f.*	
commonwealth, government	**rēs pū́blica, rĕ́ī pū́blicae,** *f.*	*republic*
take one's place	**cōnsístō, -ere, cṓnstitī,** ——	*consist*
pile up, erect	**éxstruō, -ere, exstrū́xī, exstrū́ctus**	con*struct*
arrange	**ī́nstruō, -ere, īnstrū́xī, īnstrū́ctus**	*instruct*
to-day	**hṓdiē (hōc diē)** (*adv.*)	

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

344. *A.* 1. Hī Gallī sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī tribus ante annīs trādidērunt. 2. Equi-

tātus Gallicus plūrimum potest; quā rē nōn iam victōriam spērāmus. 3. Illō diē Caesar mīlitēs suōs iussit castra maiōra fossā et aggere mūnīre. 4. Ubi aciēs Rōmāna hāc in plānitiē īnstrūcta est, Gallī dē victōriā dēspērāre coepērunt. 5. Hōdiē novissimum agmen in hōc oppidō duās hōrās cōnsistet atque ibi rem frūmentāriam quam celerrimē comparābit.



"To the Loyalty and Valor of the Swiss"
(The Lion of Lucerne)

B. 1. Military affairs were not very pleasing to this consul, yet he always served the commonwealth with the greatest diligence and bravery. 2. Within three hours the Roman soldiers will have dug a ditch and erected a rampart. 3. On this day Cicero was envied by many orators. 4. For five hours we kept marching (**iter faciō**) through a broad plain. 5. The soldiers of the rear guard had lost all hopes of life; therefore they fought very bravely.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

(*Optional*)

345. HOW TO EXPRESS A DATE IN LATIN

1. Our names for the months are derived from the Roman names. These were: **Iānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis**, **Māius**, **Iūnius**, **Iūlius** (named for Julius Caesar), **Augustus** (named for Augustus Caesar), **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**. These words are properly adjectives in agreement

with **mēnsis**, m., *month*, understood. The number of days in the Roman months were the same as in our corresponding months.[1]

2. Dates were reckoned as *on* or *before* one of three points in the month:

a. The Kalends (**Kalendae, -ārum**, f.; cf. "calendar"), the *first* of each month.

b. The Nones (**Nōnae, -ārum**, f.), usually the *fifth* day of the month, but "in March, July, October, May, the Nones fall on the *seventh* day."



Calendarium
(Almanac on an altar)

c. The Ides (**Īdūs, -uum**, f.), usually the *thirteenth*, but "in March, July, October, May, the Ides fall on the *fifteenth* day."

3. Dates *on* the Kalends, Nones, and Ides were expressed by the *Ablative of Time When.* Dates between the Kalends and the Nones were reckoned as so many days *before* the Nones; dates between the Nones and the Ides as so many days *before* the Ides; dates after the Ides as so many days *before* the Kalends of the next month.

4. In thus reckoning backward *the day before* the Kalends, Nones, or Ides was designated as **prīdiē** (followed by Accusative) **Kalendās** (or **Nōnās**, or **Īdūs**). Other days were designated by their ordinal number *before* the nearest reckoning point. The Romans counted both ends of the series of days, and so, before the Nones and Ides, *one more* than we do; before the Kalends, *two more* than we do.

5. The name of the month is added as an adjective, of which there are two types (*i.e.* 1, **Iānuārius, -a, -um**; 2, **September, -bris, -bre**) agreeing with **Kalendās** (or **Nōnās**, or **Īdūs**).

[1] Our calendar, called the Julian Calendar, was instituted by Julius Caesar at the beginning of 45 B.C.

6. Examples:

a. Dates on Kalends, Nones, or Ides: 1. Jan. 1 (New Year's Day) = **Kalendīs Iānuāriīs** (which may be abbreviated to **Kal. Iān.**). 2. Jan. 5 = **Nōnīs Iānuāriīs (Nōn. Iān.)**. 3. Jan. 13 = **Īdibus Iānuāriīs** (**Īd. Iān.**).

b. Dates between Kalends and Nones: 1. Jan. 4 = **Prīdiē Nōnās Iānuāriās** (**Prīd. Nōn. Iān.**) 2. July 4. Since the July Nones fall on the *seventh*, July 4 is the *third* day before the Nones according to our reckoning and therefore the *fourth* according to the Roman. It was usually expressed by the idiom "Before the fourth day, the Nones of July," **ante diem quārtum Nōnās** (in apposition with **diem**) **Iūliās** (**a. d. IV Nōn. Iūl.**).

c. Dates between Nones and Ides: 1. Feb. 12 = **Prīdiē Īdūs Februāriās** (**Prīd. Īd. Feb.**). 2. Feb. 10. Since the February Ides fall on the *thirteenth*, Feb. 10 is "before the *fourth* day, the Ides of February," **ante diem quārtum Idūs Februāriās** (**a. d. IV Īd. Feb.**).

d. Dates between Ides and the Kalends of the following month: 1. Dec. 31 = **Prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās** (**Prīd. Kal. Iān.**). 2. Feb. 22 (Washington's Birthday) is (except in leap years) "before the *eighth* day, the Kalends of March," **ante diem octāvum Kalendās Mārtiās** (**a. d. VIII Kal. Mār.**).

346. Exercise. — Express according to the Roman Calendar:

Feb. 12 (Lincoln's Birthday); Mar. 4 (Inauguration Day); Mar. 15 (Death of Julius Caesar); Apr. 19 (Patriots' Day); May 30 (Decoration Day); Oct. 12 (Columbus Day); Nov. 6 (General Election Day); Dec. 25 (Christmas Day); your own birthday; some friend's birthday; the date at which you are writing.

Make a Roman calendar for the present month, and each day write the Roman date on the blackboard.

LATIN SELECTION

347. Midas of the Golden Touch

King Midas receives the gift of the Golden Touch.

Ōlim rēx Phrygiae, nōmine Midās, ā Bacchō dōnum ēgregium petiit, quod etiam Bacchus dedit. Itaque Midās potuit in aurum (*gold*) omnia mūtāre (*to change*) quae corpore suō tangēbat (*touched*); id enim optāverat (*had wished*). Laetus statim per rēgiam (*palace*) quam celerrimē currēbat et, cum prīmum mēnsās, pōcula et vāsa (*vases*) vidēbat, tangēbat omnia. Mox ubi nihil erat nisi aureum (*golden*), grātiās Bacchō ēgit.



A Roman Cup

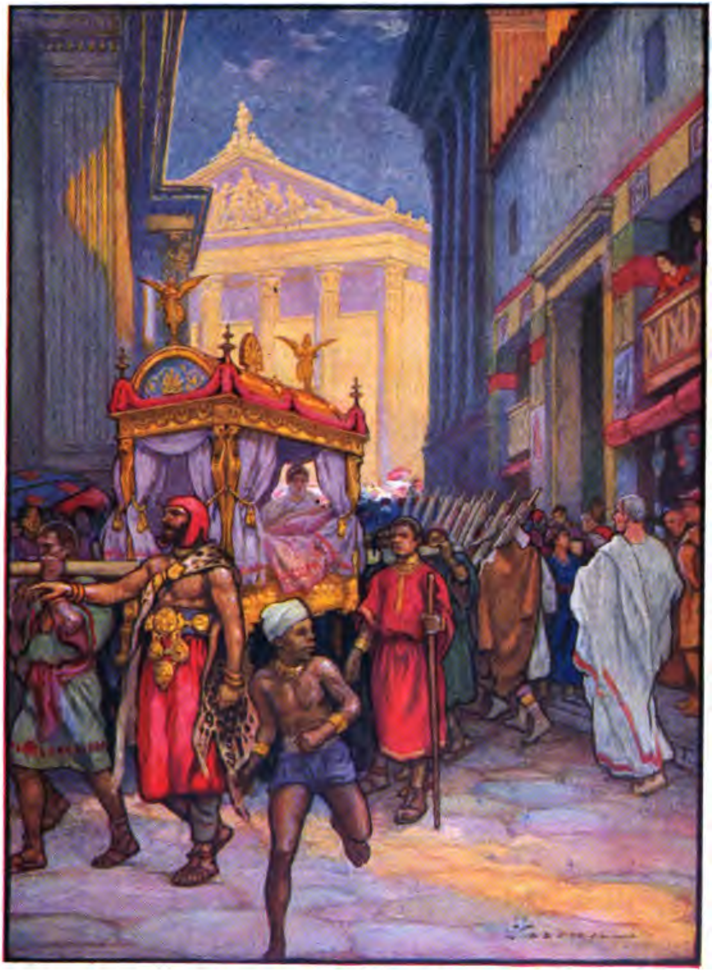
Even food and wine become gold.

Paulō post dum cibum (*food*) in ōre pōnit, is statim mūtātus est in aurum. Nec multō post vīnum (*wine*) prō rēge positum est, quod etiam in aurum solidum (*solid*) mūtātum est.

King Midas regrets his wish.

Tandem Midās, quī per paucōs diēs neque cibum sūmere (*to take*) neque aquam bibere (*to drink*) poterat, Bacchum implōrāvit. Deus rīsit et, postquam Midās in Pactōlō (*Pactolus*) flūmine sē lāvit, dōnum remōvit. Sed arēnae (*sands*) flūminis posteā aureae fuērunt.

Suggested Reading: Nathaniel Hawthorne, *Wonder Book*, "The Golden Touch."



A Street in Rome

Vita enim mortuōrum in memoriā est posita vīvōrum. (Cicero)
For the life of the dead rests upon the memory of the living

CHAPTER XLIII

PLACE AND DISTANCE · ROMAN NUMERALS (*Cont.*)

FIRST SECTION

348. Expressions of Place. — In Latin, as in English, prepositional phrases are regularly used to express (*a*) the *Place-from-which*, (*b*) the *Place-to-which*, and (*c*) the *Place-in-which*. Thus:

(*a*) PLACE-FROM-WHICH: 1. **Ex urbe vēnit,** *He came from the city.* 2. **Ā flūmine cōpiās abdūxit,** *He led the troops away-from the river.* 3. **Pāstor gregem dē monte dēdūxit,** *The shepherd led the flock down-from the mountain.*

(*b*) PLACE-TO-WHICH: 1. **Ad urbem vēnit,** *He came to the city.* 2. **Ad urbem discessit,** *He left for the city.* 3. **In urbem contendit,** *He hastened to (into) the city.*

(*c*) PLACE-IN-WHICH: **In oppidō magnō habitat,** *He lives in a large town.*

Observe. — 1. In (*a*) we see that *three* prepositions express the general relation "from," but differ in their exact meaning: *from*, if equivalent to *out-from*, is expressed by **ē, ex**; if equivalent to *away-from*, by **ā, ab**; if equivalent to *down-from*, by **dē**, with the Ablative. 2. In (*b*) we see that *to*, if equivalent to *into*, is expressed by **in**, with the Accusative.

NOTE. — With the names of cities and towns, also with **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *the country*, the *Place-from-which* is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition. Thus: **Rōmā vēnit,** *He came from Rome.*

Domō discessit, *He went away from home.* **Rūre revēnit**, *He came back from the country.* The *Place-to-which* is expressed by the Accusative without a preposition. Thus: **Rōmam vēnit**, *He came to Rome.* **Domum contendit**, *He hastened home.* **Rūs discessit**, *He went away to the country.* The *Place-in-which* is expressed by a special case, the Locative. See below.

349. The Locative Case.—In the singular of the First and Second Declensions the Locative has the same form as the Genitive; in the Third Declension, and in *all plurals*, the Locative has the same form as the Ablative. Thus: **Rōmae**, *in (at) Rome;* **Corinthī**, *in (at) Corinth;* **Carthāgine** (or **Carthāginī**), *in (at) Carthage;* **Trallibus**, *in (at) Tralles;* **domī**, *at home;* **rūre** (or **rūrī**), *in the country.*

350. Rules.—1. *Place-from-which* is expressed by **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, or **dē** with the Ablative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also with **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used. 2. *Place-to-which* is expressed by **ad** and **in** with the Accusative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also with **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used. 3. *Place-in-which* is expressed by **in** with the Ablative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also **domus** and **rūs**, the Locative case is used.

351. Exercise.—Express in Latin: 1. The farmer is leaving for the town. 2. The citizens are hastening from the fields. 3. He will lead the soldiers into the new camp. 4. That man lived many years in Rome, in Athens, in Corinth, and in Carthage. 5. Is your father at home? No. He is in the country. 6. In what city does your friend live?



A Roman Wall Painting from Pompeii

352. Expressions of Distance. — In the English sentence (1) *He walked two miles*, the word *miles* is used adverbially (an "adverbial *Objective* case") and expresses the *extent of space*. Also in (2) *He was six feet tall*, the word *feet* is an adverbial *Objective* and expresses the *extent of space* (*height*).

Corresponding to the English *Objective* we have in Latin the *Accusative*: (1) **Ambulāvit duo passuum mīlia**, *He walked two miles* (lit. *two thousands of paces*); (2) **Fuit sex altus pedēs**, *He was six feet tall* (lit. *he was tall for* [a height of] *six feet*).

353. Rule. — The Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative.

NOTE. — Distance *from* (*away-from*) a place, if considered as the Extent of Space, is expressed (as above) by the *Accusative* case, thus: *He was three miles away-from Rome*, **Rōmā tria passuum mīlia aberat.** But distance *from* (*away-from*) a place, if thought of as the Degree of Difference (**291**), is expressed by the *Ablative* case, thus: **Rōmā tribus passuum mīlibus aberat** (lit. *He was away-from Rome by* [the difference of] *three miles*).

354. VOCABULARY XLIII

ENGLISH MEANINGS	LATIN WORDS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
space, time, distance	**spátium, -ī,** *m.*	*spacious*
cohort	**cóhors, cohórtis,** *f.*	*cohort*
pace (about five feet)	**pássus, pássūs,** *m.*	*pace, pass*
remain, hold out	**permáneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsū́rus**	*permanent*
stay behind, remain	**remáneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsū́rus**	*remain*
halt, encamp	**cōnsī́dō, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnséssum**	
one thousand	**mī́lle, mī́lle,**[1] *n.*	*mile, million*

[1] **mīlle**, *thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective; but in the plural (*thousands*) it is a noun; **mīlia** (or **mīllia**), **-ium**, *n.*

SECOND SECTION

355. The Cardinal Numerals (21–1000)

XXI	twenty-one **vīgíntī ūnus**[1]	LXX	seventy **septuāgintā**
XXII	twenty-two **vīgíntī dúo**[1]	LXXX	eighty **octōgintā**
XXIII	twenty-three **vīgíntī trēs**[1]	XC[2]	ninety **nōnāgintā**
XXIV[2]	twenty-four **vīgíntī quáttuor**	C	one hundred **céntum**
XXV	twenty-five **vīgíntī quīnque**	CC	two hundred **ducéntī, -ae, -a**
XXVI	twenty-six **vīgíntī sex**	CCC	three hundred **trecéntī, -ae, -a**
XXVII	twenty-seven **vīgíntī séptem**	CCCC	four hundred **quadringéntī, -ae, -a**
XXVIII	twenty-eight **duodētrīgíntā**	D	five hundred **quīngéntī, -ae, -a**
XXIX[2]	twenty-nine **ūndētrīgíntā**	DC	six hundred **sescéntī, -ae, -a**
XXX	thirty **trīgíntā**	DCC	seven hundred **septingéntī, -ae, -a**
XL	forty **quadrāgíntā**	DCCC	eight hundred **octingéntī, -ae, -a**
L	fifty **quīnquāgíntā**	DCCCC	nine hundred **nōngéntī, -ae, -a**
LX	sixty **sexāgíntā**	M	thousand **mīlle**

[1] For declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs**, see page 321.

[2] In inscriptions the method of notation by adding was commoner than the method by subtracting; so XXIIII, XXVIIII, and LXXXX are usual; XXIV, XXIX, and XC rare.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

356. *A.* 1. Quīngentī quīnquāgintā equitēs dē montibus ad plānitiem dēscendērunt; deinde illud parvum oppidum ācriter oppugnāre coepērunt. 2. Nē trīgintā quidem diēbus Athēnās perveniēmus. 3. Haec castra quattuor mīlibus passuum ā flūmine aberant; hīc quadrāgintā diēs remānsimus. 4. Ā Gallīs cohortēs Rōmānae spatiō duōrum mīlium passuum cōnsēderant. 5. Viā longiōre (*Abl. of Means*) nōs quidem Rōmam accessimus; sex diēs autem rūrī cōnsēdimus.

B. 1. Caesar carried on war in Gaul (for) four years. 2. We shall remain fifty-seven days in Rome. 3. Thirty-three horsemen have halted two miles from our city near a very high mountain. 4. My father often comes from Rome to the country. 5. This small town has not even six hundred inhabitants; of these two hundred are men, three hundred are women, and the rest are children.

LATIN SELECTION

357. A ROMAN MOTHER

Cornelia awaits her son Tiberius Gracchus, the tribune.

Exspectābat Cornēlia, māter Gracchōrum, domī fīlium Tiberium, quī tribūnus plēbis (*a Tribune of the People*) iam creātus erat, et ā populō amābātur, quod pauperibus (*the poor*) agrōs distribuere cupiēbat. "Mox (*soon*) certē," inquit Cornēlia amīcīs servīsque, "domum reveniet."

An ominous silence.

Mox sonum pedum in viā audīvērunt.

"Iam iam adest, domina," inquit ancilla (*maid*).

"Cūr nōn audīmus clāmōrēs populī et vōcēs laetās amīcōrum?" respondit Cornēlia.

Friends bear in the body of Tiberius.

Nunc in cōnspectum Cornēliae veniunt, et silentēs (*silent*) accēdunt. Corpus enim Tiberī domum portant — occīsus erat tribūnus plēbis ab inimīcīs.



The Gracchi

All show their grief.

Amīcī ac servī cum multīs lacrimīs strepitum faciunt (*raise an outcry*). Māter prīmum dīcere nōn poterat.

A Roman mother's pride in her son's noble death.

"Nihil est trīste (*sad*)," inquit tandem Cornēlia, "sī Rōmānum sē fortem ostendit. Multās hōrās meum fortem fīlium exspectō. Nunc eum etiam mortuum laeta tamen accipiam. Hodiē tē maximē et amō et laudō. Nunc enim ego sum omnium mātrōnārum beātissima (*happiest*). Pater meus Hannibalem superāvit; vir meus glōriam (*renown*) sibi ex Hispāniā reportāvit. Fīliōs duōs reī pūblicae dedī. Tiberius hīc iacet — prō patriā est mortuus; Gāius vīvit — labōrābit et ille prō patriā. Vōbīs, amīcī, grātiās agō, quī hoc corpus Tiberī meī ad mē portāvistis. Nunc ad templum mēcum venīte (*come*): dīs immortālibus grātiās agere dēbēmus. Mātrōnam ad templum deōrum dūcitis beātissimam — Scīpiōnis fīliam, Gracchī uxōrem, mātrem Gracchōrum!"

Dum anima est, spēs est. (Cicero) — *While there's life, there's hope*

CHAPTER XLIV

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE · GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE · GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES · GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

FIRST SECTION

358. Subjective Genitive. — In the expression, *the arrival of the enemy*, **adventus hostium**, the noun *arrival* (**adventus**) expresses action; *of-the-enemy* serves to show the *doer of the action.* If in place of the noun we were to have a *verb*, the doer of the action would be indicated by the *subject*, thus: **Hostēs adveniunt,** *The enemy arrive.* Hence the Genitive is called a *Subjective Genitive.*[1]

359. Objective Genitive. — In the expression, *our fear of the peril*, **timor noster perīculī,** *of-the-peril* serves to show the object toward which the *fear* is directed. If in place of *our fear* (*of*) we write *we fear* (**timēmus**), *the peril* becomes the object: **perīculum timēmus.** Hence the Genitive is an *Objective Genitive.*[2]

---

[1] The "Subjective Genitive" is used chiefly with abstract nouns (*i.e.* nouns which refer not to material objects, but to things *removed from* the senses. Abstract nouns express *action*, as **adventus,** *arrival;* **timor,** *fear;* or *qualities*, as **virtūs,** *courage;* **misericordia,** *pity*, etc.

[2] The "Objective Genitive" is used chiefly with abstract nouns. Whether a particular Genitive is Subjective or Objective may usually be determined by the sense, thus, **odium hostium,** *the hatred of the enemy*, might mean either *the hatred felt by the enemy* (Subjective Genitive), or *the hatred felt toward the enemy* (Objective Genitive).

360. Genitive of the Whole. — In the sentence, *A large part of the city was burned*, **Magna pars urbis incēnsa est**, *of-the-city* limits the noun *part* and indicates the *whole* to which the part belongs. Hence the Genitive is called the *Genitive of the Whole.*

NOTE. — With most words the whole to which the part belongs may also be expressed by **ē**, **ex**, or **dē** with the Ablative, thus: **multī amīcōrum meōrum**, or **multī ex (dē) amīcīs meīs**, *many of my friends*, or *many out of (from) my friends.*

361. Genitive with Certain Adjectives. — In English with certain adjectives expressing *desire*, *knowledge*, *fullness*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites, the relation of the adjective to the noun[1] is expressed by *of*, sometimes by *for*, or *in*. This relation is indicated in Latin by the *Genitive*, thus: *Many are desirous of peace*, **Multī avidī pācis sunt.**



The Castle of St. Angelo
(Mausoleum of the Roman Emperor Hadrian, 117–138 A.D.)

362. Rule. — In Latin a noun in the Genitive may be used to limit or define the meaning of another noun. The Genitive may be a *Possessive Genitive*, a *Subjective Genitive*, an *Objective Genitive*, or a *Genitive of the Whole* ("Partitive Genitive"),

[1] The noun is the object of a verbal idea contained in the adjective; consequently this Genitive is Objective.

according to the relation it bears to the noun it limits. Also a noun in the Genitive may be used to limit or define certain adjectives expressing *desire*, *knowledge*, *fullness*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites.

363. Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description. — In the English sentence, (1) *Cicero was a man of loyalty*, the prepositional phrase *of-loyalty* is equivalent to the adjective *loyal* and describes the noun *man*. This sentence becomes in Latin: **Cicerō vir fīdus fuit**; *of-loyalty* is translated by an adjective. Similarly if we say, (2) *Cicero was a man of great loyalty*, the phrase *of-great-loyalty* may be translated by **fīdissimus**; but we may also say: **Cicerō vir magnae fideī** (or **magnā fidē**) **fuit.** The noun with its adjective forms an adjective phrase describing **vir.**

NOTE. — The phrase, if it expresses mental (internal) character, may be in *either* the Genitive or Ablative. Physical (external) character is usually expressed only by the *Ablative*, thus: **puer magnō capite**, *a boy with a large head.* In certain special phrases expressing measure, *only* the Genitive is used, thus: **fossa octō pedum** (lit. *a trench of eight feet*), *an eight-foot trench;* and **iter paucōrum diērum**, *a journey of a few days*, or *a few days' journey.*

364. Rule. — In Latin a noun accompanied by an adjective may be used as an adjective phrase to describe a noun. The phrase may be in either the Genitive *or* the Ablative, but the *Ablative* is generally used to express *physical characteristics*, and the *Genitive* is used to express *measure.* If in the English sentence no adjective is used with the noun in the phrase, the phrase must be expressed in Latin by an *adjective* alone.

365. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. A wall of great height. 2. A bright-eyed girl, *lit.* a girl with bright (**clārus, -a, -um**) eyes (**oculus, -ī,** *m.*). 3. Citizens of good character.

4. A journey of ten days. 5. A man of bravery 6. The soldiers' fear of danger. 7. The attack of the enemy. 8. The help of our allies. 9. He is a soldier of great courage. 10. Our praise (**laus**) of our allies. 11. Many of the citizens are more desirous of money than of reputation.

SECOND SECTION

366. VOCABULARY XLIV

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
hatred	**ódium, ódī,** *n.*	*odium, odi*ous
love	**ámor, amṓris,** *m.*	
patriotism	**ámor pátriae**	
bring about	**effíciō, -ere, effḗcī, efféctus**	*effect, efficient*
kill	**interfíciō, -ere,** *etc.*	
accomplish	**perfíciō, -ere,** *etc.*	*perfect, perfect*ion
fond of, loving	**ámāns,** *m., f., n., Gen.* **amántis**	
patriotic	**ámāns pátriae**	
eager for	**áppetēns,** *m., f., n., Gen.* **appeténtis**	*appet*ite
covetous, greedy	**ávidus, -a, -um**	*avid*ity
the other, rest of	**cḗterī, -ae, -a**	*etc.* (*et cetera*)
desirous, eager	**cúpidus, -a, -um**	Cf. **cupiō, 233**
desire, greed	**cupíditās, -tā́tis,** *f.*	*cupidity*
skilled, experienced	**perī́tus, -a, -um**	
unskilled, inexperienced	**imperī́tus, -a, -um**	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

367. *A.* 1. Amor huius patris, imperātōris ēgregiā fāmā, multum nocēbat fīliō, quī erat puer minimae prūdentiae. 2. Multī ex rēgis amīcīs, quōrum cupiditās potestātis erat maxima, illōs annōs eī dīligenter serviēbant. 3. Hic cīvis patriae amantissimus, quī lībertātis cupidus erat, ob odium suum rēgis inīquī interfectus est. 4. Amīcus tuus satis perītus est reī mīlitāris. 5. Tū, quī vir es magnae dīligentiae

atque appetēns labōris, facile poteris perficere omnia quae ā tē rēs pūblica petierit.

B. 1. Among the Romans patriotism was held (**habeō**) (as) a very great virtue. 2. Part of my friends are here in Rome, all the rest always remain in the country. 3. Those who are rather greedy for office often envy the magistrates. 4. That consul, a man of great virtue, will boldly bring about what the people demand. 5. On that day all things which the covetous Midas touched, even the food and wine, suddenly were of gold (**aureus, -a, -um**).



The Emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A. D.) Sparing the Captives

---

LATIN SELECTION

368. The Trumpeter is Put to Death

Tubicen (*trumpeter*), ab hostibus captus, dīxit; "Vōs mē interficere nōn dēbētis, nam arma nōn habeō praeter (*except*) hanc tubam" (*trumpet*). Sed hostēs respondērunt: "Propter hanc ipsam tubam tē interficiēmus: tū ipse imperītus es quidem tēlōrum, sed cēterōs ad proelium incitās."

Nōn malōs modō, sed etiam eōs quī ad malum dūcunt pūnīrī (*to be punished*) oportet.

Dominus illūminātiō mea — *The Lord is my light*

CHAPTER XLV (Review)

369. Vocabularies and Syntax. — (*a*) Review carefully Vocabularies XLI–XLIV. (*b*) Practice, for accuracy and speed, on **diēs, rēs, fidēs.** Review the Rules of Syntax, I–XLIV, pages 338–341.

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters XLI–XLIV

370. *A.* 1. Hōc in oppidō Caesar septem diēs remānsit; octāvō diē exercitum ex oppidō ēdūxit.

2. Gallī duōbus ante diēbus cōnsēderant ad silvam quae ab illō oppidō nōn magnō spatiō aberat; ibi fossam septem pedēs altitūdine perdūcēbant atque vāllum octō pedum exstruēbant.

3. Dux hōrum barbarōrum, vir maximae virtūtis atque amantissimus patriae suae, et populum Rōmānum ōderat et Caesarī invidēbat; quārē cupiēbat nōn modo huic exercituī Rōmānō multum nocēre sed etiam imperātōrem ipsum interficere.

4. Huic autem ducī multum cōnfīdēbātur ā cēterīs prīncipibus Gallōrum; hī igitur quī reī mīlitāris imperītiōrēs erant, eō tempore magnam victōriam spērābant.

5. Ubi Caesaris exercitus iam sex mīlia passuum prōcessit, Fabius, lēgātus ēgregiā fāmā, quī novissimum agmen cum prūdentiā dūcēbat, subitō circiter quadrāgintā equitēs Gallōs ā sinistrā manū cōnspexit.

B. (*Optional*). 6. Fabius tamen pugnāre nōn cupiēbat, equitātū enim Gallī Rōmānōs magnopere superābant; praetereā (*besides*) hic locus proeliō nōn erat idōneus; quā rē summā celeritāte ad cēterās exercitūs Rōmānī partēs contendit.

7. Tandem quattuor hōrīs Rōmānī longā viā ad Gallōrum castra pervēnērunt; ibi Caesar aciem suam magnā in plānitiē īnstrūxit.

8. Ubi Rōmānī duās hōrās hāc in plānitiē cōnstitērunt neque tum quidem barbarī ex castrīs vēnērunt, Fabius, cui Caesar multum cōnfīdēbat, iussus est impetum in portās castrōrum māximā vī facere.

9. Deinde maiōrem huius diēī partem Gallī fortiter restitērunt, sed Rōmānī erant etiam multō eīs audāciōrēs; itaque tandem Gallī victī sunt atque sē in silvās recēpērunt.

10. Posterō (*next*) diē Gallī sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt, quī plūrimōs ex prīncipibus in fidem populī Rōmānī accēpit.

11. Paulō post Fabius Rōmam vēnit. Hīc invēnit frātrēs et sorōrēs; pater autem et māter rūrī permanēbant.

371. Derivation Exercise, Type III.— With the help of a dictionary, find *ten* English words related to **faciō**. Insert these, with illustrative sentences, in the notebook. Bear in mind that after a prefix the verb root **fac** weakens to **-fic**, and the perfect passive participle **factus** becomes **-fectus**.

THE CLASSICAL INFLUENCE UPON ADVERTISING

(Optional)

372. In advertising, Latin (and Greek) names, chosen to emphasize the special merit claimed, are often used. These names create interest and suggest that the article is truly standard in quality. Thus, the "Hercules Stump Puller" is so named since Hercules in ancient legend was a divine being who performed beneficial labors for mankind; and the "Vulcan Toaster" appropriately gets its title from the god of Fire.

Advertisements are often made attractive by decorative designs from Greek and Roman art, or by pictures concerned with classical subjects.

It will be easy to find on the covers of magazines, in advertisements, posters, and other means of publicity, such examples of the influence of Greek and Roman civilization.

Exercise. — Look for examples of classical influence upon advertising, and make a collection of them for your notebook.

Finis corōnat opus — *The end crowns the work*

CHAPTER XLVI

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES WITH INDICATIVE

FIRST SECTION

373. Preliminary Review. — Review the Latin sentences of **370** for oral and written work at the beginning of the recitation.

374. Conditional Sentences. — In the English sentence, *If he obeys the laws* (A), *he is a good citizen* (B), the *subordinate* clause (A) indicates the *condition* under which the *principal* clause (B) becomes true. The sentence is called a *Conditional sentence.* The subordinate clause, introduced by the conjunction *if*, is called a *Conditional clause* or the *Condition.*



A Vase Painting
(Ship and Dolphins)

375. Simple (or Neutral) Conditions. — A conditional clause in which the speaker or writer presupposes a *fact*, without implying whether the condition is fulfilled or not fulfilled, is called a *Simple* (or *Neutral*) *Condition.* Simple Conditions have the Indicative, and are called *Present*, *Past*, and *Future* according to the time referred to.

The Latin conditional conjunctions are **sī**, *if;* **nisi**, *if . . . not, unless;* **sīn**, *but if* (following an affirmative Condition).

Examples of Simple (or Neutral) Conditions

1. Present:

Sī amīcus tuus Rōmae est, Forum saepe videt.

If your friend is in Rome, he often sees the Forum.

2. Past:

Sī Rōmae erat (or **fuit**), **multa aedificia pulchra vīdit** (or **vidēbat**).

If he was in Rome, he saw many beautiful buildings.

3. Future:[1]

Sī Rōmam veniet, Forum vidēbit.

If he comes (or *shall come*[2]) *to Rome, he will see the Forum.*

376. VOCABULARY XLVI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
blame, fault	**cúlpa, -ae,** *f.*	*culp*rit
tongue, language	**língua, -ae,** *f.*	*lingu*al
condition, terms	**condíciō, -ōnis,** *f.*	*condition*al
tribe, people	**gēns, géntis,** *f.*	*gent*leman
praise	**laus, laúdis,** *f.*	*laud*able
finish, exhaust	**cōnfíciō, -ere, -fēcī, -féctus**	*confect*ionery
close, confine	**claúdō, -ere, claúsī, claúsus**	*clois*ter
shut out	**exclū́dō, -ere, -clū́sī, -clū́sus**	*exclus*ive
shut off, stop	**interclū́dō, -ere, -clū́sī, -clū́sus**	
throw down	**dēíciō,**[3] **-ere, dēiēcī, dēiéctus**[4]	*deject*ed
throw out	**ēíciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiéctus**	*eject*
desist from, cease	**dēsístō, -ere, dēstitī,** —	*desist*
divide	**dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus**	*divid*end
doubtful	**dúbius, -a, -um**	*dubious*
doubt, hesitate	**dúbitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	in*dubit*ably
powerful	**pótēns,** *Gen.* **poténtis**	*potent*

[1] A "Future More Vivid Condition," because the auxiliaries *shall* and *will* express futurity more vividly than *should* and *would.*

[2] The Future tense is used in Latin, since the Condition refers to future time.

[3] Pronounced **dē-iíciō.** Similarly **ēíciō** is pronounced **ē-iíciō.**

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

377. *A.* 1. Ubi hostēs ex hōc oppidō ēiectī erunt, dēsistent exercitum nostrum ā rē frūmentāriā exclūdere. 2. Hic cīvis potentissimus, vir minimae virtūtis, semper plūs laudis sibi quaerit. 3. Inīquae sunt pācis condiciōnes quās dux hostium nōbīs dat. Agrōs nostrōs captōs retinēbit et dīvidet. 4. Tum cōnsul, omnī spē dēiectus, complūrēs hōrās dubitābat equitēs Gallōrum ab reliquō exercitū interclūdere. Quī (*and these*) igitur celerrimē fugā salūtem petere coepērunt. Quā rē (*and consequently*) cōnsul miserrimus in magnā erat culpā. 5. Nōn dubiam victōriam spērāmus, equitātū enim hostēs magnopere superāmus.

B. 1. The oldest chief of that tribe, who a few days before had been freed from rather serious (**gravior**) blame, now sought the friendship of the Roman people. 2. He left (**discēdō**) home for-the-country; she, however, came from-the-country to-Rome. 3. The soldiers of this cohort were cut off from supplies, yet they were not without hope. 4. The lieutenant, whom the Gauls had shut up in this town, suddenly cast himself down from the wall. 5. The language of the Gauls was very unlike the language of the Romans.

378. Derivation Exercise, Type I.—Find for the notebook *four* English words in which the verb root of **claudō (claud, -clūd)** appears. Select words with different prefixes.



From a Roman Lamp
(Hercules Overcoming the Lion)

Mortālem vītam mors cum immortālis adēmit. (Lucretius)
When immortal death has taken away the mortal life

CHAPTER XLVII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

FIRST SECTION

379. Preliminary Review. — Review the Translation Exercises of **377** for oral and written work.

380. The Moods in English. — By *mood* or *mode* (from **modus**, *manner*) is meant the *manner* in which the action (or state) is expressed by the verb. There are four Finite[1] moods in English: the *Indicative*, which expresses the action as a *fact;* the *Subjunctive*, which expresses the action as an *idea;* the *Potential*, which expresses the action as a *possibility;* the *Imperative*, which expresses the action as a *command.*[2]

381. The Latin Subjunctive. — The Latin Subjunctive has *four* tenses: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect. The Subjunctive (Active) tenses of **vocō** are formed as follows: Present, **voce** (the Present stem **vocā**, with **a**

[1] "Finite" is from **fīnītus** (**fīniō**), "bounded," "limited." The Finite Moods are those "limited" by person and number. The Infinitive (sometimes called a Mood) is from **īnfīnītus**; that is, the Infinitive forms express the verbal idea in a general, "unlimited" way.

[2] The names of the moods are from the Latin: *Indicative* (**indicō**, *I declare*), used to *declare* or assert something as a *fact; Subjunctive* (**subiungō**, *I subjoin*), used chiefly in subordinate clauses (*i.e.* clauses *subjoined* or *attached* to a part of a complex sentence); *Potential* (**potēns**, *able*), used to express something as *possible; Imperative* (**imperō**, *I command*), used chiefly to express a *command.*

changed to **e**) + **m** (personal ending), **vócem**, *I may call;*[1] Imperfect, **vocā** (Present stem) + **rem**, **vocārem**, *I might call;* Perfect, **vocāv** (Perfect stem) + **erim**, **vocāverim**, *I may have called;* Pluperfect, **vocāv** (Perfect stem) + **issem**, **vocāvíssem**, *I might have called.*

In the Passive the Present and Imperfect tenses have the Passive personal endings, thus: **vócer**, *I may be called;* **vocārer**, *I might be called;* the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses are formed by means of the Perfect Passive Participle, with **sim** for the Perfect, **vocātus sim**, *I may have been called;* with **éssem** for the Pluperfect, **vocātus éssem**, *I might have been called.* The four tenses of the Subjunctive (Active and Passive) of **vocō** are conjugated on p. 326.

382. Subjunctive of *Sum*. — The four Subjunctive tenses of **sum** are: Present, **sim**, *I may be;* Imperfect, **éssem**, *I might be;* Perfect, **fúerim**, *I may have been;* Pluperfect, **fuíssem**, *I might have been.* These tenses are conjugated on page 335.

383. A Clause of Purpose in English. — In the English sentence, (1) *He comes to praise the soldiers*, the Infinitive gives the *purpose* of the action. We may also express the same idea by (2) *He comes that* (or *in order that*) *he may praise the soldiers.*[2] In English we usually express purpose by an Infinitive, as in (1). In (2) *that* (or *in order that*) *he may praise the soldiers* is a subordinate clause of purpose, introduced by the conjunction *that* (or *in order that*); and the auxiliary verb *may* (Past tense *might*) is used to form a "Potential verb phrase" (*i.e.* a phrase expressing possibility). If we change the main verb to a Past tense, we must use the *Past* tense of the

[1] The Latin Subjunctive has various meanings; in this Chapter it is treated, for convenience, as equivalent to the English *Potential.*

[2] Or *for the purpose of praising the soldiers.*

auxiliary verb in the clause of purpose, thus: (3) *He came that* (or *in order that*) *he might praise the soldiers.* Here we have a past purpose, and the *Past* tense of the auxiliary.

384. A Clause of Purpose in Latin. — In Latin we express purpose, as in (2) and (3), by a subordinate clause with the Subjunctive, thus: Present, **Vĕnit, ut mīlitēs laudet,** *He comes that he may praise the soldiers;* Past, **Vēnit, ut mīlitēs laudāret,** *He came that he might praise the soldiers.* In Latin, as in English, when the main verb is changed to a Past tense, the verb in the clause of purpose is also changed to a Past tense. We might say that when the tense is "moved back a notch" in the main clause, the tense is "moved back a notch" in the clause of purpose.

NOTE. — The Romans felt a clause of purpose not as a *fact*, but as an *idea*, that is, an action *willed* or *intended.* The Present Subjunctive is used to express an action as willed or intended *from-the-present;* and the Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express an action as willed or intended *from-the-past.*

After a Present, a Future, a "Present Perfect," or a Future Perfect tense in the main clause, use a Present Subjunctive in the clause of purpose; after a Past tense (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect), use an Imperfect Subjunctive in the clause of purpose. (See pp. 343–344.)

385. For practice, the **ut**-clause of purpose should be inflected rapidly as follows:

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
	Singular	*Singular*
1.	**ut laudem,** *that I may praise*	**ut laudārem,** *that I might praise*
2.	**ut laudēs,** *that you may praise*	**ut laudārēs,** *that you might praise*
3.	**ut laudet,** *that he may praise*	**ut laudāret,** *that he might praise*
	Plural	*Plural*
1.	**ut laudēmus,** *that we may praise*	**ut laudārēmus,** *that we might praise*
2.	**ut laudētis,** *that you may praise*	**ut laudārētis,** *that you might praise*
3.	**ut laudent,** *that they may praise*	**ut laudārent,** *that they might praise*

386. A Negative Clause of Purpose. — The English sentence, *They are defending liberty*, *that they may not be slaves*, becomes in Latin: **Lībertātem dēfendunt, nē servī sint.** Here we see that the clause of purpose is *negative* and is expressed by **nē**, *that . . . not*, with the Subjunctive. This sentence in *Past* time becomes: *They were defending liberty*, *that they might not be slaves*, **Lībertātem dēfendēbant, nē servī essent.**

387. Rule. — Purpose is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** (*that, in order that*) or **nē** (*that . . . not, in order that . . . not*). In Latin the Infinitive should *not* be used to express purpose.

388. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. I hastened into the field to ask my father. 2. I came back as quickly as possible in order not to be late. 3. The citizens are assembling (**conveniunt**) to praise the leader of the soldiers. 4. He fought bravely that the citizens might be free. 5. He was banished (**ēiciō**), that he might not harm (**noceō**) the state. 6. We shall remain at home in order to read the new book.

SECOND SECTION

389. VOCABULARY XLVII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
trader	**mercātor, -tōris,** *m.*	*merc*hant
blood	**sánguis, sánguinis,** *m.*	*sanguinary*
arouse, excite	**cóncitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	See **excitō, 223**
go, yield	**cēdō, -ere, céssī, cessūrus**	*cede, secede*
put around, surround	**circúmdō, -āre, -dedī, -dătus**	
come around, surround	**circumvéniō, -īre, -vēnī, -véntus**	*circumvent*
fail, revolt, rebel	**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -féctus**	*deficient, defect*
satisfy	**satis fáciō, -ere, fēcī, fáctum**	*satisfaction*

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
put down, put aside	**dēpōnō, -ere, -pósuī, -pósitus**	*depose, deposit*
set forth, explain	**expōnō, -ere,** *etc.*	*exponent, expose*
put on, impose	**impōnō, -ere,** *etc.*	*impost*or
put against, oppose	**oppōnō, -ere,** *etc.*	*opposite*
put before, propose	**prōpōnō, -ere,** *etc.*	*proposit*ion
near	**prope** [1] (*adv. and prep. w. Acc.*)	
near, a relative	**propínquus, -a, -um**	*propinqu*ity

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

390. *A.* 1. Illī Gallī arma sua dēposuērunt; eīs (*Dative*) igitur Caesar servitūtem nōn imposuit. Vōbīs, Ō cīvēs Rōmānī, haec verba dīxī, ut Caesar ā vōbīs omnibus putārētur imperātor benignissimus. 2. Hic mercātor cōnfectus est multīs vulneribus; et sanguis et vīrēs eum iam dēficiunt. 3. Propinquī meī maximum praemium iūdicibus prōpōnent nē iūstam poenam dent. 4. Barbarī, quī odiō lēgātī Rōmānī magnopere concitātī erant, silvam ad quam is sē recēperat celeriter circumvēnērunt. 5. Cīvitās quae lībertātis lūce caret numquam potest lēgēs habēre quam optimās.



A Roman Mosaic
(Doves and Bowl)

B. 1. All the Roman merchants were now going out of Gaul, for winter was approaching. 2. Caesar imposed rather heavy labor upon the fourth and seventh legions (*Dative*), in order that within three hours he might surround the smaller camp with a wall and a ditch. 3. This matter, soldiers, I will explain to you in a few words, in order that you may not

[1] From **prope** were formed the adjectives: **propior, -ius,** *nearer;* **proximus, -a, -um,** *nearest.* Cf. "ap*proxim*ate," "*proxim*ity."

be excited without cause. 4. The leader of the Gauls opposed his cavalry to the right wing (*Dative*) of the Romans, which had taken its place near the river. 5. To free the inhabitants of this town from fear of the enemy, Caesar decided to seize the neighboring mountain.

391. Derivation Exercise, Type I.—From **cēdō** we have over one hundred related English words. Select *five* for the notebook.

The Romans as Builders, Artisans, and Artists

(*Optional*)

392. The Romans built very grandly. The domes of their magnificent temples, the stately arches of their bridges and aqueducts, serve as models to the modern world. Cathedrals, churches, monumental arches, courthouses, railroad terminals, and private dwellings,—all alike echo the Roman architecture.

The greatest contribution of the Romans to scientific building methods was their effective use of cement. Many of their cement constructions have lasted in first-rate condition to the present day.

Among the articles in the manufacture of which the Roman artisans were experts was pottery, which they used more than we because they were not equally skillful in producing utensils of metal. Their pottery was often molded into beautiful shapes, and was painted by way of decoration.

Sometimes the Roman artists worked in glass and made beautiful vases. They were also remarkable as goldsmiths and silversmiths, as gem cutters and makers of mosaics.

In these lesser arts, as in the nobler fields of painting and sculpture, the Romans were the pupils of the Greeks. We must never forget how completely the influence of Greece penetrated the civilization of Rome.

LATIN SELECTION

393. ### Joseph, Son of Jacob[1]

The plot of Joseph's jealous brothers.

Frātrēs Iosēph cōnspēxērunt mercātōrēs, quī petēbant Aegyptum cum camēlīs (*camels*) quae portābant varia arōmata (*spices*). Cōnstituērunt frātrēs Iosēph vēndere (*to sell*) eīs mercātōribus, id quod etiam fēcērunt.

Jacob mourns his son as dead.

Tunc frātrēs Iosēph tinxērunt vestem (*coat*) eius in sanguine haedī quem occīderant, et eam mīsērunt ad patrem cum hīs verbīs, "Invēnimus hanc vestem. Estne fīlī tuī?" Quam ubi vīdit pater, exclāmāvit, "Vestis est fīlī meī; fera pessima dēvōrāvit (*devoured*) Iosēph." Deinde scindit (*rent*) vestem (*garment*) suam. Omnēs līberī eius convēnērunt, ut lēnīrent dolōrem patris, sed Iacōb nōn accēpit cōnsōlātiōnem (*consolation*) dīxitque, "Ego dēscendam dolōre magnō cum fīliō meō ad mortem."

But Joseph becomes the governor of Egypt.

Potiphar Aegyptius, quī ēmit Iosēph ā mercātōribus, benignē eum accēpit. Rēx tandem ad sē vocāvit Iosēph eīque nārrāvit somnia (*dreams*) quibus permōtus erat; et Iosēph illī sīgnificātiōnem eōrum dīxit. "Itaque, Rēx," inquit Iosēph, "necesse est virum prūdentem dēligere eumque iubēre partem frūmentī in aedificiīs pūblicīs pōnere atque eam dīligenter servāre, nam inopia erit frūmentī." Rēgī placuit cōnsilium; quārē dīxit Iosēph, "Quis est in Aegyptō tē prūdentior? Nēmō certē est." Dētrāxit (*took off*) dē manū suā ānulum (*ring*) et Iosēph dedit.

---

[1] From the Latin Bible (the *Vulgate*). Joseph, Jacob, and Benjamin, being Hebrew words, are not declined.

Cōnsilium vērum dare audeāmus līberē. (Cicero)
Let us dare to give truthful counsel freely

CHAPTER XLVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*Cont.*) · SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

FIRST SECTION

394. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write a synopsis of the Subjunctive (Active and Passive) of **vocō**. 2. Conjugate each tense, testing your speed.

395. Subjunctive of *Moneō*.— The Subjunctive (Active) tenses of **moneō** are formed as follows: the Present tense is **monē** (Present stem) + **a** (sign of the Subjunctive in all except the First Conjugation) + **m, móneam**; the Imperfect tense is **monē** (Present stem) + **rem, monērem**; the Perfect tense is **monu** (Perfect stem) + **erim, monúerim**; the Pluperfect tense is **monu** (Perfect stem) + **issem, monuíssem.**

In the Passive the Present and Imperfect tenses have the Passive personal endings, thus: Present tense, **mónear**; Imperfect tense, **monērer.** The Perfect and Pluperfect tenses are formed by means of the Perfect Passive Participle, with **sim** for the Perfect, **mónitus sim**; with **éssem** for the Pluperfect, **mónitus éssem.** The four Subjunctive tenses of **moneō** are conjugated on pages 327–328.

396. Subjunctive of *Possum*. — The four Subjunctive tenses of **possum** are — Present, **póssim**; Imperfect, **póssem**; Perfect, **potúerim**; Pluperfect, **potuíssem.** These tenses are conjugated on page 336.

Subjunctive in Independent Clauses

397. I. Wishes. — In English we use the Subjunctive mood to express a *wish*, thus: (1) *Peace be with you!* Sometimes the wish is introduced by *may*, *would that*, *would*, or *O that*, as: (2) *O that he were here!* In Latin also the Subjunctive mood is used to express wishes: (1) **Pāx sit vōbīscum!** (2) **Utinam hīc esset!**

Wishes are classified as (1) Future Possible, (2) Present Unfulfilled, and (3) Past Unfulfilled. These three classes are illustrated by the following sentences: (1) **Pater Rōmam crās veniat!** *May father come to Rome to-morrow!* (2) **Utinam pater Rōmae hodiē esset!** *Would that father were in Rome to-day!* (3) **Utinam pater herī Rōmam nē vēnisset!** *Would that father had not come to Rome yesterday!*

Observe. — The negative is **nē**, *not.* **Utinam**, *would that, O that*, may be used with Future Possible Wishes, and is regularly used in the other two classes. Finally, note carefully the tense used for each class.

398. Rule. — In Latin, as in English, the Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*, and is called the "Optative Subjunctive" (from **optō**, *I wish*). The negative is **nē.** There are three kinds of wishes. In these the same tenses are used as in English: "Future Possible Wish" (Present Subjunctive); "Present Unfulfilled Wish" (Imperfect Subjunctive); "Past Unfulfilled Wish" (Pluperfect Subjunctive).

399. II. Exhortations. — In English and in Latin the Subjunctive is used to express an *exhortation*, that is, an act *willed* or *urged* by the speaker with reference to himself and certain others. For example: *Praise we the king!* **Rēgem laudēmus!** In English, however, an exhortation

usually is expressed by "let us"[1] followed by an Infinitive without *to*, thus: *Let us praise the king!* The tense in exhortations is the Present.

400. III. **Commands.** — A command in the *second* person is generally expressed by the Imperative mood.[2] When, however, a command is given in the *third* person, we have, as in the exhortation, action *willed* by the speaker, although with reference to some one other than himself. Such commands are expressed, both in English and in Latin, in the same way as exhortations. Thus: *Let disloyal citizens remain in prison!* **Maneant in carcere cīvēs īnfīdī!** The tense of exhortations and commands is almost always the *Present*.

401. Rule. — In Latin, as in English, the Subjunctive is used to indicate something as *willed* or *urged*, and is called the "Volitive Subjunctive" (from **volō**, *I will*). The Subjunctive is, therefore, used to express an *exhortation* (or *request*), or a *command*. The negative is **nē**.

SECOND SECTION

402. IV. **Potential Expressions.** — Just as the English auxiliaries *should* and *would*[3] are used to express a weaker

---

[1] "Let" is a verb in the Imperative mood, "us" is its object; the Infinitive "(to) praise" depends on "let."

[2] A negative command (*i.e.* a *prohibition*), if addressed to an *individual* second person (or persons), is (politely) expressed by **nōlī** (singular), *be thou unwilling*, **nōlīte** (plural), *be you unwilling*, thus: *Do not blame this good man!* **Nōlī (nōlīte) hunc virum bonum culpāre!**

[3] The use of *should* and *would* with different persons is determined in the same way as the use of *shall* and *will*. In statements of futurity *shall* and *should* are used with the first person (singular and plural), *will* and *would* are used with the second and third persons; *will* and *would* are used with the first person to express *willingness*, *consent*, or *determination*; in questions as to futurity *shall* and *should* are used with the first and second persons, *will* and *would* with the third person.

futurity than is denoted by *shall* and *will*, so in Latin the Present Subjunctive is used to express a weaker futurity than that of the Future Indicative. Thus: **laudābō**, *I shall praise* (a future *fact*), but **laudem**, *I should praise* (a future *probability*). This potential use of the Subjunctive to express *weak futurity* is sometimes called the "Conditional Subjunctive," because it is used in such conditional sentences as require in English *should* and *would*, thus: *If I should see him, he would tell me*, **sī eum videam, mihi dīcat.**

403. Rule. — In Latin the Conditional Subjunctive is used to express something merely as *probable*. It is then translated with the aid of the modal auxiliaries *should* and *would*. The negative is **nōn**.

404. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. O that my son may be a good and brave man! 2. Would that we were now in Rome! 3. Would that I had seen that city! 4. Let us praise the courage of the loyal citizens. 5. Let us not hesitate to blame the disloyal. 6. Let all good citizens dare to fight for their country. 7. Do not envy (*lit.* be unwilling to envy) this good man. 8. He would not say this about us. 9. If I should see him, I would ask him about his brother, who is in France.

405. Derivation Exercise, Type III. — Find for the notebook *five* English words related to **sūmō, cōnsūmō, resūmō.**



A Christian Epitaph from the Catacombs

Geronti, vībās (vīvās) in Deō — *Gerontius, mayest thou live in God*

(The tree and the sheep with the shepherd probably symbolize the tree of life and the soul of Gerontius, now with Christ, its Shepherd)

LATIN SELECTION

406. JOSEPH, SON OF JACOB (*Continued*)

A famine in Egypt.

Vēnit inopia frūmentī per septem annōs et famēs (*famine*) gravis erat. Tunc Aegyptiī, quōs premēbat famēs, vēnērunt ad rēgem et petēbant cibum. Quōs Pharaō mīsit ad Iosēph, quī Aegyptiīs frūmentum vēndēbat.

Joseph's brothers come to Egypt to buy grain.

Iacōb etiam propter inopiam frūmentī mīsit fīliōs suōs in Aegyptum. Itaque eō pervēnērunt frātrēs Iosēph, sed pater retinuit domī nātū minimum, quī vocābātur Beniamīn. Decem fratrēs in cōnspectum Iosēph vēnērunt et eum suppliciter salūtāvērunt. Cognōvit eōs Iosēph nec ipse est cognitus ab eīs. Nōn indicāvit (*declare*) sē statim, sed eōs interrogāvit, "Quā ex terrā vēnistis et quō cōnsiliō?" Quī respondērunt, "Vēnimus ē terrā Canaan ut emerēmus frūmentum."



Father Nile

(The sixteen playing children symbolize the sixteen cubits that the river rises. The Sphinx, Horn of Plenty, Hippopotamus, and Crocodile are emblematic of Egypt)

Nēmō vir magnus sine afflātū dīvīnō umquam fuit. (Cicero)
Without inspiration of God no man was ever great

CHAPTER XLIX

SUBJUNCTIVE (*Cont.*) · CLAUSES OF RESULT

FIRST SECTION

407. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write a synopsis of the Subjunctive (Active and Passive, side by side) of **vocō** and **moneō**; then write the synopsis of **sum** and **possum**. 2. Conjugate all the Subjunctive tenses of these verbs. Can you do this in *two* minutes?

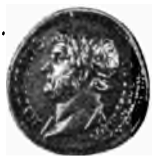
408. Subjunctive of *Regō*. — The Subjunctive (Active) tenses of **regō** are formed as follows: the Present tense is **reg** (verb root) + **a** (sign of the Subjunctive in the Third Conjugation) + **m, régam**; the Imperfect tense is **rege** (Present stem) + **rem, régerem**; the Perfect tense is **rēx** (Perfect stem) + **erim, rēxerim**; the Pluperfect tense is **rēx** (Perfect stem) + **issem, rēxíssem.**

In the Passive the Present and Imperfect tenses have the Passive personal endings: Present tense, **régar**; Imperfect tense, **régerer.** The Perfect and Pluperfect tenses are formed by means of the Perfect Passive Participle, with **sim** for the Perfect, **rēctus sim**; with **éssem** for the Pluperfect, **rēctus éssem.**

Subjunctive of *Capiō*. — The Present Subjunctive (Active) of **capiō** is **cápi-am** (cf. **rég-am**); the Imperfect, **cáp-erem** (cf. **rég-erem**); the Perfect, **cēp-erim**; the Pluperfect, **cēp-íssem.**

Subjunctive of *Audiō*.—The Present Subjunctive (Active) of **audiō** is **áudi-am**; the Imperfect, **audī-rem**; the Perfect, **audīv-erim**; the Pluperfect, **audīv-íssem.**

The Subjunctive tenses (Active and Passive) of **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are given on pages 329, 330, 332, 334.



A Roman Coin of Hadrian

409. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Conjugate each tense of the Subjunctive of **regō**. 2. With the book closed, write a synopsis of **regō** (Active and Passive, side by side). 3. Repeat the synopsis from memory; then conjugate each tense, testing your speed. 4. In the same way learn the Subjunctive of **capiō** and **audiō**. 5. Write in parallel columns a synopsis of the Subjunctive (Active) of **culpō**, **obsideō**, **exclūdō**, **interficiō**, **mūniō**. Conjugate each tense three times, testing your speed.

410. VOCABULARY XLIX

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
heart	**cor, córdis,** *n*	*cord*ial, con*cord*
difficulty	**difficúltās, -tātis,** *f.*	*difficulty*
take care, care for	**cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*cure, curat*ive
care, attention	**cūra, -ae,** *f.*	sine*cure*
disturb, alarm	**pertúrbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*perturbat*ion
alarm	**pertérreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**	
be afraid	**pertiméscō, -ere, pertímuī, —**	
lie down, lie slain	**iáceō, -ēre, -uī, —**	ad*jacent*
besiege	**obsídeō, -ēre, obsēdī, obséssus**	*obsess, obsess*ion
press, oppress	**prémō, -ere, préssī, préssus**	*press*ure
overwhelm, crush	**ópprimō, -ere, oppréssī, oppréssus**	*oppress, oppress*ion
live	**vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctūrus**	*viv*acious, *viv*id
alive	**vīvus, -a, -um**	*viv*isection
such	**tālis,** *m., f.*, **-e,** *n.*	
scarcely	**vix** (*adv.*)	

SECOND SECTION

411. A Clause of Result in English.—In the English sentence,

A B

(1) *The road is so difficult that we are not able to proceed*, the subordinate clause (B) expresses the *result* and is introduced by the conjunction *that*. The result is stated *as a fact* (by the Indicative mood). The result may, however, be stated *not as a fact*, but merely as *probable* or *likely*, thus: (2) *The road is so difficult that we should not be able to proceed* (*i.e.* if we should try). Here the clause of result states what, under the circumstances, naturally *would* be true; it is expressed as only *probable* (the fact is only implied). In English the result is usually expressed (as in 1) as a fact.

412. A Clause of Result in Latin.—In Latin a clause of result is expressed merely as *probable* or *likely*. Therefore the *Subjunctive* mood must be used (cf. **402**). Thus: **Iter tam difficile est ut prōcēdere nōn possīmus**, *The road is so difficult that we are not able to proceed* (lit. *that we should not be able to proceed*). Since in English we usually express a clause of result as a *fact*, the Subjunctive in a Latin clause of result (though it really expresses something only as *probable*) is usually translated by the English Indicative.

413. Rule.—A Clause of Result is expressed in Latin by **ut**, *that*, *so that* (if negative, by **ut . . . nōn**) with the Subjunctive. It is, however, usually translated by the English Indicative.

414. Use of Tenses in Clauses of Result.—In clauses of result the tenses of the Latin Subjunctive are translated by the corresponding tenses of the Indicative. Thus:



The Barber Shop of Licinius

(1) **Nostrī (mīlitēs) tam fortiter pugnant ut hostēs dē victōriā dēspērent** (*are despairing, despair*); **ut . . . dēspērāverint** (*have despaired*). (2) **Nostrī (mīlitēs) tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs dē victōriā dēspērārent** (*were despairing, despaired*); **ut . . . dēspērāverint** (*despaired*).[1] From these examples we may draw the following rule.

415. Rule. — If the verb of the main clause refers to present (or future) time, the result, *if not completed*, is expressed by the *Present* Subjunctive; *if completed*, by the *Perfect* Subjunctive. If the verb of the main clause refers to past time, the result, *if not completed*, is expressed by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive; *if completed*, by the *Perfect* Subjunctive. Thus the tenses are used in Latin in the same way as in English.

416. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. The road was so difficult that we could not proceed. 2. They attacked the camp so fiercely that the enemy surrendered (**dēdō**).[2] 3. The wound of the soldier is so severe (**tantus, -a, -um**) that he has remained in the camp. 4. Our leader was so kind that all the inhabitants praised him. 5. He wrote the letter in Latin (**Latīnē**, *adv.*) with such care that I read it without difficulty.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

417. *A.* 1. Centuriō tam multīs vulneribus cōnfectus erat ut ad pedēs rēgis barbarōrum iacēret; hic autem etiam tum magnum odium vix continēre poterat. 2. Nē cīvēs perturbentur hīs hostium vōcibus, numquam cōnsulēs nostrī tālēs condiciōnēs pācis audient. 3. Caesaris nōmen semper vīvet

[1] After a Past tense in the main clause a clause of result regularly has the Perfect Subjunctive. This "Historical Perfect" gives to the result clause the emphasis of an historical statement. Thus: **Nostrī tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs fūgerint**, *Our men were fighting so bravely that the enemy fled.*

[2] With reflexive pronoun.

apud omnēs gentēs quae rēbus mīlitāribus (*Dative*) student. 4. Castra nostra cum tantā cūrā et labōre mūnīvimus ut hostēs nōs opprimere nōn possint. 5. Utinam illō in proeliō equitēs Rōmānī impetūs hostium nē pertimuissent!

B. 1. To alarm these treacherous enemies, let us at once besiege their town. 2. Never would I injure this old man, for he freed me from many difficulties. 3. Let not such a fear oppress your hearts; I myself will care for all this matter most diligently. 4. Would that my father were alive to-day! 5. In that year Pharaoh, king of Egypt, ordered Joseph to place as much grain as possible in the public buildings, that afterwards the people might not suffer from famine.

418. Derivation Exercise, Type II.—Find for the notebook *five* English words related to **doceō**.

The Roman Dress

(*Optional*)

419. The outer garment of the Roman men was the *toga*, a kind of cloak; beneath this they wore the closely fitting *tunic*. The *toga* was always rather formal (like our "evening dress"), so that at home the Romans usually wore the *tunic* without the *toga*.[1]

The dress of Roman women consisted of three garments. Over an inner *tunic*, an outer *tunic* (the *stola*) was worn reaching to the feet. One of the *tunics* usually had short sleeves. The outdoor cloak (the *palla*), frequently of bright color, was a large rectangular piece of woolen cloth, which was worn in different ways.



A Roman Woman and her Maid

[1] Cf. Johnston, *The Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 64–66, 95–98.

CHAPTER L (Review)

420. Vocabularies and Syntax. — (*a*) Review carefully Vocabularies XLI–XLIX. (*b*) Practice, for accuracy and speed, on **agmen, aciēs, obsideō, dēpōnō, dēiciō.** (*c*) Review the Rules of Syntax, XLI–XLIX, pages 340–342.

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in XLI–XLIX

421. 1. Hanc parvam equitum Gallōrum manum ā reliquō exercitū interclūdāmus, nē adventum nostrum prīncipī suō nūntient.

2. Utinam tālis dux reī mīlitāris imperītissimus hās cohortēs Rōmā in Galliam numquam abdūxisset!

3. Agmen septendecim mīlia passuum illō diē iter fēcit ut hoc oppidum quam prīmum obsidēret.

4. Cūr huic magistrātuī ā tē invidētur? Ego quidem numquam cupiam eius labōrēs perīculaque suscipere.

5. Ille centuriō, vir magnō corpore, quī laudis erat avidissimus, dē vallō sē dēiēcit ut Gallōs perterrēret.



The Portland Vase

(The vase once held the ashes of a member of the Imperial family)

6. Imperātōrī audācter cōnfīdāmus; ille quidem brevī tempore nōs omnibus cūrīs līberābit.

7. Hī Gallī multīs ante annīs nōbīs resistere cōnstituērunt; pars enim hārum gentium populō Rōmānō multum invidēbat, atque cēterae lībertātis cupiditāte magnopere concitātae erant.

8. Fīlius mercātōris, vir magnae fideī, expōnet hīs barbarīs eās rēs quās cīvitās Rōmāna ab eīs sibi nunc quaerit.

9. Ubi Caesar quīnque diēs in castrīs permānsit, sextō diē mīlitēs ēdūxit atque aciem in lātā plānitiē īnstrūxit.

LATIN ABBREVIATIONS IN ENGLISH

(Optional)

422. One can scarcely pass an hour without hearing or reading familiar abbreviations from the Latin, and many use them without ever knowing for what Latin words they stand. By studying them now we shall be able to use them intelligently.

Some of the commoner abbreviations are :

A.M.	**ante merīdiem**:	*before noon,*[1] *forenoon*	
M.	**merīdiēs (media diēs)**:	*midday, noon*	
P.M.	**post merīdiem**:	*afternoon*	
A.B.	**Artium Baccalaureus**:	*Bachelor of Arts*	University Degrees
A.M.	**Artium Magister**:	*Master of Arts*	University Degrees
B.S.	**Baccalaureus Scientiae**:	*Bachelor of Science*	University Degrees
D.D.	**Dīvīnitātis Doctor**:[2]	*Doctor of Divinity*	University Degrees
M.D.	**Medicīnae Doctor**:	*Doctor of Medicine*	University Degrees
A.D.	**Annō Dominī**:	*in the year of (our) Lord*	
ad lib.	**ad libitum**:	*at pleasure*	
cf.	**cōnfer**[3]:	*compare*	
e.g.	**exemplī grātiā**:	*for example*	
et al.	**et aliī**:	*and others*	
etc.	**et cētera**:	*and the rest, and so forth*	
ibid.	**ibīdem**:	*in the same place*	
i.e.	**id est**:	*that is*	
lb.	**lībra**:	*pound*	
per cent.	**per centum**:	*by the hundred*	
sc.	**scīlicet (scīre licet)**:	*namely*	
v.	**vidē** (imperative of **videō**):	*see*	

423. Exercise. — Consult in an English dictionary the appendix containing "Abbreviations used in Writing and Printing" and find five additional abbreviations from Latin. Keep a list of Latin abbreviations in your notebook. Copy those above, and add others.

---

[1] English "noon" is from Latin **nōna (hōra)**, *the ninth hour*, the Roman dinner hour (really 3 P.M.).

[2] **doctor**, lit. *teacher*. [3] Imperative of **cōnferō**, *I bring together.*

Disce, puer, virtūtem ex mē vērumque labōrem. (Vergil)
Learn, O boy, true worth and toil from me

CHAPTER LI

IMPERATIVE MOOD · RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

FIRST SECTION

424. Preliminary Review. — Review the Latin sentences of 421 for oral and written work.

425. The Imperative Mood in English. — The Imperative mood is used to express a *command* (or entreaty). In English it has but *one* tense (the Present) and but *one* person (the second). In the Active voice the Imperative is the verb in its simplest form (*e.g.* *Close the door*); in the Passive voice it is the Imperative *be* and the Past Participle (*e.g.* *Be advised by your friends*). The subject of an Imperative is seldom expressed unless it is emphatic; if expressed, it may precede the Imperative (*e.g.* *You close the door*). In older English the subject often followed the Imperative (*e.g.* "*Praise ye the Lord*"). This use is now confined to the solemn style and to poetry.

426. The Imperative Mood in Latin. — In Latin the Imperative has *two* tenses (the Present and the Future). In the Present tense it has only the *second* person (singular and plural). The Passive voice is indicated by the Passive personal endings.

The Present Imperatives of **vócō, móneō, régō, cápiō,** and **aúdiō** are as follows:

	Active		Passive	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
I.	**vócā,** *call (thou)*	**vocāte,** *call (ye)*	**vocāre,** *be (thou) called*	**vocāminī,** *be (ye) called*
II.	**mónē,** *advise (thou)*	**monēte,** *advise (ye)*	**monēre,** *be (thou) advised*	**monēminī,** *be (ye) advised*
III.	**régĕ,** *rule (thou)* **cápĕ,** *take (thou)*	**régite,** *rule (ye)* **cápite,** *take (ye)*	**régĕre,** *be (thou) ruled* **cápĕre,** *be (thou) taken*	**regíminī,** *be (ye) ruled* **capíminī,** *be (ye) taken*
IV.	**aúdī,** *hear (thou)*	**audīte,** *hear (ye)*	**audīre,** *be (thou) heard*	**audīminī,** *be (ye) heard*

Observe. — 1. The Present *Active* Imperative (2d pers. sing.) of a regular verb consists of the verb root and the "sign of the conjugation."[1] Thus **vocā,** *call (thou)* is the verb root **voc** + **ā** (the "sign of the First Conjugation").

2. The Present *Passive* Imperative has in the *singular* the same form as the Present Active Infinitive, and in the *plural* the same form as the second person plural of the Present Passive Indicative.

427. Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. With the book closed, write, with the meanings, the Present Imperatives (Active and Passive) of **laudō, videō, mittō, accipiō, mūniō.**

428. Commands, Exhortations, and Prohibitions. — The Imperative expresses an abrupt command, thus: **Dā mihi istum librum,** *Give me that book (of yours).*

[1] Exceptions are **dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** (and **ferō**), whose Present Imperatives (singular) are the verb roots **dīc, dūc, fac,** and **fer.**

Since the Present Imperative has only the second person, a command *in the third person* requires the Subjunctive, thus: *Let him remain in prison*, **Maneat in carcere.**

If the speaker includes himself in the command (*e.g. Let us praise the soldiers*), the resulting exhortation (in the *first person plural*) requires the Present Subjunctive (**Laudēmus mīlitēs**).

The negative with the Imperative and with the Volitive Subjunctive is **nē**, but a prohibition, if addressed to an *individual* second person (or persons), is expressed as in footnote 2, p. 248.

429. VOCABULARY LI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
knowledge	**sciéntia, -ae,** *f.*	*science, scientific*
ask	**intérrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*interrogate*
climb, mount	**cōnscéndō, -ere, cōnscéndī, cōnscēnsus**	Cf. **ascendō, 280.**
know	**scíō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**	con*scious*
feel, realize	**séntiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus**	*sense, sens*ible
take, assume	**sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus**	pre*sume*
devour, destroy	**cōnsūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus**	*consumpt*ion
resume	**resūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus**	*resumpt*ion
absent	**ábsēns,** *Gen.* **abséntis**	*absent*
present	**praésēns,** *Gen.* **praeséntis**	*present*
fresh, new	**récēns,** *Gen.* **recéntis**	*recent*
one at a time	**síngulī, -ae, -a** [1]	*single*
unusual	**singulāris,** *m. and f.*, **-e,** *n.*	*singular*
unharmed, safe	**incólumis,** *m. and f.*, **-e,** *n.*	
safe	**sálvus, -a, -um**	*salv*age, *salv*ation
safe	**tūtus, -a, -um**	*tut*elage

[1] Often best rendered in English by an adverb: **Gentēs singulās vīcit,** *He conquered the peoples one-at-a-time (singly).*

SECOND SECTION

430. A Relative Clause of Purpose. — The purpose of an action, as we have seen (**387**), is expressed in Latin, if affirmative, by **ut** (*that*, *in-order-that*); if negative, by **nē** (*that . . . not*, *in-order-that . . . not*) with the Subjunctive. However, the English sentence, *He sent a friend to ask me*, in Latin is, preferably, expressed: **Mīsit amīcum quī mē rogāret** (lit., *who should ask me*). Similarly, *Many came to ask me*, may become in Latin: **Multī vēnērunt, quī mē rogārent**, *Many came* (lit., *who should ask me*, or *who were to ask me*) *to ask me*. See Sequence of Tenses, pages 343–344.

431. Rule. — The relative pronoun may introduce a Clause of Purpose, if the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the principal clause. The negative is **nōn**.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

432. *A*. 1. Hoc quod tē interrogō, statim mihi respondē. 2. Omnēs mīlitēs nostrī, quī nunc illōs altōs montēs cōnscendunt, domum veniant salvī atque incolumēs! 3. Resūmite proelium, mīlitēs; castra iam sunt tūta, sed iterum[1] fortiter pugnēmus, nē hostēs inopiam nostram omnium rērum sentiant! 4. Amīcōs fīdōs ad tē mittam, quibus dīcās omnia quae hāc dē rē scīs. 5. Cōnsul fīlium mīsit, quī praesēns supplicium sūmeret dē[2] iūdice īnfīdō.

B. 1. Caesar sent these lieutenants to give a fresh horse to each soldier. 2. My brother, who is now absent, excels all his friends in his knowledge of military affairs. 3. Gather as many arms as possible with which to defend this town. 4. Let Fabius, a man of remarkable bravery, hasten to the camp, that the cohorts which are there may not lose hope. 5. General, take my legions, for your forces are no longer fresh and unimpaired.

---

[1] **iterum** : *again*. [2] **supplicium sūmere dē** : *to inflict punishment upon*.

LATIN SELECTION

433. Joseph, Son of Jacob (*Continued*)

Jacob again sends his sons to Egypt.

Postquam cōnsūmpta sunt omnia quae sēcum portāverant, fīliōs suōs Iacōb mīsit iterum in Aegyptum, quī emerent cibum. "Nōn possumus," respondērunt fīliī patrī, "ad praefectum (*governor*) Aegyptī accēdere sine Beniamīn; ipse enim iussit illum ad sē addūcī (*to be brought*)."

"Cūr," inquit pater, "mentiōnem (*mention*) fēcistis dē frātre vestrō minimō?"

"Ipse," respondērunt, "nōs interrogāvit an (*whether*) pater noster vīveret; an alium frātrem habērēmus. Tum addidit, 'Addūcite hūc frātrem vestrum.' Id praescīre (*know in advance*) nōn potuimus."

They are kindly received by the governor of Egypt.

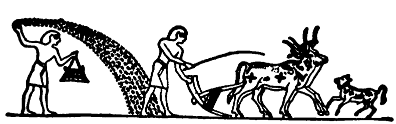
Tandem in Aegyptum revēnērunt fīliī Iacōb et cum eīs parvulus frāter nōmine Beniamīn. Id nūntiātum est Iosēph.

Iosēph eōs benignē salūtāvit interrogāvitque, "Salvusne est ille senex quem patrem habētis? Vīvitne?"

Quī respondērunt, "Pater noster et vīvit et salvus est."

Iosēph autem oculōs in Beniamīn coniēcit et dīxit, "Iste est frāter vester minimus, quī domī remānserat apud patrem?"

"Ita vērō," respondērunt frātrēs.



Egyptians Sowing

Audentēs fortūna iuvābit. (Vergil)
Fortune will help the brave

CHAPTER LII

PARTICIPLES · ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

FIRST SECTION

434. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the Imperatives of **vocō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō,** with their meanings. 2. Review the Translation Exercises of **432** for oral and written work.

435. Participles in English. — A Participle[1] in English (and in Latin) is an *adjective form* of a verb (*e.g. They came to the temple, singing*). It *participates*, or shares, in the nature both of an adjective and of a verb. Thus in our example, *singing* is a participial adjective and modifies the subject *they*. Being a form of a verb, a Participle has *voice* and *tense*, and is transitive or intransitive. Thus: *Watching the dark clouds, I turned the boat toward the shore.* Here *watching* (Present participle) modifies the subject *I*, and has a direct object *clouds*.

In English the *Present* participle (active) ends in *-ing*, and expresses action as *going on at the same time with* some other action. The *Past* participle (passive) expresses completed action. Thus: *The soldier fell, wounded by a spear.* The *Perfect* participle (active) is formed by prefixing *having* to the Past participle. Thus: *Having lost his money, he walked home.*

[1] Cf. **particeps (pars + capiō)**, *one participating, a sharer, partaker.*

436. Participles in Latin. — In Latin all *Present Active* participles end in **-ns**,[1] and are formed on the Present stem. Thus: I. **vócāns**, *calling;* II. **mónēns**, *advising;* III. **régēns**, *ruling;* **cápiēns**, *taking;* IV. **aúdiēns**, *hearing.*

All *Future*[2] *Active* participles end in **-ūrus**, and are formed on the stem of the Perfect Passive participle. Thus: I. **vocātūrus, -a, -um**, *about-to-call;* II. **monitūrus, -a, -um**, *about-to-advise;* III. **rēctūrus, -a, -um**, *about-to-rule;* **captūrus, -a, -um**, *about-to-take;* IV. **audītūrus, -a, -um**, *about-to-hear.*

The *Perfect Passive* participles of the model verbs are: I. **vocātus, -a, -um**, (*having been*) *called;* II. **mónitus, -a, -um**, (*having been*) *advised;* III. **rēctus, -a, -um**, (*having been*) *ruled;* **cáptus, -a, -um**, (*having been*) *taken;* IV. **audītus, -a, -um**, (*having been*) *heard.*

The *Future Passive* participle ends in **-ndus**, and is formed on the Present stem. Thus: I. **vocándus, -a, -um**, *to-be-called;* **monéndus, -a, -um**, *to-be-advised;* III. **regéndus, -a, -um**, *to-be-ruled;* **capiéndus, -a, -um**, *to-be-taken;* IV. **audiéndus, -a, -um**, *to-be-heard.*

The Participles of the model verbs are also given on pages 326, 328, 330, 332, 334.

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Practice for accuracy and speed. 2. Write a synopsis of the Participles of **vocō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō**, with their meanings. 3. Give, with their meanings, all the Participles of **laudō, videō, mittō, faciō, mūniō**.

437. The Nominative Absolute in English. — In the sentence, *The city having been captured* (A), *the enemy surrendered* (B),

[1] The Present participles are declined like Third Declension adjectives in **-ns**: **vócāns**, m. f. n., Gen. **vocántis**, m. f. n.; **mónēns**, Gen. **monéntis**, etc.

[2] Futurity is expressed in English by *about* (prep.) or *going* with the Infinitive, *I am about-to-leave* or *I am going-to-leave.*

the participial phrase (A), consisting of the noun *city* in the Nominative and the participle, *having been captured*, is called a *Nominative Absolute*, because the phrase in the Nominative is *freed from* — not a part of — the clause (B) beside which it is placed.[1]

NOTE. — The Nominative Absolute is not common; in place of it we generally use a subordinate clause (Temporal, Causal, Conditional, etc.) to indicate the exact relation of that part of the thought to the rest of the sentence. Thus, in our example, we may say *when* (*after*) *the city was captured*, or *because* (*since*) *the city was captured*, or *if the city was captured*.

438. The Ablative Absolute in Latin. — In Latin a participial phrase, consisting of a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in the Ablative, corresponds to the English Nominative Absolute. This phrase is called an *Ablative Absolute*, because, like the Nominative Absolute in English, it is but loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. The Ablative Absolute is usually translated by a subordinate clause (Temporal, Causal, Conditional, etc.) according to the relation it bears to the rest of the sentence. Thus: **Urbe captā, hostēs sē dēdidērunt** (lit. *the city having been captured*), *When* (or *After*) *the city was captured* (or *Because the city was captured*, or *If the city was captured*), *the enemy surrendered.*

439. The Tenses of the Participles. — The *Perfect* Passive participle expresses the action as *completed before* the time indicated by the principal verb; the *Present* participle expresses action as *in progress* at the time indicated

[1] The English adjective "absolute" (from **absolvō**) means *freed from*, as an "*absolute* monarch" is *freed from* restrictions. The Nominative Absolute is so called because the *noun* in the Nominative case is *freed from* the constructions which usually attach a noun to other words in a sentence.

by the principal verb. Thus: **Paucīs urbem dēfendentibus, eam facile cēpit** (lit. *few defending the city*), *Because* (or *Since*) *few defended the city, he easily took it.*

NOTE. — The Ablative Absolute often consists of a noun with another noun, or of a noun with an adjective, thus: **Caesare duce**, *Caesar being leader, under the leadership of Caesar;* **Caesare cōnsule**, *Caesar being consul, in the consulship of Caesar;* **mē invītō**, *I being unwilling, against my wish;* **illō rēge vīvō**, *that king being alive, while that king lives.*

CAUTION. — The Ablative Absolute is *not* used if the *noun* or *pronoun* of the participial phrase (or a pronoun referring to it) has a place elsewhere in the sentence. Thus: *The soldiers being called together, he praised them* (*i.e.* the soldiers) = **Mīlitēs convocātōs laudāvit** (lit. *he praised the called-together soldiers*), *Having called together the soldiers, he praised them;* or (preferably) *He called together the soldiers and praised them.*

440. Rule. — A noun or pronoun in the Ablative with a participle (or noun, or adjective) in agreement may be used, like the Nominative Absolute in English, in place of a subordinate clause. It is translated, according to its relation to the rest of the sentence, by a *Temporal*, *Causal*, or *Conditional* clause.

441. Exercise. — Express in Latin, using an Ablative Absolute for each subordinate clause: 1. When these things had been ascertained, the scouts hastened to Caesar. 2. After the enemy had been put to flight, the soldiers were praised by the leader. 3. When Cicero was consul, Catiline (**Catilīna**) plotted (**cōnsilia cēpit**) against the commonwealth. 4. Because Caesar was (their) leader, the soldiers fought bravely. 5. If the city is captured (shall have been captured), the enemy will burn many buildings.



From a Roman Lamp
(The Huntress Diana)

SECOND SECTION

442. VOCABULARY LII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
custom, habit	**cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis,** *f.*	Cf. de*suetude*
race, kind	**génus, géneris,** *n.*	*gener*ally
justice, right	**iūs, iūris,**[1] *n.*	*jury*, *juris*diction
oath	**iūs iūrándum,** *n.*	*juris*prudence
rank, class	**ōrdō, ōrdinis,** *m.*	*ordin*al, *ordinary*
cattle	**pécus, pécŏris,** *n.*[2]	*pec*uliar
theory, manner	**rátiō, ratiōnis,** *f.*	*ration*al, *ratio*, *ration*
outcome, departure	**éxitus, -ūs,** *m.*	*exit*
command	**iússus, -ūs,** *m.*	
at my order	**méō iússū**	
think, consider	**exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*estimate*, *estima*ble
carry	**véhō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus**	con*vey*, *veh*icle
common	**commūnis,** *m. and f.*, **-e,** *n.*	*communi*cate
suppliant	**súpplex, súpplicis,** *m. and f.*	*supplic*ate
humbly	**supplíciter** (*adv.*)	
whence	**únde** (*adv.*)	
also	**quŏque** (*postpositive*)	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

443. *A.* 1. Hāc īnsulā captā, omnēs incolae meō iussū ad Italiam tribus nāvibus vehentur. 2. Cum hīs prīncipibus rēx fīlium quoque mīserat quī pācem ā Caesare suppliciter peteret. 3. Sī barbarī, iūre iūrandō nōbīs datō, dē exitū cōnsilia faciunt, dēbēmus dē eīs supplicium statim sūmere. 4. Īnsula unde vēnērunt hī nautae multās cōnsuētūdinēs habet singulārēs. 5. Cicerōne cōnsule, Catilīna, quem multī virī omnium ōrdinum cīvem inīquissimum exīstimābant, ex urbe excēdere coāctus est.

---

[1] Just as **rēx, rēgis** (*one-who-rules, king*) was formed from the root of **rĕgō** (**rĕg**), so **iūdex, iūdicis**, was formed from **iūs** + the root of **dīcō** (**dīc** and **dĭc**) and means *one-who-speaks-the-law, judge.*

[2] Cf. **pecūnia (16)**, *money.*

B. 1. After the scouts had been sent out, Caesar drew up his battle line in a broad plain; then he began battle at once because his soldiers were eager to fight. 2. What kinds of cattle did those farmers send to the Roman camp to be divided[1] among the lieutenants? 3. If we question this



Before the Chariot Race (in the Circus Maximus)
(Suggested Reading: The Chariot Race in *Ben Hur*)

suppliant in Caesar's presence,[2] he will tell us the theory and practice[3] of war among the Gauls. 4. Although all arms had been given up (*Abl. Abs.*), yet by right of war Caesar carried the old men, women, and children to Rome. 5. Because he has nothing (in) common with me, he never comes to my house.

---

[1] Relative Clause of Purpose.

[2] **apud Caesarem.**

[3] **ūsus, ūsūs,** m.

LATIN SELECTION

444. JOSEPH, SON OF JACOB (*Continued*)

The governor declares that he is Joseph.

Iosēph sē continēre vix poterat; quārē iussit Aegyptiōs quī adstābant (*were standing near*) recēdere. Tum multīs cum lacrimīs dīxit magnā vōce, "Ego sum Iosēph. Vīvitne pater meus?" Nōn poterant respondēre frātrēs eius magnō timōre perturbātī. Quibus ille amīcē (*kindly*) "Accēdite," inquit, "ad mē; ego sum Iosēph, frāter vester, quem vēndidistis mercātōribus quī discēdēbant in Aegyptum. Nōlīte timēre: Deī cōnsiliō id factum est." Haec ubi Iosēph dīxit, frātrem suum Beniamīn ad sē accēpit multīs cum lacrimīs. Deinde cēterīs quoque frātribus ōscula dedit (*kissed*) nec iam illī timōrem habēbant.

He sends them for their father.

Quibus Iosēph, "Discēdite," inquit, "properāte ad patrem meum eīque nūntiāte, 'Fīlius tuus vīvit et apud Pharaōnem plūrimum potest.' Atque redūcite illum in Aegyptum cum omnī familiā."

Dē adventū frātrum Iosēph rēgī nūntiātum est, quī dedit eīs dōna multa quae portārent ad patrem. Mīsit quoque currum (*chariot*) quō veherent eum.

A happy meeting.

Tum rēx dīxit Iosēph, "Aegyptus est in potestāte tuā; habitet pater tuus in optimō locō, et trāde frātribus tuīs cūram pecorum nostrōrum."



THE CHARIOT RACE

LATIN PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES

(For Reference)

445. The following prefixes and suffixes are assembled from previous chapters. Review **236, 238**.

Suggestions for Study. — It is suggested that each section be taken up first in class, without previous study; and then assigned, with the Exercise, for review.

Three days might well be given to a thorough study of these prefixes and suffixes, and to their application in Latin and in related English words.

I. PREFIXES

INTER–: as in **interpōnō**, *I place between* (cf. "interpose").

PER–: as in **perdūcō**, *I lead through.*

PER– (intensive): as in **persaepe**, *very often*; **permultī**, *very many*; **pervincō**, *I conquer thoroughly.*

PRAE– (English *pre-*): as in **praemittō**, *I send ahead*; **praecēdō**, *I go ahead* (cf. "precede").

PRŌ–: as in **prōcēdō**, *I go forward* (cf. "proceed").

SUB– (also **SUC–**, **SUF–**, **SUP–**, **SUS–**)[1]: as in **submittō**, *I send under* (cf. "submit"); **suppōnō**, *I place under* (cf. "suppose").

446. Exercise (*Optional*). — 1. Make a list of *twelve* English words in which these Latin prefixes appear.

2. Examine the Latin words in the following list and recall their meanings:

1. abdō	6. cōnsūmō	11. intercipiō	16. perveniō
2. addō	7. exclūdō	12. interclūdō	17. praesidium
3. adhibeō	8. exitus	13. perterreō	18. prōcēdō
4. adventus	9. impediō	14. pertimēscō	19. prōvideō
5. cōnsīdō	10. impetus	15. pertineō	20. succēdō

[1] **sub-**, before **c**, **p**, and **f**, becomes respectively **suc-**, **sup-**, and **suf-**; before **c** or **t**, often **sus-**; before **r**, sometimes **sur-**: cf. **succēdō**, **supportō**, **sufficiō**, **suscipiō**, **surripiō**.

3. Answer *three* questions as to each of the compound verbs in the above list: (*a*) What is the simple verb? (*b*) What is the prefix? (*c*) What idea is contributed to the compound word by the prefix?

4. With the prefixes in **236** form compounds of **cēdō, faciō, iaciō, pellō, veniō.** Give the meaning of each compound.

5. With the prefixes given in **445** form compounds of **dūcō** and **mittō.** Give the meaning of each compound.

II. SUFFIXES

447. Associate each word with the word to which it is related, and note the effect of the suffix on the meaning of the derived word. These words are from previous Vocabularies.

A. Nouns Formed from Verbs

1. Nouns expressing *action in process*, or *result of action*:

a. **-IŌ, -SIŌ, -TIŌ**:

legiō (cf. **legō**, *I choose*): *a legion* (*i.e.* "a choosing," a picked body of troops).

dēfēnsiō (cf. **dēfendō**, *I defend*): ("a defending") *defense.*

ōrātiō (cf. **ōrō**, *I speak, ask*): ("a speaking") *speech.*

b. **-TUS (-SUS)**:

adventus (cf. **adveniō**, *I arrive*): ("a-coming-to") *arrival.*

cōnspectus (cf. **cōnspiciō**, *I look at*): *sight.*

exercitus (cf. **exerceō**, *I exercise*): *army.*

iussus (cf. **iubeō**, *I order*): *order.*

cursus (cf. **currō**, *I run*): *race, speed.*

c. **-IUM**:

iūdicium (cf. **iūdicō**, *I judge*): ("a judging") *judgment.*

studium (cf. **studeō**, *I am eager*): *zeal, eagerness.*

beneficium (cf. **bene-faciō**, *I do well*): *well-doing, kindness.*

imperium (cf. **imperō**, *I command*): ("a commanding") *command.*

odium (cf. **ōdī**, *I hate*): ("a hating") *hatred.*

2. Nouns expressing *means of action* (or *result of action*):

–MEN, –MENTUM, –TRUM:

nōmen (cf. **nōscō**, *I know*): ("a means of knowing") *name.*

impedīmentum (cf. **impediō**, *I hinder*): *hindrance;* pl. *baggage.*

arātrum (cf. **arō**, *I plow*): ("a means of plowing") *a plow.*

B. Nouns Formed from Other Nouns

–ĀTUS forms nouns denoting (1) *office* or (2) *official body.*

(1) **magistrātus**[1] (cf. **magister**, *master*): *magistracy.*

(2) **senātus** (cf. **senex**, *an old man*): (an official body composed of old men) *senate.*

C. Nouns Formed from Adjectives

-TŪDŌ forms nouns denoting *quality* or *condition:*

aegritūdō (cf. **aeger**, *ill*): ("the condition of being ill") *illness.*

altitūdō (cf. **altus**, *high*): ("the quality of being high") *height.*

multitūdō (cf. **multus**, *many a*): *multitude.*

magnitūdō (cf. **magnus**, *large*): *size.*

---

[1] Similarly from **cōnsul**, *consul*, was formed **cōnsulātus**, *consulship*, "consulate."

D. Adjectives Formed from Verbs

a. **-ILIS** (**-BILIS**) forms adjectives denoting *capability* (in a passive sense):

facilis (cf. **faciō**, *I do*); (capable of being done) *easy.*

Note. — Similarly **difficilis** (**dis**, a negative prefix as in "*dis*loyal," + **facilis** weakened to **-ficilis**). From **doceō**, *I teach*, we may form **doc-ilis**, *teachable*, *docile;* and from **crēdō**, *I believe*, **crēdi-bilis**, *believable*, *credible*. The English suffixes "*-ile*" (as in fac*ile*) and "*-ble*" (as in naviga*ble*, legi*ble*) have come from Latin **-ilis** and **-bilis**.

b. **-IDUS** forms adjectives denoting *condition:*

timidus (cf. **timeō**, *I fear*): (in a condition of fear) *fearful.*

cupidus (cf. **cupiō**, *I wish*, *I am eager*): *eager*, *desirous* (*of*).

avidus (cf. **aveō**, *I desire*): *desirous* (*of*).

Note. — Latin adjectives in **-āx** and **-ulus**, as **audāx**, *daring*, **crēdulus**, *credulous*, express *tendency*.

E. Adjectives Formed from Nouns and Other Adjectives

-ĀLIS, **-ĀRIS**, express the relation, *belonging to*, or *pertaining to:*

immortālis (cf. **mors**, *death*): (not belonging to death) *immortal.*

familiāris (cf. **familia**, *household*): (belonging to a household) *intimate.*

singulāris (cf. **singulī**, adj., *individual*): (belonging to an individual) *exceptional.*

Note. — Numerous adjective suffixes are used to express the relation "belonging to," "pertaining to": (**urbs**, *city*) urb**ānus**, *of-a-city*, "urban"; (**legiō**, *legion*) legiōn**ārius**, *of-a-legion*, "legionary"; (**rēx**, *king*) rēg**ālis**, *of-a-king*, "regal"; (**cīvis**, *citizen*) cīv**īlis**, *of-a-citizen*, "civil"; (**hostis**, *enemy*) host**īlis**, *of-an-enemy*, "hostile"; (**populus**, *people*) popul**āris**, *of-a-people*, "popular"; (**pater**, *father*) patr**ius**, *of-a-father*, cf. **patria** (**terra**), *fatherland*, etc.

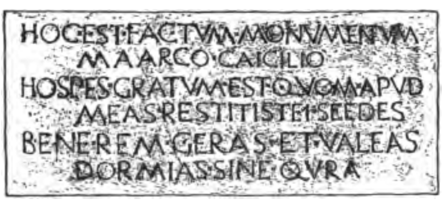
III. THE FORM OF LATIN SUFFIXES IN ENGLISH

448. The Latin suffixes given in **238** [**-or**; **-tor**; **-tūs**, **-tās**, **-ia**; **tās**, **-ia**, **-tia**] and those given in **447** [**-iō**, **-siō**, **-tiō**, **-tūs**, (**-sus**), **-ium**; **-men**, **-mentum**, **-trum**, **-ātus**, **-tūdō**; **-ilis**, **-bilis**, **-idus**, **-ālis**, **-āris**] appear unchanged, or slightly changed, in numerous English words that have come from Latin.

449. **Exercise** (*Optional*). — (1) Examine the following Latin words in English; (2) classify each English word (as verb, noun, adjective, or adverb); (3) associate with it its original form in Latin, and with the Latin original associate related Latin words, thus: timidi*ty* (noun) (Latin: timiditās, cf. **timeō**, **timidus**); (4) determine, with the help of an English dictionary, the exact meaning of each word.

I. clam*or*, specta*tor*, trac*tor*; liber*ty*, utili*ty*, timidi*ty*, digni*ty*; vir*tue*; memor*y*, injur*y*, custod*y*; pruden*ce*, just*ice*.

II. dict*ion*, convent*ion*, inscript*ion*, process*ion*; adven*t*, exi*t*; us*e*; stud*y*; regi*men*, impedi*ment*, thea*ter*; consul*ate*; alti*tude*, forti*tude*; doc*ile*, lauda*ble*, visi*ble*, audi*ble*, credi*ble*; tim*id*, rap*id*; famili*ar*, singul*ar*; leg*al*, fili*al*, fratern*al*, colloqui*al*.



A Roman Epitaph

"*This memorial was made for Marcus Caecilius. Stranger, it is a joy to me that thou hast tarried by my dwelling place. Prosper in thine undertakings, and fare thou well. Free from care be thy sleep.*"

Along the public roads were many monuments to the dead. The epitaphs often request the passer-by to pause and read. Here the spirit of the deceased bestows his blessing upon the one who has thus lingered.

Multa petentibus dēsunt multa. (Horace)
Who seek much, lack much

CHAPTER LIII

INFINITIVES · INDIRECT DISCOURSE

FIRST SECTION

450. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the Participles of **vocō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō,** with their meanings. 2. Review the Nominative Absolute in English, and the Ablative Absolute in Latin (**437–440**); be prepared for oral and written work.

451. The Infinitives. — In Latin the Infinitive has three tenses, Present, Perfect, and Future. The Active Infinitives of **vocō** are: Present, vocā́re, *to call;* Perfect, vocāvísse, *to have called;* Future, vocātū́rus esse, *to be about to call.* These tenses are formed thus: **vocā́re = vocā** (Present stem) + **-re**; **vocāvísse = vocāv** (Perfect stem) + **-isse**; **vocātū́rus ésse = vocātūrus** (Future Participle) with **esse.** In the same way we may form the Active Infinitives of **moneō**: Present, monḗre, *to advise;* Perfect, monuísse, *to have advised;* Future, monitū́rus esse, *to be about to advise.*

In the Passive voice the Present Infinitive ends in **-rī** (**-ī** in the Third Conjugation), thus: vocā́rī, *to be called;* monḗrī, *to be advised;* régī, *to be ruled,* cápī, *to be taken;* audī́rī, *to be heard.* The Perfect Passive Infinitive consists of the Perfect Passive Participle with **esse,** thus: **vocā́tus ésse,** *to have been called;* **mónitus ésse,** *to have been advised,* etc. The Infinitives of **vocō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō,** and **sum** are given on pages 326, 328, 330, 332, 334, 336.

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Write the Infinitives (Active and Passive) of **vocō**, with their meanings. 2. In the same way write the Infinitives of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**. 3. Repeat from memory the Infinitives of each of these verbs, testing your speed.

SECOND SECTION

452. Indirect Discourse in English. — If the exact words of a statement are quoted after a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *believing*, etc., they are indicated by quotation marks, thus: *He says*, "*I am fighting for liberty.*" Such a verbatim (word for word) quotation is called Direct Discourse, because the form of the statement used in *direct* address remains unchanged. If, instead of the exact words of a simple statement, we have *He says that he is fighting for liberty*, the clause introduced by the conjunction *that* is called Indirect Discourse. In Indirect Discourse the thought, *not the exact words*, of the statement is contained in a clause grammatically dependent on the verb of saying. In English, after certain verbs (as *know* and *believe*), we may express Indirect Discourse either by (1) a clause introduced by *that*, or (2) an Infinitive with Subject in the Objective case. Thus the statement, *He is a good man*,



Caesar's Engineers Build a Bridge
(It crossed the Rhine, near Bonn)

becomes (1) *I know that he is a good man;* (2) *I know him to be a good man.* The Present Indicative of the statement is represented in (2) by the Present Infinitive.

453. Indirect Discourse in Latin. — In Latin, after verbs meaning to *say*, *think*, *know*, *hear*, *believe*, etc., a simple statement, when put in Indirect Discourse, *never* becomes a clause introduced by *that*, but is *always* expressed by an Infinitive with Subject in the Accusative. Thus: **Sciō eum esse virum bonum,** *I know him to be a good man,* or *I know that he is a good man.*

454. Tense of Indirect Discourse in English. — After a verb expressing *present* or *future* time the tense of the verb in the clause remains the *same* as the tense of the Indicative used in the statement; after a verb expressing *past* time the verb of the clause *changes* to express the action in relation to the time indicated by the main verb. Thus: 1. (Statement: *I am defending liberty*) ***He says*** *(that) he is defending liberty;* ***he said*** *(that) he was defending liberty.* 2. (Statement: *I was defending*) ***He says*** *that he was defending liberty;* ***he said*** *that he was defending* (or *had defended*) *liberty.* 3. (Statement: *I shall defend*) ***He says*** *(that) he will defend liberty;* ***he said*** *that he would defend liberty.*

455. Tense of Indirect Discourse in Latin. — The *Present* Infinitive expresses action as *contemporary* with that of the main verb; the *Perfect* Infinitive expresses action as *prior;* the *Future* Infinitive expresses action as *subsequent* to that of the main verb. Thus: 1. (Statement: **Lībertātem dēfendō**) **Dīcit sē**[1] **lībertātem dēfendere,** ***He says*** *(that) he is defending liberty;* **Dīxit sē . . . dēfendere,** ***He said*** *(that) he was defending.* 2. (Statement: **Lībertātem**

[1] The reflexive pronoun refers for its identity to the subject of the main verb **dīcit.**

dēfendēbam, or **dēfendī**) **Dīcit sē lībertātem dēfendisse**, *He says that he defended liberty;* **Dīxit sē . . . dēfendisse**, *He said that he had defended.* 3. (Statement: **Lībertātem dēfendam**) **Dīcit sē lībertātem dēfēnsūrum esse**, *He says that he will defend liberty;* **Dīxit sē . . . dēfēnsūrum esse**, *He said that he would defend.*

NOTE.—The student is cautioned against translating too literally. The literal translation, however, is the necessary intermediate step between the Latin idiom and the English idiom.

456. Rule.—After all verbs meaning to *say*, *think*, *know*, *hear*, *believe*, etc., an Infinitive with Subject in the Accusative is used to express a statement in Indirect Discourse. The tenses of the Infinitive express time in relation to the time of the main verb; the tense used in the direct statement becomes the corresponding tense of the Infinitive.

457. Exercise.—Express in Latin: 1. I think that our soldiers are brave. 2. I know that our soldiers fought bravely. 3. He says that our soldiers will fight bravely. 4. He said that our soldiers would fight bravely. 5. He said that our soldiers were bravely fighting; had fought bravely. 6. I hear that he has gone to Rome. 7. I heard that he had gone to Rome. 8. We believe that we shall soon receive a letter. 9. We thought that we should soon receive a letter. 10. The same day it was reported that the city had been captured (**capiō**).

LATIN SELECTIONS

458. NOT AT HOME

A story about Ennius.

ENNIUS poēta amīcus fuit Africānī, quī Hannibalem Zamae (*at Zama*) vīcit [202 B.C.]. Africānī fīlius fuit Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Nāsīca (*Long-Nose*). Dē Nāsīcā et Enniō haec fābula nārrāta est:

Scipio's son comes to visit Ennius. "Not at home."

"Nāsīca ad poētam Ennium vēnit, eīque ab ōstiō (*entrance*) quaerentī ancilla (*the maid*) dīxit Ennium domī nōn esse. Nāsīca autem sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dīxisse, et illum domī esse."

Nasica gets more than even.

"Paucīs post diēbus Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnit et eum ā iānuā (*front door*) quaesīvit. Exclāmāvit Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, 'Quid? ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?' Deinde Nāsīca, 'Homō es impudēns, ancillae tuae crēdidī dīcentī tē domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?'"

459. Gāius Iūlius Caesar

(102–44 B.C.)

Caesar's account of his campaigns is praised by Cicero.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar annōs novem [58–50 B.C.] in Galliā bellum gessit. In Britanniam bis (*twice*) nāvigāvit. Galliam omnem subēgit, Britanniae partem explōrāvit. Dē bellō Gallicō ipse librōs septem scrīpsit. Octāvum librum lēgātus nōmine Hirtius addidit. Caesaris "Commentāriōs" (*Commentaries*) Cicerō, summus ōrātor, in librō suō "Dē Clārīs Ōrātōribus" laudāvit.

The German menace.

Gallia erat omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. Incolae Galliae erant Belgae, Aquitānī, Celtae. (Hī omnēs linguā Latīnā Gallī appellābantur.) Fortissimī erant Belgae. Trāns Rhēnum erant variae (*various*) gentēs barbarae. Potentissima erat gēns Suēbōrum. Eius gentis prīncipem, nōmine Ariovistum, Arvernī et Sēquanī in Galliam invītāvērunt; bellum enim cum Aeduīs gerēbant. Ariovistus prīmum XV mīlia Suēbōrum in Galliam trādūxerat [71 B.C.], deinde multī barbarī in agrōs pulchrōs Gallōrum ēmigrāverant. Iam erant in Galliā CXX (centum et vīgintī) mīlia Suēbōrum, ubi Caesar eō per Alpēs contendit [58 B.C.].

Fēminīs lūgēre honestum est, virīs meminisse. (Tacitus)
It is seemly for women to mourn, for men to remember

CHAPTER LIV

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS · SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

FIRST SECTION

460. Preliminary Review. — 1. Write the Infinitives of **vocō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō**, with their meanings. 2. Review Indirect Discourse, and be prepared for oral and written work on **457**.

461. Indefinite Pronouns. — In contrast to *Demonstrative* pronouns (and adjectives), which indicate clearly, or *definitely*, the person or thing referred to, *Indefinite* pronouns (and adjectives), *e.g. some one, something* (adj. *some*), *any one, anything* (adj. *any*), do *not* indicate *definitely* the person or thing referred to.

The most important Indefinite pronouns are **aliquis** and **quīdam**. See page 324.

NOTE. — As the Interrogative pronoun **quis** (m. and f.), **quid** (n.), has special forms when used as an adjective, namely: **quī** (m.), **quae** (f.), **quod** (n.), so the Indefinite pronoun **aliquis** (m. and f.), **aliquid** (n.), has special forms when used as an adjective, namely: **aliquī** (m.), **aliqua** (f.), **aliquod** (n.).

After **sī** (*if*), **nisi** (*unless*), **nē** (*that . . . not* for Negative Purpose), and **num** (*whether*), the form of the Indefinite is usually **quis** (**quī**), m.; **qua** or **quae**, f.; **quid** (**quod**), n. Thus: **sī quis**, *if any one;* **sī quī hostēs**, *if any enemies;* **nē quis** (*that not any one*), *that no one;* **nē quī hostēs**, *that no enemies.*

462. Substantive *Quod*-Clauses. — In the English sentence, (*a*) That (or the fact that) you yourself are eager to

defend liberty will be (for) an example to others, the clause *that you yourself are eager to defend liberty* serves as the Subject of the main verb *will be*. This "Substantive clause," being felt by the speaker as a *fact*, has its verb in the *Indicative* mood. The example becomes in Latin: **Quod tū ipse lībertātem dēfendere studēs aliīs exemplō erit.** Here, as in English, the clause introduced by **quod**, *that*, *the fact that*, has its verb (**studēs**, *you are eager*) in the *Indicative* mood. A **Quod**-substantive clause may also serve as an Appositive, thus: (*b*) **Id aliīs exemplō erit, quod tū ipse lībertātem dēfendere studēs**, *This will be (for) an example to others*, (namely) *that* (or *the fact that*) *you yourself are eager to defend liberty.* Here the **Quod**-substantive clause explains **id**, the Subject of **erit**, hence the clause serves as an Appositive.

463. Rule. — A Substantive **Quod**-Clause of *fact* with the Indicative may itself be the Subject of a verb, or it may be used to explain some antecedent word.

464. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. That (*or* The fact that) I grieve over (because of) his death displeases many. 2. It[1] is (for) a great advantage (**magnō ūsui**) to us that we can be in school. 3. That (*or* The fact that) Caesar drove back Ariovistus, freed Gaul from great danger.

465. Substantive Volitive Clauses. — In English with verbs meaning to *urge*, *persuade*, *command*, etc., we generally use an Infinitive, as: (*a*) *My brother urges me to remain.* We may, however, say: (*b*) *My brother urges that I remain.* Here the clause *that I remain* states the *thing*

---

[1] "*It* often serves as grammatical subject merely to introduce the verb *is*, the real subject of the thought standing in the predicate." Kittredge and Farley, *Advanced English Grammar*, p. 58.

my brother urges, that is, *wills*. The clause is the Object of the main verb. Now we have found that the Volitive Subjunctive (**401**) is used in Latin to express something as *willed*, as: **Maneāmus**, *Let us remain!* (an exhortation); **Nē maneant**, *Let them not remain!* (a command). Accordingly we find with verbs meaning to *urge, persuade, command*, etc., a Substantive clause with the Subjunctive, as in (*b*), stating the action *willed* or *urged*, thus: 1. **Frāter meus hortātur ut maneam**, *My brother **urges** me to remain* (lit. *that I remain*). 2. **Frāter meus hortātus est ut manērem**, *My brother **urged** me to remain.* 3. **Frāter meus hortātus est nē manērem**, *My brother **urged** me not to remain.*



A Wall Painting from Herculaneum
(A Tragic Actor)

466. Rule. — In Latin, with verbs meaning to *urge, persuade, command*, etc., a Substantive clause with the Subjunctive is used to state the action *willed*. The clause is introduced by **ut**, if affirmative; by **nē** (sometimes by **ut** ... **nē**), if negative. The tense, as in English, is governed by the law of Sequence of Tenses (pp. 343–344).

467. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. He ordered (**imperō**) the soldiers to burn all the buildings of the town and to lead the boys away into slavery. 2. They could not persuade the leader to be kind to the captives. 3. The women begged the Germans not to burn their homes. 4. I wrote to my brother to buy me good books. 5. He will permit the soldiers to remain at home for a few days.

468. Substantive Result Clauses as Subject. — In the English sentence, *It happened that he remained at home*, the clause *that he remained at home* indicates the *result.* In the statement *it happened* the "expletive" *it* (cf. **expleō**, *I fill*) is used to "fill in" or supply temporarily the subject, but the real subject, according to the thought, is the clause *that he remained at home*, as if we said *that-he-remained-at-home happened.* This sentence becomes in Latin: **Accidit ut domī manēret.** The clause of result, therefore, really being used as the subject of a verb like a noun or substantive, is called a Substantive Clause of Result.

NOTE. — With **mōs est**, *it is the custom*, a Substantive Clause of Result may be used in apposition to explain **mōs**, thus: **Mōs erat Germānōrum ut captīvōs interficerent**, *It was the custom of the Germans*, (namely) *that they killed captives*, or *to kill captives.*

469. Substantive Result Clauses as Object. — In the English sentence, *Caesar brought it about that Ariovistus fled across the Rhine*, the clause *that A. fled across the Rhine* is the *thing* Caesar accomplished, that is, it expresses the *result of his efforts.* This becomes in Latin: **Caesar effēcit ut Ariovistus trāns Rhēnum fugeret.** The clause *that A. fled*, etc., while explaining the neuter pronoun *it*, is yet itself, in the thought, the real object of the main verb, as if we said *Caesar brought about that A. fled* (*the flight of A.*).

470. Rule. — Substantive Clauses of Result may be used as Subjects of certain impersonal verbs, such as **accidit**; they may stand as Appositives to nouns (*e.g.* **mōs**) and pronouns; they may be used as Objects of verbs of "making," such as **faciō, efficiō, perficiō.** (See pp. 343–344.)

471. **Exercise.** — Express in Latin: 1. It often happens that citizens fear war. 2. It never happened that I saw him in Rome. 3. Let us make bad citizens obey the laws. 4. It is the custom of good citizens to defend liberty. 5. He brought it about that the unfaithful citizens left the city (**discēdō** *w.* **ē** (**ex**) *and Abl.*).

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

472. *A.* 1. Sī quīdam ex nōbīs dē labōre querentur (*shall complain*), nihil efficiēmus; sīn cum cūrā dīligentiāque labōrābimus, brevī tempore summum collem occupābimus. 2. Vōs omnēs hortor nē quis iūdicet etiam servōs īnfrā sē esse apud (*with*) Deum. 3. Sī Caesar hās ad legiōnēs aliquid auxilī mīsit, possunt castra sua dēfendere; sī minus, Gallī eōs facile superābunt. 4. Mīlitēs postulant ut Caesar sibi permittat ut domum discēdant. 5. Mōs erat Gallīs ut cōgerent mercātōrēs dē regiōnibus suīs dīcere.



A Roman Horseman

B. 1. If any one goes (**accēdō**) to the end-of (**extrēmus, -a, -um**) the bridge, he will see the enemy's camp. 2. Unless the soldiers halt (**cōnsīdō**) near the walls of the town, the inhabitants will give them no provisions (**nihil commeātūs**). 3. Certain disloyal centurions brought it about that some legions did not fight bravely. 4. If my father is now in Italy, he has received my letter. 5. The fact that (**quod**) many were praising Cicero pleased him.

LATIN SELECTION

473. Gāius Iūlius Caesar (*Continued*)

The Romans called southern Gaul *Provincia.*

Cūr cōnstituit Caesar in Galliā bellum gerere? Necesse est prīmum pauca repetere. Galliae partem Rōmānī occupāverant postquam Poenōs vīcērunt et Hispāniam subēgērunt. Paulō post Massiliēnsēs (*the men of Marseilles*) auxilium



The Maison Carrée (the "Square House")

(A Roman temple at Nîmes in Southern France, built probably during the reign of Hadrian (117–138 A.D.). It is the best-preserved Roman temple in existence)

Rōmānōrum contrā barbarās gentēs quae in Alpibus habitābant petiērunt et iter praeter ōram maritimam (*coast*) dedērunt. Rōmānī oppida multa posuērunt, in primīs Narbōnem, in eā parte Galliae quam etiam prōvinciam appellāvērunt (nunc eam Gallī "Provence" appellant).

Cum barbarīs gentibus commercium habēbant et penetrābant (*penetrated*) in mediam Galliam.

The coming of Ariovistus.

Arvernī et Sēquanī, ut (*as*) dīximus, Ariovistum in Galliam invitāverant, quem tamen post breve temporis spatium ē Galliā expellere studēbant, quod pulcherrimōs agrōs Sēquanōrum occupāverat (quam partem Galliae nunc "Alsace" Gallī appellant).

The Helvetii plan to emigrate.

Helvētiī inter montēs ad lacum Lemannum (hodiē "Lake Geneva") incolēbant. Eōrum fīnēs erant angustī (*narrow*). Continenter (*continually*) cum Germānīs pugnābant, quī in agrōs eōrum ēmigrābant. Et Helvētiī ēmigrāre cōnstituērunt et, quod ūnum iter ē suīs fīnibus habēbant per Iūram montem, in animō habēbant per prōvinciam Rōmānam ēmigrāre. Prōvincia in magnō perīculō erat; Helvētiī enim ad mīlia CCC (trecenta) numerō erant.



The Meeting of Caesar and Ariovistus

CHAPTER LV

474. Vocabularies and Syntax. — Review Vocabularies LI–LIV. See Rules of Syntax, LI–LIV, page 342.

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters LI–LIV

475. 1. Oppidō expugnātō, ille lēgātus, quī erat vir crūdēlissimī animī, magnam incolārum partem dē mūrō in fossam dēicī iussit.



A Shepherd Boy Meets Caesar

2. Hunc annum rūrī maneāmus, nē laudis honōrumque videāmur (*seem*) cupidiōrēs.

3. Ubi hae legiōnēs sex mīlia passuum summā celeritāte iter fēcērunt, ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt; ibi, locō idōneō castrīs dēlectō, mīlitēs statim coepērunt fossam perdūcere atque vāllum novem pedēs altum exstruere.

4. Hodiē rēs pūblica nostra nōn lībera est timōre; utinam cōnsul illīs cīvibus īnfīdīs nē pepercisset!

5. Illō diē soror mea, cuius fīliōs bene cognōvistī, gravī aegritūdine Rōmam venīre nōn poterat; itaque litterās mīsī quibus eam dē meīs cōnsiliīs certiōrem facerem.

6. Tū fortasse (*perhaps*) putēs duōbus annīs Caesarem omnem Galliam pācātūrum esse, sed ego quidem dīcam hoc bellum futūrum esse multō longius.

7. Hic barbarus, vir ēgregiā fāmā, cui sunt multī agrī atque servī, ōlim nōbīs dīxit sē amōre lībertātis omnēs Rōmānōs magnopere superāre.

8. Bene scīs frātrī tuō multum nocērī ab hōc mercātōre; num eī ignōscēs?

9. Exīstimātisne hoc iter nōbīs esse tūtius illā viā quae est prope flūmen?

10. Nōnne comes rēgis sagittā prīncipis barbarī graviter vulnerātus est? Servus tuus ad eum cum aquā celeriter contendat.

LATIN SELECTION

476. Gāius Iūlius Caesar (*Continued*)

Caesar frees Gaul from Ariovistus.

Id ubi cognōvit Caesar, ad lacum Lemannum contendit. Paucīs mēnsibus Helvētiōs in eōrum fīnēs reppulit et Ariovistum superāvit. Barbarōs in fugam dedit. Quia Gallia perīculō līberāta est, prīncipēs omnium gentium Gallicārum Caesarī grātiās ēgērunt.

Caesar determines to make Gaul a Roman province.

Sēquanōrum oppidum maximum fuit Vesontiō (hodiē "Besançon"). Postquam ibi Caesar mīlitēs suōs in hībernīs conlocāvit, statim in prōvinciam contendit. Nunc prīmum mīlitēs Rōmānī in Galliā hiemābant. Caesar enim in animō habēbat nōn modo Galliam dēfendere sed etiam in prōvinciam Rōmānam redigere.

Lēgistīne libellum (*little book*) illum, *The Standard Bearer*, quī nārrat dē puerō quī cum Caesare in Galliā mīles fuit et aquilifer (*bearer of the eagle*) tandem fuit?

Librum optimum dē Caesare bibliothēca (*library*) nostra habet, *A Friend of Caesar*. Hōs librōs, cum poterimus, legēmus.

Homō sum : hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō. (Terence)
Human am I, and every human interest is mine

CHAPTER LVI

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -*ĪUS*

FIRST SECTION

477. Adjectives with Genitive in -*īus*. — The following *ten* adjectives (including **ūnus**, **221**) have in the Genitive singular **-īus**, in the Dative singular **-ī**; otherwise they are declined like **bonus.**

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone* (cf. "*un*ify).

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole, only* (cf. "*sol*itary").

ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*

álius, ália, áliud, *other, another,* pl. *others* (cf. "*ali*enate"). See page 320.

tōtus, -a, -um, *all, whole* (cf. "*tot*al").

nūllus, -a, -um (nē + ūllus), *no, none* (cf. "*null*ify").

álter, áltera, álterum, *the one (of two), the other (of two)* (cf. "alter").

úter, útra, útrum, *which (of two)?* interrogative.

neúter, neútra, neútrum, *neither (of two)* (cf. "neuter").

utérque, utráque, utrúmque, *each (of two), both,* Gen. **utrīúsque.**

NOTE. — The Genitive of **alter** is usually **altérīus**, and the Genitive of **uterque** is always **utrīúsque.** Poets often treat the **i** of the Genitive ending **-īus** as short (*e.g.* **ūnius**). In the Genitive and Ablative cases, **nūllus** is regularly used instead of **nēmō**, *no one, none.* Instead of the Genitive **alīus**, the Romans generally used **altérīus** ; instead of the Genitive, if Possessive, they used **aliēnus, -a, -um,** *of another, another's.*

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Decline carefully the singular of each of these ten adjectives. 2. Decline together **tōta urbs, aliud tempus, ego sōlus** (*pl.* **nōs sōlī**, etc.).

478. Special Uses of *Alius*. — In certain expressions forms of **alius** are repeated, thus: **Alius aliud laudat,** *One praises one thing, another (praises) another* (lit. *Another praises another thing*). This illustrates the use in the singular.

So also we have **Aliī alia laudant,** *Some praise some things, others (praise) other things* (lit. *Others praise other things*). This illustrates the use in the plural.

In the same way **alter** is repeated, thus: **Alter cōnsul Rōmae mānsit, alter in Hispāniam nāvigāvit,** *One consul remained at Rome, the other sailed to Spain* (lit. *The other consul remained, the other sailed*).

In the above examples the English idiom is very different from the Latin.

479. Exercises. — Translate: 1. Aliī dīvitiās petunt, aliī nōn petunt. 2. Aliī vēnērunt ut culpārent, aliī ut laudārent. 3. Barbarī aliī aliās in partēs fūgērunt Rhēnumque petiērunt. 4. Alterum discipulum laudat magister, alterum culpat. 5. Multī nihil aliud ac (*or* quam) pecūniam petunt.

480. VOCABULARY LVI

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
fortune, wealth	**fortūna**, **-ae**, *f.*	un*fortun*ate
interrupt, discontinue	**intermíttō, -míttere, -mīsī, -míssus**	*intermittent, intermission*
belonging to another	**aliēnus, -a, -um**	*alien, alienate*
some	**nōn nūllus, -a, -um**	
how many	**quŏt**[1] (*indecl. adj., interrog. and rel.*)	
so many	**tŏt**[1] (*indecl. adj.*)	
likewise	**ítem** (*adv.*)	*item, item*ize
for this reason	**proptéreā** (*adv.*)	

[1] The indeclinable adjectives **tot . . . quot**, or **quot . . . tot**, are translated *as many . . . as*, thus: **quot hominēs . . . tot sententiae,** *as many opinions as men.*

SECOND SECTION

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

481. *A.* 1. Nōn crēdam iūrī iūrandō ūllīus virī, quia iam saepe multī ex amīcīs meīs mihi graviter nocuērunt. 2. Aliā ratiōne pācem vōbīscum facere nōn poterāmus, propterea quod exīstimābāmus vōs agrōrum nostrōrum esse tam avidōs ut iam novī bellī causam peterētis. 3. Hic mīles ūnus (*or* sōlus) scit



The Pantheon at Rome, "The Westminster Abbey of Italy"

(The inscription means: "Built by Marcus Agrippa, son of Lucius, when consul for the third time")

neutrum ex illīs frātribus iam vīvere, quoniam illō diē in aciē cum eīs pugnābat. 4. Nōn nūllī ita vīvunt ut nōn videantur putāre virtūtem plūs posse quam fortūnam. 5. Sī dē tōtā rē dubitās, cūr timēs aliēna cōnsilia audīre?

B. 1. Since Caesar has ordered the other camp to be fortified, let us march thither at once. 2. You will find as many

(**tot**) languages in Gaul as (**quot**) there are races. 3. Our foot-soldiers fought so bravely that the enemy retreated; likewise our cavalry was so brave that the horsemen of the Gauls were compelled to discontinue the battle. 4. Each (of the two) generals was so eager for (**avidus**) praise and honor that the soldiers trusted neither. 5. No hope of victory now remained (**reliqua erat**), because we were surrounded by the enemy so that we were cut off from all supplies of grain.



Gods of Greece

From the Parthenon at Athens. The figures, from left to right, are Poseidon (Neptune), Apollo, and Artemis (Diana)

The Roman Religion[1]

(*Optional*)

482. The earlier religion of Rome was much modified by contact with the Greek religion, which in the main eventually

---

[1] The following books may be consulted: Bulfinch, *Age of Fable;* Gayley, *Classic Myths;* Murray, *Manual of Mythology; Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities.*

took its place, and the gods of the Romans largely became identified with those of the Greeks. There were twelve greater divinities presiding over the sky, earth, sea, and the various concerns of human life: *Jupiter* (Greek *Zeus*), king of the gods and ruler of the universe; *Juno* (Greek *Héra*), wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods; *Minerva* (Greek *Pállas Athéne*), daughter of Jupiter, goddess of wisdom, poetry, and the arts; *Neptune* (Greek *Poseídon*), god of the sea; *Mars* (Greek *Áres*), god of war; *Venus* (Greek *Aphrodíte*), goddess of beauty and love; *Apollo* (Greek *Apóllo*), god of the sun, archery, medicine, music, and poetry; *Diana* (Greek *Ártemis*), sister of Apollo, goddess of the moon, and of hunting; *Mercury* (Greek *Hérmes*), god of eloquence and of trade, messenger of the gods; *Ceres* (Greek *Deméter*), goddess of agriculture; *Vesta* (Greek *Hestía*), goddess of the home, and of the fire upon the hearth; *Vulcan* (Greek *Hephaéstus*), god of fire and the forge. Numerous temples and shrines were erected at which these gods were worshiped.

On the Capitoline hill was the magnificent *Temple of Jupiter, Juno,* and *Minerva*; it might be called "The Cathedral of Ancient Rome." (Cf. p. 81.)

Very important was the little *Temple of Vesta* (cf. p. 81) in the Forum, which was to the Roman State what the hearth was to the home; in it the holy fire burned perpetually, attended by the *Vestal Virgins.*

In the Forum was also the *Temple of Saturn* (the Roman treasury, or "Bank of Rome"). (Cf. p. 81.)

The *Pantheon* (cf. p. 292) in the Campus Martius was, as its name implies, the temple dedicated to all the gods.

The Head, or General Director, of the Roman Religion was called the *Pontifex Maximus* (a title to-day borne by the Pope). His residence was in the Forum beside the Temple of Vesta.

Ubi sōlitūdinem faciunt, pācem appellant. (Tacitus)
When they make a solitude, they call it "peace"

CHAPTER LVII

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

FIRST SECTION

483. Preliminary Review. — Review the Translation Exercises of **481** for oral and written work.

484. Indirect Questions. — A Direct question, as (1) *Where is my book?* **Ubi est liber meus?** may be quoted *verbatim* (*word-for-word*) and so indicated by quotation marks, thus: (2) *I asked him, "Where is my book?"* **Eum rogāvī, "Ubi est liber meus?"** or "*Where,*" *I asked him, "is my book?"* **"Ubi," eum rogāvī, "est liber meus?"**

If, however, the Direct question (1) is quoted, but not *verbatim*, it becomes an "Indirect" (*not-direct*) question, thus: (3) *I asked him where my book was*, **Eum rogāvī ubi liber meus esset.**

Here, both in English and in Latin, the subordinate clause introduced by the interrogative word (*where*, **ubi**) is used as the Object of the main verb.[1]

[1] Such a clause may also be used as the Subject of a verb, or as an Appositive (to explain a noun or pronoun), thus: (*a*) **Incertum est ubi liber meus sit**, *It is uncertain where my book is.* (*b*) **Id mihi dīxit, ubi ipse habitāret**, *He told me this*, (namely) *where he himself was living.*

The *particles* used to introduce single Indirect questions are: **-ne**, *whether*, **num** (without its negative force), and **an**, *whether*. Examples are: 1. **Rogat adsitne puer,** ***He asks*** *whether the boy is present.* 2. **Rogāvit num** (or **an**) **puer adesset,** ***He asked*** *whether the boy was present.*

NOTE. — In Latin in an Indirect question *the tenses are used exactly as in English.* In English the Indirect question usually has the Indicative. In Latin the *Subjunctive* must be used, but it is translated in English by the Indicative.[1]

485. Rule. — In Latin an Indirect question must be in the Subjunctive Mood. The tenses follow the law of Sequence of Tenses. (See pp. 343–344.)

486. Exercise. — Express in Latin the following Direct and Indirect questions: 1. What are you (*sing.*) doing? 2. Where (whither) are you (*pl.*) going? 3. When (**quandō**) will he return to Rome? 4. How far (**quam longē**) is the city from the sea? 5. I shall ask *whether* his father is well. 6. He asked me *whether* I praised the boy. 7. I do not know *whether* he intends to remain.

487. Alternative Indirect Questions — In a single Indirect question, *whether* is expressed by **-ne** or **num**, and **an**; in a Double (or "Alternative") Indirect question *whether . . . or* is expressed by **utrum . . . an**, or **-ne . . . an**, or . . . **an**. Thus: *He asked whether I praised or blamed* becomes: **Rogāvit utrum laudārem an culpārem,** or **Rōgavit laudāremne an culpārem,** or **Rogāvit laudārem an culpārem.** (See Sequence of Tenses, pp. 343–344.)

488. Exercise. — Express in Latin: 1. He asked me *whether* I had been in Rome. 2. He asks me *whether* I have been in

---

[1] A "potential verb phrase" is sometimes used in English also, as (*a*) *It is uncertain where my book may (can) be;* (*b*) *It was uncertain where my book might (could) be.*

Rome. 3. I asked him why (**cūr**) he hesitated to tell (**dīcere**) the truth (**vēra**). 4. I did not know who had written the letter. 5. He does not say whether his father or his mother has read the letter.

SECOND SECTION

489. VOCABULARY LVII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
custom, institution	**īnstitūtum, -ī,** *n.*	*institute*
put in place	**īnstítuō, -ere, -uī, īnstitūtus**	*institut*ion
forefathers, elders	**maiōrēs (nātū)**	*major, major*ity
district	**régiō, -ōnis,** *f.*	*region*
be ignorant of	**ignṓrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**	*ignore, ignorant*
go before, precede	**antecḗdō, -ere, -céssī, -cessūrus**	*antecedent*
be accustomed	**cōnsuḗscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus**	
look down on, despise	**dēspíciō, -ere, -spéxī, -spéctus**	*despic*able
small	**exíguus, -a, -um**	
early	**mātū́rus, -a, -um**	*mature*
how great	**quántus, -a, -um**	*quant*ity
old	**vétus,**[1] *m., f., n.,* **véteris**	*veter*an, in*veter*ate
old	**vetústus,**[1] **-a, -um**	
on (from) all sides	**úndique** (*adv.*)	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

490. *A.* 1. Gallī ignōrābant utrum Caesar ad plānitiem mīlitēs dēductūrus esset an in colle aciem iam īnstrueret. 2. Hic explōrātor nūntiābit quantus sit hostium exercitus et

[1] The Comparative of **vetus** is **vetustior** (from **vetustus**); the Superlative is **veterrimus**.

quās nāvēs colligere potuerint. 3. Omnēs huius regiōnis barbarī in nōs mittentur. Quis tamen, Caesare duce, calamitātem timet? 4. Amīcī mē rogāvērunt utrum ignōrārem quid facerem an cōnsuēvissem lēgēs cīvitātis dēspicere. 5. Utrum māter tua Rōmae nunc est an rūs iam discessit?

B. 1. The scout could not understand why the cavalry of the Gauls preceded our army. 2. The old man asked me whether I was accustomed to despise not only the customs of our forefathers, but also all things old. 3. Will Caesar place his battle-line near the river, or will he retreat to the woods? 4. We do not know whether my brother was killed in the battle, or was captured by the enemy. 5. Caesar asked whether Labienus had so placed his troops that the cavalry went-before the infantry.

491. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Select *seven* English words related to **colō**.



An Italian Lake

Et propter vītam vīvendī perdere causās. (Juvenal)
To lose for life's sake what makes life worth living

CHAPTER LVIII

GERUND · GERUNDIVE · PURPOSE PHRASES

FIRST SECTION

492. A Verbal Noun in English. — In the English sentence (1) *Fighting for liberty is glorious*, the subject *fighting* is a *verbal noun.*[1] A Verbal Noun is formed from a verb by adding *-ing*. If a verb is transitive, its Verbal Noun may have a direct object, thus: (2) *Reading good books gives wisdom.* In place of a Verbal Noun as subject of a verb we may use an Infinitive, thus: (1) *To fight for liberty is glorious;* (2) *To read good books gives wisdom.*

493. The Equivalents of an English Verbal Noun in Latin. — 1. THE GERUND. Latin verbs have in the *active voice* a Verbal Noun called the *Gerund.* It has no Nominative, and is found only in the singular. Its gender is *neuter.* The Gerund of **vocō** is: Gen. voc**ándī**, *of calling;* Dat. voc**ándō**, *for calling;* Acc. voc**ándum**, *calling;* Abl. voc**ándō**, *by calling.* The Nominative is supplied by the Infinitive, thus: (1) **Prō lībertāte pugnāre est clārum,**[2] *To fight* (or *fighting*) *for liberty is glorious.*

---

[1] We should carefully distinguish between a *verbal noun* and a Present Participle, which is a *verbal adjective* (e.g. *I found him reading*).

[2] The Infinitive is used as a *neuter* noun, hence the predicate adjective is **clārum** (neuter).

494. THE GERUNDS OF THE MODEL VERBS

	I	II	III (in -ō)	III (in -iō)	IV
Nom.	(vocāre)	(monēre)	(régere)	(cápere)	(audīre)
Gen.	**vocándī**	**monéndī**	**regéndī**	**capiéndī**	**audiéndī**
Dat.	**vocándō**	**monéndō**	**regéndō**	**capiéndō**	**audiéndō**
Acc.	**vocándum**	**monéndum**	**regéndum**	**capiéndum**	**audiéndum**
Abl.	**vocándō**	**monéndō**	**regéndō**	**capiéndō**	**audiéndō**

Observe. — The Gerund (Genitive) is formed by adding **-ndī** to the Present stem (verbs in **-iō** add **-endī** to the Present stem).

Suggestions for Study. — 1. Pronounce all forms of each Gerund, and give their meanings. 2. With the book closed, decline each Gerund from memory, *testing your speed.*

495. Examples of the Gerund. —

1. (Gen.) **Ars vīvendī,** *the art of living.*

2. (Dat.) **Idōneus monendō,**[1] (lit. *suitable for advising*) *suitable to advise.*

3. (Acc.) **Ad videndum vēnērunt,** (lit. *they came to,* or *for, seeing*) *they came to see,* or *for the purpose of seeing.*

4. (Abl.) **Agendō cognōscimus,** *we learn by doing.*

496. Rule. — The *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Active voice.* Its Nominative is supplied by the Infinitive. The Dative of the Gerund is not common.

497. II. THE GERUNDIVE. If a Future Passive Participle is used as an *attributive adjective* with a noun in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative case, the adjective often expresses the *leading idea* in the phrase, and is then called a Gerundive, thus: **Urbis videndae cupidī sumus** (lit. *we are desirous of the city to-be-seen*), which really means *We are desirous of seeing the city.*

---

[1] Instead of the Dative of the Gerund, **ad** with the Accusative is generally used, thus: **idōneus ad monendum,** *suitable to advise* (lit. *for advising*).

498. Examples of the Gerundive Phrase. —

1. (Gen.) **Spēs lībertātis dēfendendae,** *hope of defending liberty.*

2. (Dat).[1] **Vix hīs rēbus faciendīs tempus dăbātur,** *Time was hardly given to do these things,* or *for the doing* (of) *these things.*

3. (Acc.) **Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad Caesarem rogandum vēnērunt,** *The chiefs of the Gauls came to ask Caesar.*

4. (Abl.) **Caesarem dē Galliā dēfendendā rogāvērunt,** *They asked Caesar concerning the defense of Gaul.*

499. Rule. — The Gerund*ive* is an attribut*ive* adject*ive*, *passive* in meaning, used only with nouns in the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, or *Ablative* case. It is called a *Gerundive* because it *carries* the leading idea in the phrase; and is translated in English by a verbal noun with an object.



Thalia, the Muse of Comedy

(Thalia was one of the Nine Muses, the goddesses of music, poetry and learning. Beside her is such a mask as the comic actors wore, the large mouth serving as a megaphone)

Note. — 1. An English verbal noun with a direct object is usually expressed in Latin by a Gerundive phrase: the noun is put in its proper case, and the Gerundive adjective agrees with it. Thus, *hope of seeing the city* is expressed in Latin whose literal English is *hope of the city to-be-seen*, **spēs urbis videndae**.

2. *Intransitive* verbs governing the Dative (Chapter XLI) do not have a

[1] A Gerundive phrase in the *Dative* is not widely used; instead the Romans generally used **ad** with the Accusative of the noun and the Gerundive adjective in agreement with the noun.



Urania, the Muse of Astronomy

Gerundive, hence only the Gerund may be used, thus: **lēgibus pārendī causā**, *for the sake of obeying the laws.*

3. The *Gerund* of transitive verbs is often used with a direct object, if the object is a *neuter plural noun* (or pronoun or adjective), thus: **castra dēfendendī causā**, *for the sake of defending the camp*, or *to defend the camp.* The equivalent Gerundive phrase is: **castrōrum dēfendendōrum causā.**

500. The Gerund and Gerundive in Purpose Phrases. — Purpose may be expressed in Latin by **causā**, *for the sake (of)*, (*a*) with the Genitive of the Gerund, or (*b*) with the Genitive of a Gerundive phrase, thus: (*a*) **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city;* (*b*) **urbis videndae causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city.*

Purpose may also be expressed by **ad** with the Accusative (*a*) of the Gerund, or (*b*) with the Accusative of a Gerundive phrase, thus: (*a*) **ad videndum urbem**, *to see the city;* (*b*) **ad urbem videndam**, *to see the city.*

The Romans generally preferred a *Gerundive phrase* rather than a Gerund with an object.

SECOND SECTION

501. VOCABULARY LVIII

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
youth	**adulēscēns, adulēscéntis**, *m.*	*adolescent*
hill	**cóllis, cóllis**, *m.*	
supplies	**commeātus, -ūs**, *m.*	
wealth	**[ops], ópis**, *f.*	*op*ulent
use, experience	**ūsus, -ūs**, *m.*	*us*able, *us*age

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
bring up, furnish	**suppórtō, -āre,** *etc.*	*support*
carry across	**trānspórtō, -āre,** *etc.*	*transport*
increase	**aúgeō, -ēre, aúxī, aúctus**	*auc*tion
lie open, be obvious	**páteō, patēre, pátuī, —**	*patent*
narrow	**angústus, -a, -um**	*ang*uish
open	**apértus, -a, -um**	*aper*ture
short	**brévis,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*brev*ity, *brief*
several, very many	**complūrēs,** *m., f.,* **complūria,** *n.*	
noble, famous	**nōbilis,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*nobil*ity, ig*noble*
equal	**pār,** *m., f., n., Gen.* **pāris**	*par, par*ity
disgraceful	**túrpis,** *m., f.,* **-e,** *n.*	*turp*itude
so great	**tántus,**[1] **-a, -um**	*tant*amount
for-the-sake(-of)	**caúsā** (*after its Gen.*)	*cause, caus*al
rather, sooner	**pótius** (*Sup. adv.* **potíssimum**)	

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

502. *A.* 1. Caesar complūrēs adulēscentēs ad illud oppidum commeātūs inde ad castra Rōmāna trānsportandī causā mīserat. 2. Quod cōnsul noster tālibus in rēbus magnum ūsum habuit, omnia cōnsilia hōrum cīvium turpium nōbīs nunc patent. 3. Hic Gallus nōbilis Rōmam vēnit ad opēs augendās, quod putābat cōnsulēs sibi amīcissimōs futūrōs esse. 4. Via erat tam angusta atque tantus numerus equitum Germānōrum iam adpropinquābat ut subitō cōnstituerimus nōs ad proximōs collēs recipere. 5. Fortiter pugnandō haec legiō, quae ad castra dēfendenda remānserat, magnam fāmam obtinuit.



From a Roman Lamp
(Ornamented with the figure of Apollo, god of music and poetry, and that of a griffin, a fabulous monster, partly lion and partly eagle)

B. 1. I should call that Gallic leader our friend rather than our enemy, for already he has sent several old men to beg for

[1] **tantus . . . quantus**: *as great . . . as.* Cf. **tot . . . quot,** *as many . . . as.*

peace. 2. In an open place these Gallic horsemen are not equal to our cavalry, because they have been in arms a very short time. 3. These tribes, by bringing up supplies, helped (*lit.* gave help to) the Romans. 4. By sending all your cavalry to the bridge you will be able to capture both the island and the hill without great difficulty. 5. Many famous commanders have waged disgraceful wars for the sake of increasing their own fame.

503. Derivation Exercise, Type I. — Form from the verb root of **portō**, with different prefixes, five English verbs, and five nouns.



An Ancient German Home

LATIN SELECTION

504. The Suebi, the Largest Tribe of the Germans

Each canton furnishes 1000 warriors.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima (*most warlike*) Germānōrum omnium.

Hī centum pāgōs (*districts*) habēre dīcuntur. Ex eīs pāgīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt.

There is no private ownership of land among the Suebi.

Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt (*support*); hī annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed apud eōs nihil est prīvātī ac sēparātī (*separate*) agrī, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

Their food is mainly milk and meat.

Neque multum vīvunt frūmentō sed maximam partem (*for the most part*) lacte (*on milk*) atque pecore, et vēnandī (*hunting*) cupidī sunt; quae rēs et cibī genus et cotīdiāna exercitātiō (*daily exercise*) et lībertās vītae — nihil enim contrā voluntātem (*wish*) faciunt—immānem (*enormous*) corporum magnitūdinem efficiunt.

They wear the skins of animals.

Loca frīgidissima (*very cold*) incolunt; nūlla tamen vestīmenta habent praeter pellēs (*skins*); magna corporis pars est aperta. In flūminibus sē lavant (*bathe*).

They sell the spoils of war.

Suēbī continenter cum fīnitimīs gentibus bellum gerunt. Mercātōribus quae bellō cēpērunt vēnditant.

They do not import horses.

Gallī equīs dēlectantur et magnō pretiō equōs important. Suēbī vērō parvīs et dēfōrmibus (*unshapely*) equīs, quī apud eōs nātī sunt (*are raised*), ūtuntur (*use*). Hī equī parvī ex cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī labōris[1] sunt.

---

[1] **summī labōris**, (*capable*) *of very great endurance;* predicate Genitive of quality or description.

Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō. (From the Twelve Tables, quoted by Cicero)
Let the safety of the people be the supreme law

CHAPTER LIX

DEPONENT VERBS · ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENT VERBS · *CUM*-TEMPORAL CLAUSES · *CUM*-CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES · *CUM*-CAUSAL CLAUSES

FIRST SECTION

505. Deponent Verbs. — Numerous verbs are *Passive* in form, but *Active* in meaning (*e.g.* **hórtor,** *I urge*). These verbs are called *deponent*, because they *put aside* their Active forms; thus the principal parts of **hórtor** are: **hórtor,** *I urge*, **hortārī,** *to urge*, **hortātus sum,** *I urged*, or *I have urged.*

Deponent verbs, however, have *five Active* forms; thus the Active forms of **hórtor** are Present Participle, **hórtāns,** *urging;* Future Participle, **hortātūrus, -a, -um,** *about-to-urge;* Future Infinitive, **hortātūrus (-a, -um) esse,** *to-be about-to-urge;* Gerund, **hortándī,** etc., *of urging*, etc.; also the supine (not used in this book), **hortātum** (Acc.), **hortātū** (Abl.), *to urge.*

The Perfect Participle is Passive in form, but usually Active in meaning, thus: **hortātus, -a, -um,** *having-urged.*

NOTE. — Since the Perfect Participle of a Deponent verb is usually *Active* in meaning, it is used in the same way as the Perfect Active Participle in English, thus: **Hortātus mīlitēs Caesar signum dedit,** *Having-urged the soldiers, Caesar gave the signal.*

Deponent verbs have only *one* form with *Passive* meaning, the *Future Passive Participle*, thus: **hortándus, -a, -um,**

about-to-be-urged (*e.g.* **Mīlitēs hortandī sunt**, *The soldiers are about-to-be-urged*, or *The soldiers must be urged*).

506. Exercise. — Write the *five* forms with active meaning, and the *one* form with passive meaning, of each of the Deponent verbs in **507**, with the meanings. (See pages 337–338.)

507. VOCABULARY LIX

English Meanings	Latin Words	Related English Words
seem	**vídeor, -ērī, vīsus sum**	*vis*ible
follow	**séquor, séquī, secūtus sum**	*sequ*el
follow closely, overtake	**cōnsequor, -ī, cōnsecūtus sum**	*consequen*ce, *consecut*ive
pursue	**īnsequor, -ī, īnsecūtus sum**	
pursue closely	**pérsequor, -ī, persecūtus sum**	*persecute, pursue*
follow forth, escort	**prṓsequor, -ī, prōsecūtus sum**	*prosecute*
follow closely	**súbsequor, -ī, subsecūtus sum**	*subsequent*
talk, speak	**lóquor, lóquī, locūtus sum**	*eloquent*, **e***locution*
talk with, converse	**cólloquor, -ī, collocūtus sum**	*colloqu*ial
be born	**nā́scor, nā́scī, nā́tus sum**	*nat*al
nation, tribe, race	**nā́tiō, -ōnis,** *f.*	*nation*al
arise, rise	**órior, -īrī, órtus sum**	*orient, orient*al
allow, suffer	**pátior, pátī, pássus sum**	*patient, pass*ive
get possession of	**pótior, -īrī, potītus sum**	
start, set out	**prŏficīscor, -ī, prŏféctus sum**	
use, make use of	**ū́tor, ū́tī, ū́sus sum**	*u*tilize, *us*able
fear, respect	**véreor, -ērī, véritus sum**	re*vere*

SECOND SECTION

508. The Ablative with Certain Deponents. — *Five* Deponent verbs (and their compounds) are used with the Ablative: **ū́tor, frúor, fúngor, pótior,** and **vḗscor.** Thus: **Lībertāte fruimur**, *We enjoy liberty.*

NOTE. — Two of these, **fungor**, *I perform*, and **vescor**, *I feed upon*, are not used in this book; but the complete list should be learned now for future convenience.

509. ***Cum*-Temporal Clauses.** — A Temporal clause with **cum**, *when*, *while*, has the Indicative if the clause refers to *present* or *future* time. Thus: **Cum eum vidēbō (vīderō), rem tōtam expōnam,** *When I (shall) see* (or *shall have seen*) *him, I shall explain the whole matter.*

If the clause refers to *past* time, the Perfect Indicative is used to express the thought of the clause as a *fact* at a *definite* past time. Thus: **Cum equitātum hostium vīdērunt, nostrī in eōs impetum fēcērunt,** *When they saw the cavalry of the enemy, our (men) made an attack upon them.*

510. ***Cum*-Circumstantial Clauses.** — With the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses the **cum**-clause, especially in narration, regularly has the Subjunctive, if the clause is felt merely as giving an idea of the *circumstances* (not a past *fact* at a *definite* past time). It is then called a **Cum**-*circumstantial* clause. The Subjunctive mood expresses the clause as subordinate in the thought. Thus: **Cum Rōmae essem, Forum saepe vidēbam,** *When I was in Rome, I often saw the Forum.* Here the **Cum**-*circumstantial* clause may be translated: *when I was at Rome*, or *since I was at Rome*, or *being at Rome.*

511. ***Cum*-Causal Clauses.** — **Cum**, meaning *since*, *because*, introducing a Causal clause, has only the Subjunctive. Thus: **Cum in urbe sim, templum vidēre possum,** *Since (Because) I am in the city* (or *Being in the city*), *I can see the temple.* A **Cum**-*causal* clause is often best translated by a participial phrase.

NOTE. — In classical Latin the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses in a **cum**-clause are practically always in the Subjunctive, the clause being felt as *circumstantial.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

512. *A.* 1. Gallī cum iam auxiliō aliārum nātiōnum ūterentur, facile poterant complūribus oppidīs potīrī. 2. Ōrātor loquendō saepe maiōrem honōrem cōnsequī potest quam pugnandō imperātor. 3. Cum Caesar prīmā lūce ab hīs castrīs profectus esset, cōpiās Gallōrum trēs hōrās īnsecutūs est. 4. Postquam Labiēnus castrīs hostium est potītus, eōs ad flūmen Rhēnum fugientēs secūtus est. 5. Dux mīlitēs suōs hortābātur ad hostēs subsequendōs, ut quam prīmum vīrēs eōrum experīrētur.

B. 1. My brother will not allow me to use his sword. 2. Do you not respect the old man with whom I saw you conversing to-day? To me, indeed, he seems to be a most noble hero. 3. This sailor was born in those mountains, where the river Rhine rises. 4. Let us escort our father to the city gates, for the purpose of showing our affection. 5. The general, who in this battle was now using all the Roman forces, had sent Labienus to pursue the Gallic horsemen closely.



Pallas Athena, Protectress of Athens, Goddess of Wisdom and War

---

LATIN SELECTIONS

His Old Schoolmate

513. Vibius Curius in iūdiciō (*in court*) simulābat (*pretended*) dē annis aetātis suae; cui Cicerō respondit, "Tum, cum in scholā ūnā (*together*) erāmus, nōn erās nātus?"

514. The Sun Wins by Kindness

A traveler wraps his cloak about him.

Viātor iam iter factūrus paenulam (*cloak*) suam sūmpsit. Tempestātem verēbātur, nam autumnus incipiēbat, quō tempore tempestātēs subitō oriuntur.

"Hāc paenulā meā," inquit, "mē mūniam contrā tempestātēs, nubēs enim in caelō multās videō."

Both wind and sun strive to divest him of his cloak.

Eum ubi cōnspexit ventus, "Ille," inquit "paenulam suam sūmpsit et sē tūtum esse exīstimat. Nescit[1] mē ita vehementer (*violently*) flāre (*blow*) posse ut nēmō paenulam in corpore suō retinēre possit."

Tum sōl ventō dīxit, "Uter nostrum illīus paenulam celerius ēripere potest? Vīsne (*Do you wish*) experīrī? Tū incipe prior."

The wind tries force and fails.

Praemiō prōpositō, ventus, ut sibi praemium darētur, vehementissimē flāvit. Tumultum (*disturbance*) immānem fēcit et multa tēcta (*dwellings*) dēiēcit nāvēsque multās, quae in portū erant, perdidit.

Quam vehementissimē flāvit ventus; sed viātor paenulā suā, quam ad corpus pressam retinēbat, sē mūniēbat.

The sun tries kindness and wins.

Tum sōl rīsit et, nūbibus remōtīs, radiōs (*rays*) suōs in viātōrem iniēcit neque tōtam vim adhibēbat suam. Paulō post viātor sub paenulā sūdābat (*was sweating*) et eam dēposuit.

Moral.

Suāviter (*kindly*) agere plūs prōdest[2] quam fortiter (*forcibly*).

---

[1] **nésciō** : **ne** (negative prefix) + **sciō, 429.**

[2] **prṓsum, prōdésse, prṓfuī, prōfutū́rus** : **(prō + sum)** *bc of advantage, help.*

CHAPTER LX (Review)

Vocabularies and Syntax. — Review carefully Vocabularies LVI–LIX. See Rules of Syntax, LVI–LIX, pp. 342–343.

Sentences Illustrating Syntax in Chapters LVI–LIX

515. Be prepared for oral work.

1. Suēbī, quī bellandī et vēnandī cupidissimī erant, ūnō in locō colendī causā tam breve tempus remanēbant ut apud eōs nihil esset prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī.

2. Suēbī autem ūtēbantur parvīs equīs quī apud eōs sunt nātī; hōs cotīdiānā exercitātiōne efficiēbant ut essent summī labōris.



An Ancient Silver Dish
(Showing figure of Athena)

3. Rōmānī neutrī hōrum Gallōrum multum cōnfīdēbant, quod uterque vidērētur verērī cum Caesare ipsō colloquī.

4. Tunc nūllō certō ōrdine complūrēs legiōnēs ad hostēs persequendōs sunt profectae; aliae ad collem prōcessērunt ut castrīs eōrum potīrentur, aliae fugientēs equitēs etiam ad flūmen persecūtae sunt.

5. Haec nātiō semper tam bonā fortūnā ūsa est ut numquam longissimī bellī labōrēs ac dolōrēs passa sit.

6. Eō diē Caesar, exercitū in plānitiem apertam ēductō, celeriter aciem īnstrūxit, quia studēbat vim virtūtemque hostium quam prīmum experīrī.

7. Cornēlium potius quam Labiēnum Caesar mīsit ad hor-

tandōs mīlitēs propterea quod ille multō maiōrem in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēret.

8. Hic adulēscēns, quī mihi dīxit sē in Galliā nātum esse, Rōmam pervēnit frātris suī videndī causā.

9. Cum hic Gallus sīc loquerētur ut nōbīs omnibus vidērētur esse amīcus reī pūblicae Rōmānae, dīximus nōs lībenter[1] ūsūrōs esse commeātū quem ad castra nostra supportāverat.[2]

10. Ventus vehementissimē flandō paenulam viātōris ēripere nōn poterat; sōl autem benignē radiīs iniciendīs effēcit ut[3] brevī tempore paenula dēpōnerētur.

516. MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO
(106–43 B.C.)

"Rome's least mortal mind." Byron, *Childe Harold*.



Cicero

MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO, Rome's greatest orator and man of letters, was born in 106 B.C. and died in 43 B.C. He studied literature, philosophy, and law, both at home in Rome and abroad in Athens, looking forward to a career as an orator and statesman. By great speeches he steadily increased his reputation, was appointed to more and more important offices, and in 63 B.C. became consul.

At that time Catiline, an unprincipled Roman, was plotting to overthrow the government and to plunder and burn the city. Cicero discovered his con-

[1] **lībenter**, *gladly*.

[2] The relative clause is stated independently, and is not a part of indirect discourse; hence the Indicative is used.

[3] Result clause, but also a "Substantive clause" (**469**).

spiracy and in the senate assailed Catiline with such eloquent and fiery speeches that he drove him from Rome.

But Cicero had made enemies who at last drove him into exile. After his recall he employed the time to write important works upon eloquence and upon philosophy.

At all periods of his life his literary activity was very great, even outdoing the marvelous record of Sir Walter Scott; and few men have written so much of permanent value to the world.

In his last years he again took an active part in politics, first against Caesar in the great civil war, and then in defense of the liberties of Rome against Antony. The latter was roused to such anger that he sent soldiers to kill Cicero. The great orator died "looking steadily on his murderers." The words of the Emperor Augustus are his simple, but noble epitaph: "He was a good man, who dearly loved his country."

517. Cicero Thanks the Gods

Cicerō ipse in ōrātiōne prō Sullā habitā dīcit cōnsilium suum patriae servandae ā deīs sibi iniectum esse. Catilīna enim contrā rem pūblicam cōnsilia nefāria (*wicked*) cēperat. "Ō dī immortālēs," inquit Cicerō, "vōs ipsī incendistis tum animum meum cupiditāte cōnservandae patriae. Vōs āvocāstis[1] mē ā rēbus omnibus cēterīs et impulistis ad salūtem ūnam patriae meae. Vōs dedistis mentī meae clārissimum lūmen in tenebrīs[2] tantīs. Tribuam enim vōbīs ea quae sunt



Jupiter, "Father of Gods and Men"

[1] = **āvocā(vi)stis.**

[2] **ténebrae, -ārum,** f., *darkness* (cf. the church service called the *Tenebrae*).

vestra. Nec vērō dīcere possum mē in illā tempestāte reī pūblicae sine vestrō auxiliō Catilīnam eiusque cōnsilia oppressisse."

518. THE POET CATULLUS' TRIBUTE TO CICERO

Dísertíssime Rṓmulī́ nepṓtum,
Quót sunt quótque fuḗre, Mā́rce Túllī,
Quótque póst aliī́s erúnt in ánnīs;
Grā́tiā́s tibi máximā́s Catúllus
Ágit, péssimus ómniúm poḗta,
Tántō péssimus ómniúm poḗta
Quántō tū óptimus ómniúm patrṓnus.

'Tullius, of all the sons of royal Rome
That are, or have been, or are yet to come,
Most skilled to plead, most learned in debate —
Catullus hails thee, small as thou art great.
Take thou from him his thanks, his fond regards,
The first of patrons from the least of bards."

(J. E. S.)



A Coin of Carthage

LATIN SELECTIONS

519. THE GALLANT FOUR HUNDRED

The Carthaginian general

In Siciliā bellō Carthāginiēnsī[1] prīmō imperātor Poenus,[2] quī cum Rōmānīs proelium

[1] **Carthāginiēnsis, -e** : *Carthaginian.*
[2] **Poenus, -a, -um** : *Carthaginian,* "Punic."

plans a surprise. committere studēbat, locum proeliō idōneum occupāvit.

The Romans find all escape cut off. Postquam ad locum paulō post exercitus Rōmānus accessit, hostēs aliī in agmen dēcurrere (*to run down*), aliī omnēs exitūs Rōmānīs interclūdere parābant. Mīlitēs Rōmānī perpaucī erant et propter inīquitātem (*disadvantage*) locī summō in perīculō erant, quod omnibus locīs superiōribus occupātīs et itineribus interclūsīs parva erat spēs salūtis reliqua.

There is but one chance of saving the army. Ūnus ē tribūnīs, nōmine Q. Caedicius, ubi loca superiōra ab hostibus occupāta cōnspexit, ad cōnsulem accurrit. Ūnam esse spem salūtis ostendit. "Ad illum locum," inquit, "mīlitēs mittere necesse est" et minimum collem manū dēmōnstrāvit. "Ad illum collem occupandum sī quadringentōs mīlitēs contendere iubēbis, hostēs in eōs impetum facient. Interim, dum (*while*) nostrī impetum hostium sustinent, reliquum exercitum ex hōc locō ēdūcere poteris. Praeter hanc salūtis viam nūlla est. Illī quadringentī morte suā reliquum exercitum servābunt."

"Who will lead this forlorn hope?" Cōnsul respondit cōnsilium sibi audācissimum vidērī; "Sed istōs," inquit, "mīlitēs quis in mediōs hostēs dūcere audēbit?" Tribūnus dīxit, sī nēmō alius audēret (*should dare*), sē ūtī licēre ad id perīculum; sē ipsum vītam suam prō cōnsule et rē pūblicā datūrum esse.

The escape. Sīc servātus est exercitus Rōmānus.

520. Stories of Caesar

Caesar in the battle line. 1. Caesar, scūtō adreptō, quod ipse sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit mīlitēsque nōminātim (*by name*) hortātus signa īnferre (*to make an attack*) iussit.

Caesar asks about the Britons.

2. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

Caesar's voyage to Britain.

3. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi (*although*) in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs spectat, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit.

On reaching Britain, the eagle-bearer leaps from the ship.

4. "Dēsilīte, mīlitēs, nisi vultis (*are willing*) aquilam hostibus trādere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō (*shall have performed*)." Hoc cum aquilifer (*the eagle-bearer*) vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit.

(From Caesar's *Dē Bellō Gallicō.*)



The Conquering Roman Eagle



The Romans Come to Britain

APPENDIX

I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

(The chapter in which the declension, or conjugation, is presented is indicated by a Roman numeral; the section, by Arabic numbers.)

NOUNS

	First Declension (I)	Second Declension (III)		Second Declension in -er (IX)	
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
Nom.	terra, *f.*	hortus, *m.*	templum, *n.*	puer, *m.*	ager, *m.*
Gen.	terrae	hortī	templī	puerī	agrī
Dat.	terrae	hortō	templō	puerō	agrō
Acc.	terram	hortum	templum	puerum	agrum
Abl.	terrā	hortō	templō	puerō	agrō
	PLURAL	PLURAL		PLURAL	
Nom.	terrae	hortī	templa	puerī	agrī
Gen.	terrārum	hortōrum	templōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum
Dat.	terrīs	hortīs	templīs	puerīs	agrīs
Acc.	terrās	hortōs	templa	puerōs	agrōs
Abl.	terrīs	hortīs	templīs	puerīs	agrīs

For the Genitive and Vocative singular of nouns in **-ius**, and for the Genitive singular of nouns in **-ium**, see **38**.

Third Declension (Consonant Stems) (XII)

			SINGULAR		
Nom.	dux, *m. f.*	rēx, *m.*	obses, *m. f.*	mīles, *m.*	aestās, *f.*
Gen.	ducis	rēgis	obsidis	mīlitis	aestātis
Dat.	ducī	rēgī	obsidī	mīlitī	aestātī
Acc.	ducem	rēgem	obsidem	mīlitem	aestātem
Abl.	duce	rēge	obside	mīlite	aestāte
			PLURAL		
Nom.	ducēs	rēgēs	obsidēs	mīlitēs	aestātēs
Gen.	ducum	rēgum	obsidum	mīlitum	aestātum
Dat.	ducibus	rēgibus	obsidibus	mīlitibus	aestātibus
Acc	ducēs	rēgēs	obsidēs	mīlitēs	aestātēs
Abl.	ducibus	rēgibus	obsidibus	mīlitibus	aestātibus

Third Declension (Consonant Stems) (XIV)

			SINGULAR		
Nom	cōnsul, *m.*	legiō, *f.*	pater, *m.*	flūmen, *n*	tempus, *n.*
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	patris	flūminis	temporis
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	patrī	flūminī	temporī
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	patrem	flūmen	tempus
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	patre	flūmine	tempore
			PLURAL		
Nom	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	patrēs	flūmina	tempora
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	patrum	flūminum	temporum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	patribus	flūminibus	temporibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	patrēs	flūmina	tempora
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	patribus	flūminibus	temporibus

Third Declension (i-Stems) (XXXIII)

		SINGULAR		
Nom.	hostis, *m. f.*	nūbēs, *f.*	animal, *n.*	urbs, *f.*
Gen.	hostis	nūbis	animālis	urbis
Dat.	hostī	nūbī	animālī	urbī
Acc.	hostem	nūbem	animal	urbem
Abl.	hoste	nūbe	animālī	urbe
		PLURAL		
Nom.	hostēs	nūbēs	animālia	urbēs
Gen.	hostium	nūbium	animālium	urbium
Dat.	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus	urbibus
Acc.	hostēs (-īs)	nūbēs (-īs)	animālia	urbēs (-īs)
Abl.	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus	urbibus

Fourth Declension (XXXIX)

		SINGULAR	
Nom.	manus, *f.*	cornū, *n.*	domus, *f.*
Gen.	manūs	cornūs	domūs
Dat.	manuī (-ū)	cornū	domuī, domō
Acc.	manum	cornū	domum
Abl.	manū	cornū	domū, domō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	manūs	cornua	domūs
Gen.	manuum	cornuum	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	manibus	cornibus	domibus
Acc.	manūs	cornua	domūs, domōs
Abl.	manibus	cornibus	domibus

Fifth Declension (XLII)

SINGULAR

Nom.	**diēs**, *m.* (*f.*)	**rēs**, *f.*	**fidēs**, *f.*	**spēs**, *f.*
Gen.	**diēī**	**reī**	**fideī**	**speī**
Dat.	**diēī**	**reī**	**fideī**	**speī**
Acc.	**diem**	**rem**	**fidem**	**spem**
Abl.	**diē**	**rē**	**fidē**	**spē**

PLURAL

Nom.	**diēs**	**rēs**	(*lacking*)	**spēs**
Gen.	**diērum**	**rērum**		——
Dat.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**		——
Acc.	**diēs**	**rēs**		**spēs**
Abl.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**		——

ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declensions (VI, IX)

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Nom.	**bonus**, *m.*	**bona**, *f.*	**bonum**, *n.*	**līber**, *m.*	**lībera**, *f.*	**līberum**, *n.*
Gen.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bonī**	**līberī**	**līberae**	**līberī**
Dat.	**bonō**	**bonae**	**bonō**	**līberō**	**līberae**	**līberō**
Acc.	**bonum**	**bonam**	**bonum**	**līberum**	**līberam**	**līberum**
Abl.	**bonō**	**bonā**	**bonō**	**līberō**	**līberā**	**līberō**
	PLURAL			PLURAL		
Nom.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**	**līberī**	**līberae**	**lībera**
Gen.	**bonōrum**	**bonārum**	**bonōrum**	**līberōrum**	**līberārum**	**līberōrum**
Dat.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**
Acc.	**bonōs**	**bonās**	**bona**	**līberōs**	**līberās**	**lībera**
Abl.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	**aeger**, *m.*	**aegra**, *f.*	**aegrum**, *n.*	**aegrī**, *m.*	**aegrae**, *f.*	**aegra**, *n.*
Gen.	**aegrī**	**aegrae**	**aegrī**	**aegrōrum**	**aegrārum**	**aegrōrum**
Dat.	**aegrō**	**aegrae**	**aegrō**	**aegrīs**	**aegrīs**	**aegrīs**
Acc.	**aegrum**	**aegram**	**aegrum**	**aegrōs**	**aegrās**	**aegra**
Abl.	**aegrō**	**aegrā**	**aegrō**	**aegrīs**	**aegrīs**	**aegrīs**

Third Declension Adjectives (XXXIV)

(With Three Forms) — (With Two Forms)

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
				m. f.		*n.*
Nom.	ācer, *m.*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	facilis		facile
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris		facilis	
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		facilī	
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	facilem		facile
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		facilī	
	PLURAL			PLURAL		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	facilēs		facilia
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium		facilium	
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus		facilibus	
Acc.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	facilēs (-īs)		facilia
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus		facilibus	

(With One Form)

	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
	m. f.	*n.*	*m. f.*	*n.*
Nom.	audāx		prūdēns	
Gen.	audācis		prūdentis	
Dat.	audācī		prūdentī	
Acc.	audācem	audāx	prūdentem	prūdēns
Abl.	audācī		prūdentī	
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
Gen.	audācium		prūdentium	
Dat.	audācibus		prūdentibus	
Acc.	audācēs (-īs)	audācia	prūdentēs (-īs)	prūdentia
Abl.	audācibus		prūdentibus	

Irregular Adjectives (LVI)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	alius, *m.*	alia, *f.*	aliud, *n.*	aliī, *m.*	aliae, *f.*	alia, *n.*
Gen.	[alīus	alīus	alīus]	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	IN SINGULAR			IN PLURAL ONLY		
Nom.	**ūnus**, *m.*	**ūna**, *f.*	**ūnum**, *n.*	**duo**, *m.*	**duae**, *f.*	**duo**, *n.*
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**duōs** (duo)	**duās**	**duo**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

Cardinal Adjectives (XXIV, XLIII)

	IN PLURAL ONLY		PLURAL
	m. f.	*n.*	
Nom.	**trēs**	**tria**	**mīlia**[1]
Gen.	**trium**		**mīlium**
Dat.	**tribus**		**mīlibus**
Acc.	**trēs** (-**īs**)	**tria**	**mīlia**
Abl.	**tribus**		**mīlibus**

Comparison of Adjectives (Regular) (XXII, XXXIV)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus, -a, -um	**lātior, -ius**	**lātissimus, -a, -um**
līber, -a, -um	**līberior, -ius**	**līberrimus, -a, -um**
aeger, aegra, aegrum	**aegrior, -ius**	**aegerrimus, -a, -um**
fortis, -e	**fortior, -ius**	**fortissimus, -a, -um**
similis, -e	**similior, -ius**	**simillimus, -a, -um**
audāx	**audācior, -ius**	**audācissimus, -a, -um**
ācer, ācris, ācre	**ācrior, -ius**	**ācerrimus, -a, -um**

Comparison of Adjectives (Irregular) (XXXVI)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um	**melior, -ius**	**optimus, -a, -um**
malus, -a, -um	**peior, -ius**	**pessimus, -a, -um**
magnus, -a, -um	**maior, -ius**	**maximus, -a, -um**
parvus, -a, -um	**minor, -us**	**minimus, -a, -um**
multus, -a, -um	——, **plūs**	**plūrimus, -a, -um**

Comparison of Adverbs (Regular) (XXII, XXXVI)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē	**lātius**	**lātissimē**
līberē	**līberius**	**līberrimē**
aegrē	**aegrius**	**aegerrimē**
fortiter	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
similiter	**similius**	**simillimē**
ācriter	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**

[1] **mīlle**, *a thousand* (indecl.); **mīlia** (**mīllia**), *thousands* (a noun).

Comparison of Adverbs (Irregular) (XXXVI)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
parum	minus	minimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum

Declension of the Comparative (XXII)

	SINGULAR *m. f.*	SINGULAR *n.*	PLURAL *m. f.*	PLURAL *n.*
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris		altiōrum	
Dat.	altiōrī		altiōribus	
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs (-īs)	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre		altiōribus	

NUMERALS

See Chapters XXIV (Cardinal numerals *One* to *Twenty*, Ordinal numerals *First* to *Twentieth*) and XLIII (Cardinal numerals above *Twenty*).

PRONOUNS

Personal (and Reflexive) (XXI) — Reflexive (Third Person) (XXI)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR AND PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	——
Gen.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	sē (sēsē)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	tū	vōs
Gen.	tuī	vestrum (vestrī)
Dat.	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	tē	vōs
Abl.	tē	vōbīs

Intensive (XXI)

SINGULAR

Nom.	ipse, *m.*	ipsa, *f.*	ipsum, *n.*
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural (like **bonus**, VI)

Demonstratives (XXIII)

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Nom.	is, *m.*	ea, *f.*	id, *n.*	īdem, *m.*	eădem, *f.*	ĭdem, *n.*
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	ĭdem
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
Nom.	eī (iī)	eae	ea	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	eădem
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eădem
Abl.	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Nom.	hic, *m.*	haec, *f.*	hoc, *n.*	ille, *m.*	illa, *f.*	illud, *n.*
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

	Relative (XXVIII)			Interrogative (XXIII)		
	SINGULAR			SINGULAR (adj. forms in parentheses)		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quis (quī), *m.*	(quae), *f.*	quid (quod), *n*
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	(cuius)	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	cui	(cui)	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quō	(quā)	quō

PLURAL (Relative and Interrogative)

Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite (LIV)

SINGULAR

Nom.	aliquis (aliquī), *m.*	aliqua, *f.*	aliquid (aliquod), *n.*
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

Nom.	quīdam, *m.*	quaedam, *f.*	quiddam (quoddam), *n.*
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quōrundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

INDICATIVE

Active			Passive	
(II)		*Present*	(XVII)	
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
vocō	vocāmus		vocor	vocāmur
vocās	vocātis		vocāris (-re)	vocāminī
vocat	vocant		vocātur	vocantur
(VII)		*Imperfect*	(XVII)	
vocābam	vocābāmus		vocābar	vocābāmur
vocābās	vocābātis		vocābāris (-re)	vocābāminī
vocābat	vocābant		vocābātur	vocābantur
(VII)		*Future*	(XVII)	
vocābō	vocābimus		vocābor	vocābimur
vocābis	vocābitis		vocāberis (-re)	vocābiminī
vocābit	vocābunt		vocābitur	vocābuntur
(IV)		*Perfect*	(XVIII)	
vocāvī	vocāvimus		vocātus (-a, -um) sum	vocātī (-ae, -a) sumus
vocāvistī	vocāvistis		es	estis
vocāvit	vocāvērunt (-ēre)		est	sunt
(VIII)		*Pluperfect*	(XVIII)	
vocāveram	vocāverāmus		vocātus (-a, -um) eram	vocātī (-ae, -a) erāmus
vocāverās	vocāverātis		erās	erātis
vocāverat	vocāverant		erat	erant
(VIII)		*Future Perfect*	(XVIII)	
vocāverō	vocāverimus		vocātus (-a, -um) erō	vocātī (-ae, -a) erimus
vocāveris	vocāveritis		eris	eritis
vocāverit	vocāverint		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE (XLVII)

Active		Passive	
		Present	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
vocem	vocēmus	vocer	vocēmur
vocēs	vocētis	vocēris (-re)	vocēminī
vocet	vocent	vocētur	vocentur
		Imperfect	
vocārem	vocārēmus	vocārer	vocārēmur
vocārēs	vocārētis	vocārēris (-re)	vocārēminī
vocāret	vocārent	vocārētur	vocārentur
		Perfect	
vocāverim	vocāverīmus	vocātus (-a, -um) sim	vocātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
vocāverīs	vocāverītis	sīs	sītis
vocāverit	vocāverint	sit	sint
		Pluperfect	
vocāvissem	vocāvissēmus	vocātus (-a, -um) essem	vocātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
vocāvissēs	vocāvissētis	essēs	essētis
vocāvisset	vocāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE (LI)

Active		Passive	
		Present	
2. vocā	2. vocāte	2. vocāre	2. vocāminī

INFINITIVE (LIII)

Active		Passive
vocāre	*Present*	vocārī
vocātūrus (-a, -um) esse	*Future*	[vocātum īrī]
vocāvisse	*Perfect*	vocātus (-a, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES (LII)

Active		Passive
vocāns, -antis	*Present*	————
vocātūrus, -a, -um	*Future*	vocandus, -a, -um
————	*Perfect*	vocātus, -a, -um

GERUND (LVIII)

Gen.	vocandī
Dat.	vocandō
Acc.	vocandum
Abl.	vocandō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

INDICATIVE

Active (XI) — **Passive (XIX)**

Present

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re)	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

Imperfect

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

monuī	monuimus	monitus (-a, -um) sum	monitī (-ae, -a) sumus
monuistī	monuistis	es	estis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt

Future Perfect

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (-a, -um) eram	monitī (-ae, -a) erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	erās	erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant

Pluperfect

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um) erō	monitī (-ae, -a) erimus
monueris	monueritis	eris	eritis
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE (XLVIII)

Active — **Passive**

Present

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus (-a, -um) sim	monitī (-ae, -a) sīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis	sīs	sītis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus (-a, -um) essem	monitī (-ae, -a) essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	essēs	essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE (LI)

Present

2. monē 2. monēte 2. monēre 2. monēminī

INFINITIVE (LIII)

Active		Passive
monēre	*Present*	monērī
monitūrus (a, -um) esse	*Future*	[monitum īrī]
monuisse	*Perfect*	monitus (-a, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES (LII)

monēns, -entis	*Present*	————
monitūrus, -a, -um	*Future*	monendus, -a, -um
————	*Perfect*	monitus, -a, -um

GERUND (LVIII)

Gen. monendī
Dat. monendō
Acc. monendum
Abl. monendō

THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE (XVI) PASSIVE (XXI)

Present

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
regō	**regimus**	**regor**	**regimur**
regis	**regitis**	**regeris (-re)**	**regiminī**
regit	**regunt**	**regitur**	**reguntur**

Imperfect

regēbam	**regēbāmus**	**regēbar**	**regēbāmur**
regēbās	**regēbātis**	**regēbāris (-re)**	**regēbāminī**
regēbat	**regēbant**	**regēbātur**	**regēbantur**

Future

regam	**regēmus**	**regar**	**regēmur**
regēs	**regētis**	**regēris (-re)**	**regēminī**
reget	**regent**	**regētur**	**regentur**

Perfect

rēxī	**rēximus**	**rēctus (-a, -um)** sum	**rēctī (-ae, -a)** sumus
rēxistī	**rēxistis**	es	estis
rēxit	**rēxērunt (-ēre)**	est	sunt

Pluperfect

rēxeram	**rēxerāmus**	**rēctus (-a, -um)** eram	**rēctī (-ae, -a)** erāmus
rēxerās	**rēxerātis**	erās	erātis
rēxerat	**rēxerant**	erat	erant

Future Perfect

rēxerō	**rēxerimus**	**rēctus (-a, -um)** erō	**rēctī (-ae, -a)** erimus
rēxeris	**rēxeritis**	eris	eritis
rēxerit	**rēxerint**	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE (XLIX)

Present

regam	**regāmus**	**regar**	**regāmur**
regās	**regātis**	**regāris (-re)**	**regāminī**
regat	**regant**	**regātur**	**regantur**

Imperfect

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
regerem	**regerēmus**	**regerer**	**regerēmur**
regerēs	**regerētis**	**regerēris (-re)**	**regerēminī**
regeret	**regerent**	**regerētur**	**regerentur**

Perfect

rēxerim	**rēxerīmus**	rēctus (-a, -um) sim	rēctī (-ae, -a) sīmus
rēxerīs	**rēxerītis**	sīs	sītis
rēxerit	**rēxerint**	sit	sint

Pluperfect

rēxissem	**rēxissēmus**	rēctus (-a, -um) essem	rēctī (-ae, -a) essēmus
rēxissēs	**rēxissētis**	essēs	essētis
rēxisset	**rēxissent**	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE (LI)

Present

2. **rege** 2. **regite** 2. **regere** 2. **regiminī**

INFINITIVE (LIII)

regere	*Present*	**regī**
rēctūrus (-a, -um) esse	*Future*	[rēctum īrī]
rēxisse	*Perfect*	**rēctus** (-a, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES (LII)

regēns, -entis	*Present*	————
rēctūrus, -a, -um	*Future*	**regendus, -a, -um**
————	*Perfect*	**rēctus, -a, -um**

GERUND (LVIII)

Gen. **regendī**
Dat. **regendō**
Acc. **regendum**
Abl. **regendō**

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE (XXVI)

Present

Active Singular	Active Plural	Passive Singular	Passive Plural
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

Perfect

cēpī	cēpimus	captus (-a, -um) sum	captī (-ae, -a) sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis	es	estis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus	captus (-a, -um) eram	captī (-ae, -a) erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	erās	erātis
cēperat	cēperant	erat	erant

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus	captus (-a, -um) erō	captī (-ae, -a) erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	eris	eritis
cēperit	cēperint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE (XLIX)

Present

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperīmus	captus (-a, -um) sim	captī (-ae, -a) sīmus
cēperīs	cēperītis	sīs	sītis
cēperit	cēperint	sit	sint

Pluperfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus (-a, -um) essem	captī (-ae, -a) essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	essēs	essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE (LI)

Present

2. cape	2. capite	2. capere	2. capiminī

INFINITIVE (LIII)

capere	*Present*	capī
captūrus (-a, -um) esse	*Future*	[captum īrī]
cēpisse	*Perfect*	captus (-a, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES (LII)

capiēns, -ientis	*Present*	————
captūrus, -a, -um	*Future*	capiendus, -a, -um
————	*Perfect*	captus, -a, -um

GERUND (LVIII)

Gen. capiendī
Dat. capiendō
Acc. capiendum
Abl. capiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

INDICATIVE

Active (XXXI) — Passive (XXXII)

Present

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audiō	**audīmus**	**audior**	**audīmur**
audīs	**audītis**	**audīris** (-re)	**audīminī**
audit	**audiunt**	**audītur**	**audiuntur**

Imperfect

audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audiēbar**	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbāris** (-re)	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audiēbātur**	**audiēbantur**

Future

audiam	**audiēmus**	**audiar**	**audiēmur**
audiēs	**audiētis**	**audiēris** (-re)	**audiēminī**
audiet	**audient**	**audiētur**	**audientur**

Perfect

audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audītus** (-a, -um)	sum	**audītī** (-ae, -a)	sumus
audīvistī	**audīvistis**		es		estis
audīvit	**audīvērunt** (-ēre)		est		sunt

Pluperfect

audīveram	**audīverāmus**	**audītus** (-a, -um)	eram	**audītī** (-ae, -a)	erāmus
audīverās	**audīverātis**		erās		erātis
audīverat	**audīverant**		erat		erant

Future Perfect

audīverō	**audīverimus**	**audītus** (-a, -um)	erō	**audītī** (-ae, -a)	erimus
audīveris	**audīveritis**		eris		eritis
audīverit	**audīverint**		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE (XLIX)

Present

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus (-a, -um)	sim	audītī (-ae, -a)	sīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus (-a, -um)	essem	audītī (-ae, -a)	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE (LI)

2. audī	2. audīte	2. audīre	2. audīminī

INFINITIVE (LIII)

audīre	*Present*	audīrī
audītūrus (-a, -um) esse	*Future*	[audītum īrī]
audīvisse	*Perfect*	audītus (-a, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES (LII)

audiēns, -ientis	*Present*	———
audītūrus, -a, -um	*Future*	audiendus, -a, -um
———	*Perfect*	audītus, -a, -um

GERUND (LVIII)

Gen.	audiendī	*Acc.*	audiendum
Dat.	audiendō	*Abl.*	audiendō

IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE (XLVII)	
(II)		*Present*		
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
sum	**sumus**		**sim**	**sīmus**
es	**estis**		**sīs**	**sītis**
est	**sunt**		**sit**	**sint**
(VII)		*Imperfect*		
eram	**erāmus**		**essem**	**essēmus**
erās	**erātis**		**essēs**	**essētis**
erat	**erant**		**esset**	**essent**
(VII)		*Future*		
erō	**erimus**			
eris	**eritis**			
erit	**erunt**			
(IV)		*Perfect*		
fuī	**fuimus**		**fuerim**	**fuerīmus**
fuistī	**fuistis**		**fuerīs**	**fuerītis**
fuit	**fuērunt (-ēre)**		**fuerit**	**fuerint**
(VIII)		*Pluperfect*		
fueram	**fuerāmus**		**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fuerās	**fuerātis**		**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerat	**fuerant**		**fuisset**	**fuissent**
(VIII)		*Future Perfect*		
fuerō	**fuerimus**			
fueris	**fueritis**			
fuerit	**fuerint**			

IMPERATIVE (LI)

Present

[*Singular*: 2. es — *Plural*: 2. este]

INFINITIVE (LIII)		PARTICIPLE (LII)
esse	*Present*	———
fuisse	*Perfect*	———
futūrus (-a, -um) esse	*Future*	futūrus, -a, -um

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, ———**

INDICATIVE (IX)		SUBJUNCTIVE (XLVIII)	
	Present		
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
	Imperfect		
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent
	Future		
poterō	poterimus		
poteris	poteritis		
poterit	poterunt		
	Perfect		
potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
potuistī	potuistis	potuerīs	potuerītis
potuit	potuērunt (-ēre)	potuerit	potuerint
	Pluperfect		
potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
potuerās	potuerātis	potuissēs	potuissētis
potuerat	potuerant	potuisset	potuissent
	Future Perfect		
potuerō	potuerimus		
potueris	potueritis		
potuerit	potuerint		

INFINITIVE (LIII)

Present pos**se** *Perfect* potu**isse**

PARTICIPLE (LII)

Present **potēns, -entis** (used as adjective), *powerful*

DEPONENT VERBS (LIX)

PRINCIPAL PARTS:				
	hortor,	**hortārī,**	**hortātus sum**	(1st Conj.)
	vereor,	**verērī,**	**veritus sum**	(2d Conj.)
	sequor,	**sequī,**	**secūtus sum**	(3d Conj.)
	patior,	**patī,**	**passus sum**	(3d Conj. -iō)
	experior,	**experīrī,**	**expertus sum**	(4th Conj.)

INDICATIVE

Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	patior	experior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	pateris (-re)	experīris (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	patitur	experītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	patimur	experīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	patiminī	experīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	experiuntur
Imp.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	experiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	experiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	expertus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	expertus eram
Fut. Perf.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	expertus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	patiar	experiar
Imp.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	experīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	expertus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	expertus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	patere	experīre

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**hortārī**	**verērī**	**sequī**	**patī**	**experīrī**
Perf.	**hortātus** esse	**veritus** esse	**secūtus** esse	**passus** esse	**expertus** esse
Fut.	**hortātūrus** esse	**veritūrus** esse	**secūtūrus** esse	**passūrus** esse	**expertūrus** esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**hortāns**	**verēns**	**sequēns**	**patiēns**	**experiēns**
Fut.	**hortātūrus**	**veritūrus**	**secūtūrus**	**passūrus**	**expertūrus**
Perf. Act.	**hortātus**	**veritus**	**secūtus**	**passus**	**expertus**
Fut. Pass.	**hortandus**	**verendus**	**sequendus**	**patiendus**	**experiendus**

GERUND

hortandī, etc.	**verendī**, etc.	**sequendī**, etc.	**patiendī**, etc.	**experiendī**, etc.

II. RULES OF SYNTAX

(These Rules are arranged in the order of their occurrence. The Roman numerals refer to the chapters; the sections are given in parentheses.)

I. 1. The *Subject* of a verb is in the Nominative case (**18–19**).

2. The *Direct Object* of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case (**18–19**).

3. A verb agrees with its Subject in person and number (**18–19**).

4. The Genitive is used with a noun to indicate the possessor and is then called a *Possessive Genitive.* It is equivalent to the English Possessive case (**18–19**).

II. The *Indirect Object* of a verb is in the Dative case (**29**).

III. In Latin, as in English, a noun in the predicate describing the subject, and *denoting the same person or thing,* agrees with the subject in case, and is called a *Predicate Noun* (**41–42**).

IV. In Latin the *Perfect Indicative,* like the English *Past tense,* may express an action or state as in the past; like the English *Present Perfect,* it may express an action or state as completed at the present (the time of speaking) (**46–47**).

VI. An attributive adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number,* and *case.* A predicate adjective agrees with the word to which it refers in *gender, number,* and *case* (**59–60**).

VII. 1. Like the English "Past Progressive," the Latin Imperfect Indicative expresses the action as *going on* at a past time (**71**).

2. In Latin, as in English, a *noun used to describe another noun*, in the same part of the sentence, and *denoting the same person or thing*, agrees with that noun in case, and is called an Appositive (**78–79**).

3. *Means* or *Instrument* is expressed in Latin by the Ablative *without a preposition* (**80–81**).

IX. In Latin, as in English, an infinitive is used with verbs meaning to *be able*, *wish*, *dare*, *begin*, etc., to complete their meaning. Such an infinitive is called a *Complementary Infinitive* (**102–103**).

XI. Accompaniment or Association is expressed in Latin by a prepositional phrase, **cum** with the Ablative (**114–115**).

XII. 1. In Latin *Time When* or *Within Which* is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition (**123–124**).

2. In Latin the *Duration of Time* is expressed by the Accusative without a preposition. For emphasis on the duration of time as uninterrupted (English "throughout") **per**, *through*, *throughout*, with the Accusative is used (**125–126**).

XVII. Agency with a verb in the Passive voice is expressed in Latin by a prepositional phrase (**ā** or **ab** with the Ablative), just as in English by an equivalent phrase (**158–159**).

XXII. 1. In comparisons, if **quam**, *than*, is expressed, the things compared are in the same case (the same usage in Latin as in English) (**204–205**).

2. In comparisons, if **quam**, *than*, is omitted, the second thing compared is put in the Ablative case, which preferably comes before the Comparative (**206–207**).

XXVIII. In Latin a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *person*, and *number*, but its *case* is determined by its use in the Relative clause (**241–242**).

XXIX. 1. A Temporal clause introduced by **postquam**, *after*, or **ubi**, *when*, if it refers to *past* time, generally has the Perfect Indicative, which is often translated by the English "Past Perfect" (**247–248**).

2. A Temporal clause introduced by **dum**, *while*, if it refers to *past* time, regularly has the "vivid Present" Indicative, which is usually translated by the English "Past Progressive" (**247–248**).

3. A Causal clause introduced by **quod** or **quia**, *because*, has the Indicative to assert the reason as a fact (**249–250**).

XXXI. Cause is expressed in Latin by the *Ablative alone;* by **ob** or **propter** with the *Accusative;* by **ē (ex)** or **dē** with the *Ablative* (**263–264**).

XXXII. The Ablative *without a preposition*, used to specify *in what respect* the statement is made, is called the *Ablative of Specification* (**272–273**).

XXXIII. The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative with **cum**; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective (or limiting Genitive) is used with the noun expressing manner (**281–282**).

XXXIV. In Latin the Measure or Degree of Difference is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition (**291–292**).

XXXVII. The Dative of Reference is used with certain adjectives to indicate that *to which* the quality expressed by the adjective is directed or referred (**312–313**).

XXXVIII. Actual Separation or removal is regularly expressed in Latin by **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, **dē**, with the Ablative; but if the separation is *figurative* (not actual), the Ablative is used *without* a preposition (**319–320**).

XXXIX. The Dative of the Possessor is used with the verb **sum**, the thing possessed being the subject (**327–328**).

XLI. Certain verbs which are transitive in English are *intransitive* in Latin, and the English object becomes in Latin a *Dative of the Indirect Object.* In the Passive these verbs are used *only impersonally*, and the English subject is expressed in Latin by the *Dative* (**336–337**).

XLIII. 1. *Place-from-which* is expressed by **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, or **dē** with the Ablative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also with **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used (**348–350**).

2. *Place-to-which* is expressed by **ad** and **in** with the Accusative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also with **domus** and **rūs** no preposition is used (**348–350**).

3. *Place-in-which* is expressed by **in** with the Ablative, but with names of *cities* and *towns*, also **domus** and **rūs**, the Locative case is used (**348–350**).

XLIII. The Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative (**352–353**).

XLIV. 1. In Latin a noun in the Genitive may be used to limit or define the meaning of another noun. The Genitive may be a *Posses-*

sive Genitive, a *Subjective Genitive*, an *Objective Genitive*, or a *Genitive of the Whole* ("Partitive Genitive"), according to the relation it bears to the noun it limits. Also a noun in the Genitive may be used to limit or define certain adjectives expressing *desire*, *knowledge*, *fullness*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites (**358–362**).

2. In Latin a noun accompanied by an adjective may be used as an adjective phrase to describe a noun. The phrase may be in either the Genitive *or* the Ablative, but the *Ablative* is generally used to express *physical characteristics*, and the *Genitive* is used to express *measure*. If in the English sentence no adjective is used with the noun in the phrase, the phrase must be expressed in Latin by an *adjective* alone (**363–364**).

XLVII. Purpose is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** (*that, in order that*) or **nē** (*that . . . not, in order that . . . not*). In Latin the Infinitive should *not* be used to express purpose (**383–387**).

XLVIII. 1. In Latin, as in English, the Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*, and is called the "Optative Subjunctive" (from **optō**, *I wish*). The negative is **nē**. There are three kinds of wishes. In these the same tenses are used as in English: "Future Possible Wish" (Present Subjunctive); "Present Unfulfilled Wish" (Imperfect Subjunctive); "Past Unfulfilled Wish" (Pluperfect Subjunctive) (**397–398**).

2. In Latin, as in English, the Subjunctive is used to indicate something as *willed* or *urged*, and is called the "Volitive Subjunctive" (from **volō**, *I will*). The Subjunctive is, therefore, used to express an *exhortation* (or *request*), or a *command*. The negative is **nē** (**399–401**).

3. In Latin the Conditional Subjunctive is used to express something merely as *probable*. It is then translated with the aid of the modal auxiliaries *should* and *would*. The negative is **nōn** (**402–403**).

XLIX. 1. A Clause of Result is expressed in Latin by **ut**, *that, so that* (if negative, by **ut . . . nōn**) with the Subjunctive. It is, however, usually translated by the English Indicative (**411–413**).

2. If the verb of the main clause refers to present (or future) time, the result, *if not completed*, is expressed by the *Present* Subjunctive; *if completed*, by the *Perfect* Subjunctive. If the verb of the main clause refers to past time, the result, *if not completed*, is expressed

by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive; *if completed*, by the *Perfect* Subjunctive. Thus the tenses are used in Latin in the same way as in English (**414–415**).

LI. The relative pronoun may introduce a Clause of Purpose, if the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the principal clause. The negative is **nōn** (**430–431**).

LII. A noun or pronoun in the Ablative with a participle (or noun, or adjective) in agreement may be used, like the Nominative Absolute in English, in place of a subordinate clause. It is translated, according to its relation to the rest of the sentence, by a *Temporal*, *Causal*, or *Conditional* clause (**437–440**).

LIII. After all verbs meaning to *say*, *think*, *know*, *hear*, *believe*, etc., an Infinitive with Subject in the Accusative is used to express a statement in Indirect Discourse. The tenses of the Infinitive express time in relation to the time of the main verb; the tense used in the direct statement becomes the corresponding tense of the Infinitive (**452–456**).

LIV. 1. A substantive **Quod**-Clause of *fact* with the Indicative may itself be the Subject of a verb, or it may be used to explain some antecedent word (**462–463**).

2. In Latin, with verbs meaning to *urge*, *persuade*, *command*, etc., a Substantive clause with the Subjunctive is used to state the action *willed*. The clause is introduced by **ut**, if affirmative; by **nē** (sometimes by **ut . . . nē**), if negative. The tense, as in English, is governed by the law of Sequence of Tenses (**465–466**).

3. Substantive Clauses of Result may be used as Subjects of certain impersonal verbs, such as **accidit**; they may stand as Appositives to nouns (*e. g.* **mōs**) and pronouns; they may be used as Objects of verbs of "making," such as **faciō, efficiō, perficiō** (**468–470**).

LVII 1. In Latin an Indirect question must be in the Subjunctive Mood. The tenses follow the law of Sequence of Tenses (**484–485**).

2. Double or "Alternative" Indirect questions are expressed by **utrum . . . an**, or **-ne . . . an**, or **. . . an**, with the Subjunctive (**487**).

LVIII. 1. The *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Active voice*. Its Nominative is supplied by the Infinitive. The Dative of the Gerund is not common (**492–496**).

2. The Gerund*ive* is an attribut*ive* adject*ive*, *passive* in meaning, used only with nouns in the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, or *Ablative* case. It is called a *Gerundive* because it *carries* the leading idea in the phrase; and is translated in English by a verbal noun with an object (**497–499**).

3. Purpose may be expressed in Latin by **causā**, *for the sake of*, (*a*) with the Genitive of the Gerund, or (*b*) with the Genitive of a Gerundive phrase. Purpose may also be expressed by **ad** with the Accusative (*a*) of the Gerund, or (*b*) with the Accusative of a Gerundive phrase. The Romans generally preferred a *Gerundive phrase* rather than a Gerund with an object (**500**).

LIX. 1. *Five* Deponent verbs (and their compounds) are used with the Ablative: **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior**, and **vēscor**.

2. **Cum**-Temporal Clauses. A **Cum**-Temporal clause has the Indicative if the clause refers to *present* or *future* time. If the clause refers to *past* time, the Perfect Indicative is used to express the thought of the clause as a *fact* at a *definite* past time (**509**).

3. **Cum**-Circumstantial Clauses. With the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses the **Cum**-clause, especially in narration, regularly has the Subjunctive, if the clause is felt merely as giving an idea of the *circumstances* (not a past *fact* at a *definite* past time). It is then called a **Cum**-*circumstantial* clause. The Subjunctive mood expresses the clause as subordinate in the thought (**510**).

4. **Cum**-Causal Clauses. **Cum**, meaning *since*, *because*, introducing a Causal clause, has only the Subjunctive (**511**).

The Law of Sequence of Tenses

Sequence of Tenses. In a *subordinate* clause requiring the Subjunctive the tense of the verb expresses action (or state) in relation to the general division of time (past, present, or future) indicated by the verb of the *main* (principal) clause with which the subordinate clause is associated in thought. The main verb, therefore, has a certain authority in the sentence and exercises a certain control over the verb of the subordinate clause. This principle, called "Sequence of Tenses" (because the tense of the subordinate verb *follows*, or is

controlled by, the tense of the main verb), is shown by the following table:

Tense of Verb in Main Clause	Tense of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clause		
Primary Tenses (Expressing *present* or *future* time)	Present ("Present Perfect" with *have*) Future Future Perfect	followed by	Present Subjunctive (incomplete action) or Perfect Subjunctive (completed action)
Secondary Tenses (Expressing *past* time)	Imperfect Perfect ("Historical Perfect" without *have*) Pluperfect	followed by	Imperfect Subjunctive (incomplete action) or Pluperfect Subjunctive (completed action)

Note. Tense-sequence requires not the *same* tense, but the same *kind* of tense (*i. e.* either *all* tenses *primary*, or *all* tenses *secondary*).

Rule. The law of Sequence of Tenses requires that a primary tense in the main clause be followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause, and that a secondary tense in the main clause be followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause, or more briefly, *"primary" tenses are followed by primary, "secondary" tenses by secondary.* (See, however, **414–415**.)

III. THE LATIN CLUB

Membership in the Latin Club should be voluntary. Any pupil studying Latin should be permitted to join. Those who have reached Cicero or Vergil may be classified as *Senators*, those reading Caesar as *Equites* (or *Knights*), and the beginners, for a year, would have to accept the rank of *Plebeians*. The chief officers may be named *Consuls;* the Executive Committee may be called *Praetors;* the *Aediles* may be Secretaries, since the Roman *Aediles* had charge of archives,

or may act as a Program Committee, since their prototypes had charge of public games, or may fulfill the more humble functions of a Room Committee, which would be equivalent to caring for streets and temples; the *Quaestors* act as Treasurers. Teachers and other adult members of the community may be present as delegates from foreign lands, *e.g.* an English teacher could represent an *Ambassador from Britain*, or a French instructor a *Chieftain from Gaul*. It is advisable to permit the young Romans to govern themselves as far as possible.

How often the club shall meet depends upon the special conditions at each school. It is far better to have a few well-attended, successful meetings than frequent gatherings of a less stimulating character. Do not have a long session; an hour, or an hour and a half, is better than two hours. Begin and close the meeting promptly.

In preparing the programs[1] it is necessary to steer skillfully between the Scylla of seriousness and the Charybdis of frivolity. The entertainment must convey edifying information about ancient Roman life without becoming dull and dry; it must include lighter moments and plenty of fun without degenerating into a "party." A somewhat mechanical device by which this golden mean may be obtained is to divide the time (aside from a few minutes at the opening for necessary "business" details) into two parts, the first of which is occupied by a lecture, paper, reading, or debate on some classical topic, while the remainder of the period is given over to games, charades, or some other form of social amusement in which *every one* takes an active part. This does not mean that the lecture, or serious exercise, should not be shot through with gleams of humor, or that the subsequent diversion should be without its nucleus of classical fact or fancy, — quite the contrary.

The first part of the program may consist of a lecture or talk, illustrated by stereopticon, on some such topic as "Roman Dress," "Houses of Pompeii," "Ancient Writing Materials," "The Forum in Cicero's Time." Let the pictures play a more important part than the speaker's words, and let the words bring out skillfully the significant details of the pictures; most of us do not know how to observe. Instead of an illustrated lecture, there may be an informal talk about some ancient Roman or Greek of whom the pupil will hear little in

---

[1] An invaluable help in preparing these programs is the *Handbook for Latin Clubs* (Paxton), D. C. Heath & Co.

the high school classroom. The speaker should not try to give an exhaustive treatment of his subject: he should remember that the more interesting the statement, the more likely it is to be retained. Sometimes a reading of a famous passage of Latin literature, with the necessary introduction and comment, will provide a profitable half hour. So, too, would a passage from Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, or Bryant's translation of the *Iliad* or *Odyssey*, or Church's *Stories from Herodotus*, or Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*, or some passage from *Last Days of Pompeii*, *Ben Hur*, or *A Friend of Caesar*.

Even greater variety is possible in the second part of the program. Many of the common parlor games may be given a classical coloring with little difficulty. One which is effective in "breaking the ice" is "The Unknown Celebrity, or 'Know Thyself.'" *On the back* of each person is pinned a tag on which is written the name of some famous character of the ancient world who, during the game, the person is supposed to be; the wearer must discover his own identity by questioning his friends, who are not allowed to tell him outright, but give suggestive, though vague, replies; when he guesses correctly, the tag is pinned in front, and the game continues till all the characters are guessed. "Twenty Questions" becomes suitable for the Latin Club, if the objects chosen have to do with antiquity. A number of contests depending upon letters and the spelling of words are much more exciting when the words are Latin instead of English. As an example of these games take the following. The players being seated in a circle, the first begins the spelling of a Latin word (which he does not tell) by naming the first letter, which must not be itself a Latin word; the next player must add a letter which must contribute toward spelling some Latin word, but must not end one; the third player adds a letter, but under the same conditions. The person with whom a word ends, or who cannot think of a letter with which to continue the spelling of an actual Latin word, gives a forfeit and drops out of the circle.

Much may be made of Dramatics, and it is desirable to have a "property box," containing togas and other suitable equipment. Once in the year the club might give a classical play. But Dramatics of a less formal kind may also appear. "The Philosopher and the Ghost" (cf. p. 206), or the Ghost Scene of Plautus's *Mostellaria*, may be acted at Halloween, when also the Sibyl from her cavern may dispense fortunes selected from the verses of Vergil. A scene from the

life of Caesar or of some other character of classical times may be acted out and the character guessed. The club may be divided into "sides" and each side present a charade, acting first the separate syllables and then the entire word. For example, the word "Haruspex" (treated as Hah-ruse-specks) was in one club made into an interesting little extempore play in Roman costume. The word must be guessed by the other side.

ABBREVIATIONS

Abl., Ablative
Acc., Accusative
adj., adjective
adv., adverb
cf., compare
comp., comparative
conj., conjunction
Dat., Dative
def., defective
dem., demonstrative
encl., enclitic
f., feminine
fr., from
Gen., Genitive
impers., impersonal
indecl., indeclinable
indef., indefinite
indir., indirect
inf., infinitive
interrog., interrogative
intr., intransitive
m., masculine
n., neuter
neg., negative
Nom., Nominative
part., participle
pass., passive
perf., perfect
pers., personal
pl., plural
poss., possessive
prep., preposition
pres., present
pron., pronoun
reflex., reflexive
rel., relative
sing., singular
Subj., Subjunctive
subst., substantive
superl., superlative
tr., transitive
w., with

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-LATIN

A

able: be able, possum.
about, dē, *w. Abl.;* ad, *w. Acc.*
above, super, *w. Acc.*
absent, absēns; **be absent,** absum.
accept, accipiō; excipiō.
accomplish, gerō; perficiō.
account: on account of, *Abl. of cause;* ob *or* propter, *w. Acc.*
accustomed: be accustomed, cōnsuēscō.
across, trāns, *w. Acc.*
add, addō; adiciō.
advance, accēdō; prōcēdō.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
advise, moneō.
affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
affection, amor, -ōris, *m.*
afraid: be afraid, pertimēscō.
after, post, *w. Acc.; also adv.;* postquam (*conj.*).
afterwards, posteā.
against, contrā, in, *w. Acc.*
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
alarm, perturbō; perterreō.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um; **be alive,** vīvō.
all, omnis, -e; ūniversus, -a, -um; tōtus, -a, -um.
allow, permittō; patior.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
already, iam.
also, et; etiam; quoque (*postpositive*).
always, semper.
among, inter *or* apud, *w. Acc.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, -um, *m.*
and, et; -que; **and also,** atque (ac); **and . . . not,** neque (nec); **and so,** itaque.
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō.
another, the other (of two), alter, altera, alterum; **to one another,** inter sē; **belonging to another, another's,** aliēnus, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō.
any, ūllus, -a, -um; aliquī, aliqua, aliquod; **any one, anything,** aliquis, aliquid.
apply, adhibeō.
approach, appropinquō.
arm, armō.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circum, *w. Acc.*
arouse, permoveō; concitō.
arrive, perveniō.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
as long as, while, dum; **as quickly as possible,** quam celerrimē; **as soon as,** cum prīmum; **as soon as possible,** quam prīmum.
ascend, ascendō.
ascertain, cognōscō.

ask, rogō; interrogō.
assign, tribuō.
at, near, ad, *w. Acc.;* **at last, at length**, tandem; **at least**, quidem (*postpositive*); **at once**, statim; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. Abl.*
attack (*verb*), oppugnō; (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, cōnor; temptō.
authority, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
avaricious, avārus, -a, -um.
await, exspectō.
away: be away, absum.
away from, ā, ab, *w. Abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.
badly, malĕ.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
battle line, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
be, sum; **be able**, possum; **be alive**, vīvō; **be away**, absum; **be eager**, studeō; **be present**, adsum; **be without hope**, dēspērō.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
because, quod; quia; quoniam; **because of**, ob *or* propter, *w. Acc.*, ē, ex, *w. Abl.*
before, ante, *w. Acc.; also adv.;* antequam (*conj.*).
beg, implōrō; ōrō; **beg for**, petō.
begin, incipiō; īnstituō; **began**, coepī, *def.;* **begin battle**, proelium committō.
behalf: in behalf of, prō, *w. Abl.*
believe, crēdō, *w. Dat.*
besiege, obsideō.
best, optimus, -a, -um; *adv.*, optimē.
better, melior, -ius; *adv.*, melius.
between, inter, *w. Acc.*
bird, avis, avis, *f.*
blame (*verb*), culpō; (*noun*), culpa, -ae.
boat, nāvigium, -ī, *n.*
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
bold, audāx.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, librī, *m.*
born: be born, nāscor.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.;* virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring about, efficiō; perficiō; **bring together**, condūcō; comportō; **bring up**, supportō.
Britain, Britannia, -ae.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, aedificō.
building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
burn, incendō.
business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
but, sed; **but if**, sīn.
buy, emō.
by, ā, ab, *w. Abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call, vocō; **call back, recall**, revocō; **call out**, ēvocō; **call together**, convocō; (**=name**), appellō.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*
can, possum.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō; **capture by assault**, expugnō.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*; dīligentia, -ae, *f.*; **care for**, cūrō.
careful, dīligēns.
carefully, dīligenter.
carry, portō; vehō; **carry across**, trānsportō; **carry back**, reportō; **carry on**, gerō; **carry together**, comportō.
Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -e.
cast down, dēiciō; **cast forward**, prōiciō.
catch sight of, cōnspiciō.
cattle, pecus, pecoris, *n.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitēs, -um; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; (*adj.*), equester, -tris, -tre.
cease, desist from, dēsistō.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, certus, -a, -um; **a certain one**, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.
certainly, certē.
character, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m.*, *f.*
choose, dēligō.
Cicero, Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
climb, ascendō.
cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
collect, cōgō; colligō.
come, veniō; **come back**, reveniō; **come forth**, prōcēdō; **come together, meet**, conveniō; **come to help**, subveniō; **come up**, succēdō.
command (*verb*), imperō, *w. Dat.*; iubeō; (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; iussus, -ūs, *m.*
commander, imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
common, commūnis, -e.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
companion, comes, comitis, *m.*, *f.*
compel, cōgō.
concerning, dē, *w. Abl.*
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
conquer, vincō; superō.
consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
consult, cōnsulō.
contain, contineō.
contrary to, contrā, *w. Acc.*
converse, colloquor.
council, concilium, -ī, *n.*
country, patria, -ae, *f.*; rūs, rūris, *n.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
covetous, avārus, -a, -um.
crush, opprimō.
cultivate, colō.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*; īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
cut off, intercipiō; interclūdō.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
dawn: **at dawn**, prīmā lūce.
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*, *f.*; **on the next day**, postrīdiē; **on the day before**, prīdiē.

daybreak: **at daybreak**, prīmā lūce.
death, mors, mortis, *f*.
decide, cōnstituō.
deed, factum, -ī, *n*.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, dēfendō.
defense, dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f*.
delight, dēlectō.
demand, poscō; postulō.
depart, discēdō.
depth, altitūdō, -tūdinis, *f*.
descend, dēscendō.
desire (*verb*), cupiō; (*noun*), cupiditās, -tātis, *f*.
desirous (of), cupidus, -a, -um.
desist from, dēsistō.
despair, dēspērō.
despise. dēspiciō.
difficult difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, *f*.; **with difficulty**, aegrē; difficulter.
dig: **dig a ditch**, fossam perdūcō.
dignity, dīgnitās, -tātis, *f*.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f*.
diligent, dīligēns, -entis.
diligently, dīligenter.
dirty, sordidus, -a, -um.
disappointed, spē dēiectus, -a, -um.
discontinue, intermittō.
discuss, disputō.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disloyal, īnfīdus, -a, -um.
displease: **it displeases**, displicet, *w. Dat.*
distance, spatium, -ī, *n*.
distribute, tribuō; distribuō.
disturb, permoveō; perturbō.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f*.; **dig a ditch**, fossam perdūcō.
divide, dīvidō.
do, agō; (=**make**), faciō.
doubt, dubitō.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
down from, dē, *w. Abl*
drag, trahō.
draw up (a battle line), (aciem) īnstruō.
drive, agō; pellō; **drive back**, repellō; **drive on**, impellō; **drive out**, expellō.
duty, officium, -ī, *n*.
dwell (in), habitō; incolō.

E

each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque; singulī, -ae, -a.
eager (for), avidus, -a, -um; cupidus, -a, -um; appetēns, *w. Gen.*
eager: **be eager**, studeō.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, *f*.
eight, octō.
eighteen, duodēvīgintī.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
eleven, ūndecim.
eminent, ēgregius, -a, -um.
employ, adhibeō.
encamp, **halt**, cōnsīdō.
encourage, cōnfirmō; cohortor.
end, fīnis, fīnis, *m*.
enemy (of the state), hostis, -is, *m*.
energy, vīs, vim (*Acc.*), *f*.
engage in battle, proelium committō.
enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, *f*.
enough, satis (*indecl.*).
enroll, cōnscrībō.

envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
envy, invideō, *w. Dat.*
equal, pār, pāris, *w. Dat.*
erect, exstruō.
escort, prōsequor.
establish, conlocō.
Etruscan, Etrūscus, -a, -um.
even, et; etiam; ipse, -a, -um.
every, omnis, -e.
evil, malus, -a, -um.
example, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
excel, superō.
exchange, inter sē dare.
excite, commoveō; concitō; impellō.
expect, exspectō.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.
explain, expōnō.
extend, perdūcō; pertineō, *intr.*

F

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, *m.*
fail, dēficiō.
faith, fidēs, fideī, *f.*
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*
famine, famēs, -is, *f.* (*Abl.* famē).
famous, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.
far, by far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farmhouse, vīlla, -ae, *f.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*
favor, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
fear (*verb*), timeō; **fear greatly**, pertimēscō; (*noun*), timor, -ōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pugnō; dīmicō.
fill, compleō.
find, inveniō; **find out**, comperiō.
fire, ignis, ignis, *m.*; (=**conflagration**), incendium, -ī, *n.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um; prīmum (*adv.*); **at first**, prīmō (*adv.*).
fitting: **it is fitting**, oportet.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*; **put to flight**, in fugam dō.
flock, grex, gregis, *m.*
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of the Dat.*; prō, *w. Abl.*; nam; enim (*postpositive*); **for the purpose of**, ad, *w. Acc.*; **for the sake of**, causā, *w. Gen. preceding.*
force, compellō.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
forefathers, maiōrēs (nātū).
foresee, prōvideō.
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
fortify, mūniō.
four, quattuor.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
France, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
free (*adj.*), līber, lībera, līberum; **free** (*verb*), līberō.
freely, līberē.

Frenchman, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
frequent, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.
fresh, recēns, -entis.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō; perterreō; **be frightened**, pertimēscō.
from, out from, ē, ex; **away from**, ā, ab; **down from**, dē; **from there**, inde.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

Gallic, Gallus, -a, -um.
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather together, cōgō; colligō.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **(a) Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
German, Germānus, -ī, *m.*
get ready, parō; comparō.
ghost, imāgō, imāginis, *f.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō; **give back**, reddō; **give up, yield**, concēdō; **give up, surrender**, dēdō.
go, cēdō; **go away**, discēdō; **go back**, recēdō; **go before**, praecēdō, antecēdō; **go forward**, prōcēdō; **go out**, excēdō; **go to**, accēdō.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*; **God**, Deus.
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere.
greedy, avidus, -a, -um.
greet, salūtō.
grief, dolor.
grieve, grieve over, doleō.
guard, custōs, custōdis, *m.*
guarding, custōdia, -ae, *f.*

H

halt, cōnsīdō.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand over, trādō.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -is, *m.*
happens: it happens, accidit.
hasten, contendō.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse, *def.*
hatred, odium, -ī, *n.*
have, habeō.
he, is; hic; ille; iste; ipse.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō.
heart, cor, cordis, *n.*
heavily, graviter.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
her, hers, eius; suus, -a, -um.
here, hīc.
hero, vir, virī, *m.*
hesitate, dubitō.
hide, hide away, abdō.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, collis, *m.*
himself, suī (*Gen.*).
his own, suus, -a, -um.
hither, hūc.
hold, habeō; teneō; obtineō; **hold up**, sustineō.
holy, sacer, sacra, sacrum.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at the home of**, apud, *w. Acc.*; **at home**, domī.
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*

hope (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*; (*verb*), spērō; **be without hope, lose hope,** dēspērō.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*, *f.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, vīlla, -ae, *f.*; aedificium, -ī, *n.*; domus, -ūs, *f.*
however, autem (*postpositive*).
hurl, iaciō; coniciō.
hurry, properō.
husband, vir, virī, *m.*

I

I, ego, meī.
if, sī; **if not, unless,** nisi, sī . . . minus.
illness, aegritūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*
immortal, immortālis, -e.
implore, implōrō.
importance, magnitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*
impose, impōnō.
in, in; **in behalf of, in front of,** prō, *w. Abl.*; **in order to,** ut, *w. Subj.*
incite, incitō.
increase, augeō.
indeed, quidem (*postpositive*).
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m. pl.*; (*adj.*), pedester, -tris, -tre.
influence, grātia, -ae; auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
inform, certiōrem faciō.
inhabit, colō; habitō; incolō.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *f.*
injure, noceō, *w. Dat.*
institution, īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
intend, in animō habeō.
intercept, intercipiō.
interrupt, intermittō.
intimate, familiāris, -e.
into, in, *w. Acc.*
intrust, committō; mandō.
investigate, explōrō.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
its, eius; suus, -a, -um.

J

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
judge, iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*
judgment, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um; aequus, -a, -um.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*

K

kill, occīdō; interficiō.
kind, kindly, benignus, -a, -um.
kind (=**race**), genus, generis, *n.*
kindness, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, sciō; **not know,** nesciō; ignōrō.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
lack, inopia, -ae, *f.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*; **(native) land,** patria, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um; amplus, -a, -um.
last: at last, dēnique.
late, tardus, -a, -um.
latter, hic, haec, hoc.
laugh, laugh at, rīdeō.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lawful: **it is lawful**, licet.
lead, dūcō; **lead across**, trādūcō; **lead away**, abdūcō; dēdūcō; **lead back**, redūcō; **lead forward**, prōdūcō; **lead in**, indūcō; **lead out**, ēdūcō; **lead through**, perdūcō; **lead to**, addūcō; **lead together**, condūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, cognōscō; comperiō.
least: **at least**, certē.
leave, discēdō; **leave behind**, relinquō.
left (on the left), sinister, -tra, -trum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
letter (*of alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*), epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*; (*adj.*), levis, -e.
like, amō.
like, similis, -e.
likewise, item.
line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
lion, leō, leōnis, *m.*
little: **by a little**, paulō.
live, vīvō; **live (in)**, incolō; habitō.
long, longus, -a, -um; **no longer**, nōn iam.
look at, spectō.
lose, āmittō; **lose hope**, dēspērō.
love (*verb*), amō; dīligō; (*noun*), amor, -ōris, *m.*
loyal, fīdus, -a, -um.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
make, faciō; efficiō.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -inis, *m.*
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, iter faciō.
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
meanwhile, interim.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
mention, commemorō.
merchant, mercātor, -tōris, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
Midas, Midās, -ae, *m.*
middle, middle (of), medius, -a, -um.
mile, mīlle passūs; *pl.*, mīlia passuum.
military affairs, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*; **military service, war**, mīlitia, -ae, *f.*
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mine, my, meus, -a, -um.
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
more, magis (*adv.*); plūs (*noun*); plūrēs, plūria.
moreover, autem (*postpositive*).
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
mount, ascendō; cōnscendō.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō; **move back**, removeō.
much, multus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), multum.
multitude, multitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*
my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name (*noun*), nōmen, nōminis, *n.*; (*verb*), appellō.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
near, ad, prope, *w. Acc.*
nearly, ad, prope, circiter (*adv.*).
necessary, necesse (*indecl.*).
need, inopia, -ae, *f.*
neighbor, vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, propinquus, -a, -um.
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um; recēns.
next, deinde.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **at night**, noctū (*adv.*); **at midnight**, mediā nocte; **late at night**, multā nocte; **until late at night**, ad multam noctem.
nine, novem.
nineteen, ūndēvīgintī.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer**, nōn iam; **no one**, nēmō, *Dat.* nēminī, *m.*; *as answer*, 31.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
nor, neque (nec); **neither . . . nor**, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
not, nōn; **not even**, nē . . . quidem; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo . . . sed etiam.
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*).
now, nunc; iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*; multitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. Subj.*
obey, pāreō.
obtain, obtineō.
occupy, occupō.
office, honor, -ōris, *m.*
often, saepe.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, *Gen.* veteris; vetustus, -a, -um; **old age**, senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*; **old man**, senex, senis, *m.*
older, maior nātū; **oldest**, maximus nātū.
on, in, *w. Abl.*; **on account of**; ob *or* propter, *w. Acc.*, ē, ex, *w. Abl.*
once: **at once**, statim; **once upon a time**, ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one at a time**, singulī, -ae, -a.
only, sōlus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), modo; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo . . . sed etiam.
open, apertus, -a, -um.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
oppose, obiciō; oppōnō.
oppress, premō.
or, aut; **either . . . or**, aut . . . aut.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
order (*verb*), iubeō; imperō; mandō; (*noun*), iussus, -ūs, *m.*; **at my order**, meō iussū; **in order to**, ut, *w. Subj.*
other, **another**, alius, -a, -ud; **other**, **the other**, **the rest**, cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.
ought, dēbeō.
our, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out from, ē, ex, *w. Abl.*
over, super, *w. Acc. and Abl.*
overcome, superō.
owe, dēbeō.
own: **his own**, **their own**, suus, -a, -um.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*
pacify, pācō.

pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
palisade, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
pardon, ignōscō, *w. Dat.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
patriotism, amor patriae.
pay the penalty, poenam dō.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.;* gēns, gentis, *f.*
permit, permittō.
permitted : it is permitted, licet.
persuade, persuādeō, *w. Dat.*
Pharaoh, Pharaō, -ōnis, *m.*
picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*
pierce, trāiciō.
pile up, exstruō.
pitch camp, castra pōnō.
place (*verb*), locō; pōnō; **put in place**, īnstituō; (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*
plain, plānitiēs, plānitiēī, *f.*
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
please, dēlectō; **it pleases**, placet, *w. Dat.*
plow (*noun*), arātrum, -ī, *n.;* (*verb*), arō.
point out, dēmōnstrō.
Porsena, Porsena, -ae, *m.*
possession : take possession of, occupō.
possible : as quickly as possible, quam celerrimē; **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.
powerful, potēns, -entis.
praise (*verb*), laudō; (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
precede, antecēdō.
present, praesēns.
preserve, cōnservō.
prevent, prohibeō.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
proceed, prōcēdō.
promise, promittō.
propose, prōpōnō.
protect, servō.
provide, comparō.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdēns.
prudently, prūdenter.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
pull out, extrahō.
punish, pūniō; **to be punished**, poenam dăre.
punishment, supplicium, -ī, *n.*
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
purpose : for the purpose of, ad, *w. Acc.;* causā, *w. Gen.*
pursue closely, cōnsequor.
put, locō; pōnō; **put against**, oppōnō; **put aside, put down**, dēpōnō; **put before**, prōpōnō; **put an end to**, fīnem faciō; **put on**, impōnō; **put to flight**, in fugam dō.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
question, rogō.
quickly, celeriter; **as quickly as possible**, quam celerrimē.

R

race, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rather, *comp. of adj.;* potius (*adv.*).
read, legō.
realize, sentiō.
rear guard, novissimum agmen.
receive, accipiō; recipiō.
recent, recēns, -entis.

relative, propinquus, -ī, *m.*; propinqua, -ae, *f.*
remain, maneō; permaneō; remaneō.
remarkable, singulāris, -e.
remind, admoneō.
remove, removeō.
Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*
report, nūntiō.
repulse, repellō.
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
resist, resistō.
resources, opēs, -um, *f. pl.*
respect, vereor.
rest, the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um; **the rest**, reliquī, -ae, -a; cēterī, -ae, -a.
resume, resūmō.
retain, retineō.
retreat, mē recipiō, *etc.*
return, recēdō.
revolt (*verb*), dēficiō.
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
right: on the right, dexter, -tra, -trum.
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
rise, orior.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule, regō.
run, currō.

S

Sabine, Sabīnus, -a, -um.
sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum.
safe, incolumis, -e; tūtus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvigō.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake: for the sake of, causā, *w. Gen. preceding.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, satis faciō.
save, servō; cōnservō.
say, dīcō; inquam, inquis, inquit (*postpositive*).
scarcely, vix.
school, schola, -ae, *f.*
scout, explōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
search for, conquīrō.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō; cōnspiciō; **see through**, perspiciō.
seek, petō; quaerō.
seem, videor.
seize, occupō; rapiō.
select, dēligō.
self, *see* suī, 186.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō; **send across**, trānsmittō; **send ahead**, praemittō; **send away**, āmittō; **send back**, remittō; **send forward**, prōmittō; **send out**, dīmittō; **send to assistance of**, submittō.
serious, gravis, -e.
seriously, graviter.
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*
serve, serviō.
set forth, expōnō; **set free**, līberō; **set on fire**, incendō.
settle, incolō; **settle (in)**, sedeō.
seven, septem.
seventeen, septemdecim.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

several, complūrēs, -ia.
Sextius, Sextius, -ī, *m.*
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea; haec; ista; illa; ipsa.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*
shoe, calceus, -ī, *m.*; solea, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout (*verb*), clāmō; (*noun*), clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, dēmōnstrō; ostendō.
shut, shut up, claudō.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
similar, similis, -e.
since, quoniam; cum.
sister, soror, sorōris, *f.*
sit, sedeō.
six, sex.
six hundred, sescentī, -ae, -a.
sixteen, sēdecim.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
size, magnitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *w. Gen.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; **slaves** (=**household**), familia, -ae, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
sleep, dormiō.
small, parvus, -a, -um; exiguus, -a, -um.
snatch, rapiō; **snatch away**, ēripiō.
so, ita; tam; sīc; **and so**, itaque; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **so many**, tot.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
some, nōn nūllus, -a, -um (*usually pl.*); **some one**, aliquis; quīdam.
something, aliquid; quiddam.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soon, mox; **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.
soul, anima, -ae, *f.*
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
spare, parcō, *w. Dat.*
speak, dīcō.
speaker, ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
stand, stō.
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
star, stella, -ae, *f.*
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stir, excitō.
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
strengthen, firmō; cōnfirmō.
strong, firmus, -a, -um.
strongly, firmē.
successful, secundus, -a, -um.
such, tālis, -e.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, labōrō.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
suppliant, supplex, supplicis, *m., f.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*; **supplies of grain**, rēs frūmentāriae.
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
surpass, superō.
surrender, dēdō; trādō.
surround (=**put around**), circumdō; (=**come around**), circumveniō.
sustain, sustineō.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swiftly, celeriter.

swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, capiō; (=**accept**), excipiō; (=**assume**), sūmō; **take back**, recipiō; **take care (of)**, cūrō; **take one's place**, cōnsistō; **take possession of**, occupō; (= **capture by assault**), expugnō.
teach, doceō.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō; dīcō.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam.
thanks: **give thanks**, grātiās agō.
that, that (there), the former, ille, illa, illud; **that** (*rel.*), quī.
that, this, is, ea, id.
that (of yours), iste, ista, istud.
that, in order that, so that, ut; **that . . . not**, nē (*purpose*); ut . . . nōn (*result*).
their own, suus, -a, -um.
then, tum; (=**next**), deinde.
theory, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
there, ibi; **from there**, inde.
therefore, igitur; quārē; itaque.
they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō; existimō.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirteen, trēdecim.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, is, ea, id.
this, this (here), hic, haec, hoc.
thither, eō.
thorn, stirps, stirpis, *m.*
thousand, mīlle; *pl.*, **thousands**, mīlia *or* mīllia, -ium, *n.*
threaten, minor, *w. Dat.*
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per, *w. Acc.*
throw, iaciō; **throw across**, trāiciō; **throw against**, obiciō, *w. Dat.*; **throw away**, abiciō; **throw back**, reiciō; **throw down**, dēiciō; **throw forward**, prōiciō; **throw into**, iniciō; **throw out**, ēiciō; **throw to**, adiciō.
thus, ita; sīc.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, -ī, *n.*
to, ad, *w. Acc.*; *also sign of Dat.*
to-day, hodiē.
top of, summus, -a, -um.
touch, tangō.
tower, turris, turris, *m.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
traveler, viātor, -tōris, *m.*
treacherous, īnfīdus, -a, -um.
tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*
trial, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trust, crēdō; cōnfīdō, *w. Dat.*
truth, vēritās, -tātis, *f.*
twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U

under, sub, *w. Acc. and Abl.*
understand, intellegō; perspiciō.
undertake, incipiō; suscipiō.
unexpectedly, imprōvīsō.
unfaithful, īnfīdus, -a, -um.
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um.
unharmed, incolumis, -e; salvus, -a, -um.
unimpaired, integer, integra, integrum.
unjust, iniūstus, -a, -um; inīquus, -a, -um.
unjustly, iniūstē.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unskilled, imperītus, -a, -um, *w. Gen.*
unusual, ēgregius, -a, -um; singulāris, -e.
unwilling: **be unwilling** (*Imperative*) nōlī, nōlīte.
uphold, sustineō.
upon, super, *w. Acc. and Abl.*; **upon, against**, in, *w. Acc.*; **upon, on**, in, *w. Abl.*
use, ūtor.

V

Veneti, Venetī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage (war), (bellum) gerō.
wait for, exspectō.
walk, ambulō.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*; mīlitia, -ae, *f.*
warn, moneō.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*; modus, -ī, *m.*
we, nōs, nostrum (nostrī).
wealth, fortūna, -ae, *f.*; (ops), opis, *f.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
welfare, salūs, salūtis, *f.*
well, bene (*adv.*).
well-known, nōtus, -a, -um.
what, quis, quae, quid (*interrog.*); quī, quae, quod (*rel. pron.*).
when, ubi; cum.
whence, unde (*interrog. and rel. adv.*).
where, ubi (*interrog. and rel. adv.*); quā.
whether, utrum; num; an; **whether . . . or**, utrum . . . an.
which, quī, quae, quod (*rel. pron.*); **which (of two)?** uter, utra, utrum.
while, dum; cum.
whither, quō (*interrog. and rel. adv.*).
who, quī (*rel. pron.*); **who?** quis (*interrog. pron.*).
whole, whole of, tōtus, -a, -um.
why? cūr.
wicked, malus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
winter camp, hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*
wise, prūdēns.
wisely, prūdenter.
with, cum, *w. Abl.*; **with, among, at the house of**, apud, *w. Acc.*
withdraw, mē recipiō, *etc.*; recēdō.
within, *Abl. of Time Within Which.*
without, sine, *w. Abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, *f*.
wood (=**forest**), silva, -ae, *f*.
word, verbum, -ī, *n*.
work (*verb*), labōrō; (*noun*), labor, -ōris, *m*.
worse, peior, peius; (*adv*.), peius.
worst, pessimus, -a, -um.
worth, dīgnitās, -tātis, *f*.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
would that, utinam, *or Subj*.
wound (*verb*), vulnerō; (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris.
write, scrībō.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f*.

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m*.; **a few years ago**, paucīs ante annīs.
yes, sīc; ita; sānē; certē.
yet, tamen.
yield, cēdō; concēdō; submittō.
you, tū; *pl*., vōs.
younger, minor nātū.
your, tuus, -a, -um; *pl*., vester, vestra, vestrum.

Z

zeal, studium, -ī, *n*.

VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH

(Italic type is used in the definitions to indicate English words or parts of words related to or derived from the Latin; when inclosed in square brackets, the word is not properly a definition of the Latin word, but merely a related English word.)

A

ā, ab, *prep. w. Abl.*, from, away from, on; *agency, w. pass.*, by [*ab*sent].

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), *tr.*, put away, hide.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (ab + dūcō), *tr.*, lead away [*abduct*].

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (ab + iaciō), *tr.*, throw away, fling [*abject*].

absēns, -sentis (*pres. part. of* **absum**), *absent*.

absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (ab + sum), *intr.*, be away.

ac, *see* **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō), *intr.*, go to, advance; come; *w.* **ad** *and Acc.* [*accede*].

accidit, -cidere, accidit, —— (ad + cadō, fall), *impers.*, it happens [*accident*].

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), *tr.*, receive, *accept*.

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, (ad + currō), *intr.*, run up to.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, *accuse*, bring a charge against.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen [*acr*imonious].

aciēs, aciēī, *f.*, line of battle.

ācriter (*adv. fr.* **ācer**), sharply, fiercely.

ad, *prep. w. Acc.*, to, at, near.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (ad + dō), *tr.*, add [*addit*ion].

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), *tr.*, lead to, bring, influence.

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (ad + habeō), *tr.*, apply, employ.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (ad + iaciō), *tr.*, throw to, add [*adjec*tive].

aditus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **ad + eō**, go), a going to, approach.

admoneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitus (ad + moneō), *tr.*, remind [*admon*ish].

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cf.* **prope, propinquus**), *intr.*, draw near to, approach, *w. Dat.*

adripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus (ad + rapiō), *tr.*, snatch, seize.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (ad + sum), *intr.*, be near, be present.

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*, youth [*adolescent*].

adventus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **ad + veniō**), a coming to, arrival [*advent*].

aedificium, aedificī, *n.* (*cf.* **aedificō**), building [*edifice*].

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, build [*edify*].

Aeduī, -ōrum, *m. pl.,* a tribe of central Gaul, allies of Rome.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.

aegrē (*adv. fr.* **aeger**), ill, feebly, with difficulty.

aegritūdō, -inis, *f.* (*cf.* **aeger**), illness.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian; *as subst.,* **Aegyptius, -ī,** *m.*

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.,* Egypt.

Aemiliānus, -ī, *m.,* a name of the younger Scipio.

Aenēās, -ae, *m.,* Trojan hero.

aequus, aequa, aequum, level, even, just, fair [*equ*al].

aestās, aestātis, *f.,* summer.

aetās, aetātis, *f.,* age.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.,* the region about Carthage.

Āfricānus, -ī, *m.,* a name given to the Scipios.

ager, agrī, *m.,* field, farm, land [*agr*iculture].

agger, aggeris, *n.,* earth wall, embankment, the *agger.*

agmen, agminis, *n.* (*cf.* **agō**), marching column (*of an army*); **novissimum agmen,** rear guard.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *tr.,* drive, do, *act* [*agent, act*ive].

agricola, -ae, *m.* (*cf.* **ager** + **colō**), farmer.

agricultūra, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **agricola**), *agriculture.*

Alba Longa, -ae, *f.,* a town near Rome.

Albānus, -ī, *m.,* an Alban.

albus, -a, -um, white.

aliēnus, -a, -um (*cf.* **alius**), belonging to another [*alien*].

aliquis, aliquid, *indef. pron.,* some one, something; **aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod,** *indef. adj.,* some.

alius, alia, aliud, another, other.

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.,* the Alps.

alter, altera, alterum, another, the other (of two), one [*alter*nate].

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* (*cf.* **altus**), height, depth [*altitude*].

altus, -a, -um, high, deep [ex*alt*].

amāns, amantis (*pres. part. of* **amō**), fond of, loving; **amāns patriae,** patriotic.

Ambiorīx, -rīgis, *m.,* king of a Gallic tribe.

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.,* walk [*amble*].

America, -ae, *f.,* America.

Americānus, -a, -um, American.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **amīcus**), friendship.

amīcus, -a, -um (*cf.* **amō**), friendly; *as subst.,* **amīcus, -ī,** *m.,* friend [*amic*able].

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**ā** + **mittō**), *tr.,* send away, lose [*amiss*].

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.,* love, like [*am*iable].

amor, amōris, *m.* (*cf.* **amō**), love.

amplus, -a, -um, large, distinguished [*ample*].

Amūlius, -ī, *m.,* an early Alban king.

an, *conj.,* or, *introducing the second part of a double question;* whether, *introducing a single question.*

ancilla, -ae, *f.,* maidservant, slave.

Androclus, -ī, *m.,* a slave.

Anglicus, -a, -um, English.

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

animal, -ālis, *n.,* animal.

animus, **-ī**, *m.*, spirit, life, soul, mind, courage [*anim*ate]; **in animō habēre**, to intend.

annus, **-ī**, *m.*, year [*annu*al].

ante, *prep. w. Acc.*, before; *also adv.* [*ante*date].

anteā, *adv.*, before.

antecēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, ——, *tr. and intr.*, go before, precede [*antecedent*].

apertus, **-a**, **-um** (*perf. part. of* **aperiō**, open), opened, open, uncovered [*aper*ture].

appellō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *tr.*, name, call [*appellat*ion].

appetēns, **appetentis** (*cf.* **ad** + **petō**), desirous (of), eager for, *w. Gen.* [*appet*ite].

apud, *prep. w. Acc.*, among, near, at, with, at the home of.

aqua, **-ae**, *f.*, water [*aqua*tic].

aquila, **-ae**, *f.*, eagle, the eagle (*standard of a Roman legion*).

Aquītānī, **-ōrum**, *m. pl.*, a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

arātrum, **-ī**, *n.* (*cf.* **arō**), plow.

arbor, **arboris**, *f.*, tree [*Arbor* Day].

Ariovistus, **-ī**, *m.*, a chief of the Suebi.

arma, **armōrum**, *n. pl.*, arms [*arm*or].

armō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *tr.*, arm, equip [dis*arm*].

arō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *tr.*, plow [*ar*able].

Arvernī, **-ōrum**, *m. pl.*, a tribe of central Gaul.

Ascanius, **-ī**, *m.*, son of Aeneas.

ascendō, **-scendere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsus** (**ad** + **scandō**, climb), *tr.*, climb, *ascend*; *w.* **in** *and Acc.*

asper, **aspera**, **asperum**, rugged, rough; harsh [ex*asper*ate].

aspiciō, **-spicere**, **aspexī**, **aspectus** (**ad** + **speciō**, look at), *tr.*, see, behold [*aspect*].

Athēnae, **-ārum**, *f. pl.*, Athens.

Athēnodōrus, **-ī**, *m.*, a Greek philosopher.

atque, **ac**, *conj.*, and also.

ātrium, **-ī**, *n.*, hall, *atrium*.

attingō, **-tingere**, **attigī**, **attāctus** (**ad** + **tangō**, touch), *tr.*, touch, reach [*attain*].

attribuō, **-tribuere**, **attribuī**, **attribūtus** (**ad** + **tribuō**), *tr.*, assign [*attribute*].

auctōritās, **auctōritātis**, *f.*, influence, *authority*.

audācter (*adv. fr.* **audāx**), boldly.

audāx, **audācis** (*cf.* **audeō**), bold, daring [*audac*ious].

audeō, **-ēre**, **ausus sum**, *semi-deponent*, *tr.*, dare, venture.

audiō, **-īre**, **audīvī**, **audītus**, *tr.*, hear, listen to [*aud*ible].

augeō, **-ēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, *tr.*, increase [*aug*ment].

aureus, **-a**, **-um** (*cf.* **aurum**, gold), of gold, golden.

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.* (*postpositive*), moreover, on the other hand, however.

autumnus, **-ī**, *m.*, *autumn*.

auxilium, **auxīlī**, *n.*, aid, help [*auxili*ary].

avārus, **-a**, **-um**, miserly, greedy, *w. Gen.* [*avar*ice].

avārus, **-ī**, *m.*, miser [*avar*icious].

āvertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versus**

(ā + vertō, turn), *tr.*, turn away [*avert*].
avidus, -a, -um, eager (for), covetous, greedy, *w. Gen.* [*avid*ity].
avis, avis, *f.*, bird [*aviary, avia*tion].
āvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ā** + **vocō**), *tr.*, call away [*avocat*ion].

B

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus.
barba, -ae, *f.*, beard.
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, *barbarous; as subst.*, **barbarus, -ī,** *m.*, *barbar*ian.
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed.
Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, a people of northeastern Gaul [*Belg*ium].
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -atum (*cf.* **bellum**), *intr.*, wage war [re*bel*].
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war [*belli*gerent]; **bellum gerere, to wage war.**
bene (*adv. fr.* **bonus**), well [*bene*factor].
bene faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *intr.*, benefit.
beneficium, beneficī, *n.* (*cf.* **bene** + **faciō**), kindness [*benefici*al].
benignē (*adv. fr.* **benignus**), kindly.
benignus, -a, -um, kind [*benign*].
bonus, -a, -um, good [*bonus*].
brevis, -e, short, brief [*brev*ity].
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, *Britain.*

C

caecitās, caecitātis, *f.* (*cf.* **caecus,** blind), blindness.
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky [*cel*estial].
Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*, Caesar, a Roman family name; Gaius Iulius Caesar (102–44 B.C.), a famous general, statesman, and author.
calamitās, calamitātis, *f.*, defeat, misfortune [*calamity*].
calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take [*cap*ture].
caput, capitis, *n.*, head [*capit*al, *capit*ol].
careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *intr.*, *w. Abl.*, lack, be without [*caret*].
Carthāginiēnsis, -e (*cf.* **Carthāgō**), Carthaginian.
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, *f.*, Carthage, a large city on the northern coast of Africa.
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp [*Chester*, Dor*chester*, sites of Roman camps]; **castra pōnere,** to pitch camp.
Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, enemy of Cicero and a conspirator.
causa, -ae, *f.*, *cause;* **causā,** *used after a limiting Genitive*, for the sake of, for the purpose of.
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *intr.*, go; yield [*cede*, con*cede*].
celer, celeris, celere, swift [ac*celer*ate].
celeritās, celeritātis, *f.* (*cf.* **celer**), speed, swiftness [*celerity*].
celeriter (*adv. fr.* **celer**), swiftly, quickly.
Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the people of central Gaul.
cēnsor, cēnsōris, *m.*, the title of a Roman magistrate [*censor*].
centum (*Sign* = *C*), *indecl. adj.*, a hundred [per *cent*].
centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* (*cf.* **centum**),

centurion, commander of a hundred men (a *century*).

certē (*adv. fr.* certus), *certainly*, surely, at least.

certus, -a, -um, fixed, *certain*, sure.

cēterī, -ae, -a, other, the other, the rest [etc.].

cibus, cibī, *m.*, food.

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.*, Cicero, a Roman family name; Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.), Rome's most distinguished orator and man of letters.

Cīneās, Cīneae, *m.*, envoy of Pyrrhus.

circiter (*cf.* circum), *adv. and prep. w. Acc.*, nearly, about.

circum, *prep. w. Acc.*, around, about; *also adv.* [*circum*ference].

circumdō, -dăre, -dedī, -dătus (circum + dō), *tr.*, put around, surround.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus (circum + veniō), *tr.*, come around, surround [*circumvent*].

Circus Maximus, Circī Maximī, *m.*, a great circus or race course in Rome.

cīvis, cīvis, *m. or f.*, citizen [*civil*, *civic*].

cīvitās, cīvitātis, *f.* (*cf.* cīvis), citizenship, state [*city*].

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, shout [ac*claim*].

clāmor, clāmōris, *m.* (*cf.* clāmō), shout [*clamor*].

clārus, -a, -um, clear, brilliant; famous [*clar*ion].

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *tr.*, *close*, confine [*cloi*ster].

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *def.*, began.

cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, learn, ascertain, re*cogn*ize.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (con + agō), *tr.*, drive together, collect, compel [*cogent*].

cohors, cohortis, *f.*, *cohort*.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum (con + hortor), *tr.*, encourage earnestly [ex*hort*].

colligō, -ligere, collēgī, collēctus (con + legō, gather), *tr.*, gather (together), *collect*.

collis, collis, *m.*, hill.

colloquium, collóquī, *n.* (*cf.* colloquor), a talking together, conference [*colloquy*].

colloquor, -loquī, collocūtus sum (con + loquor), *intr.*, talk with, converse; *w.* cum *and Abl.* [*colloqui*al].

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *tr.*, cultivate, inhabit, dwell in; cherish, tend, worship [*cult*ure].

comes, comitis, *m.*, comrade, companion [*cf. count*].

commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies.

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (con + memorō, mention), *tr.*, mention [*commemorate*].

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (con + mandō), *tr.*, intrust [*commend*].

commercium, -ī, *n.* (con + merx, goods), trade, *commerce*.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (con + mittō), *tr.*, *commit*, intrust; proelium committere, to begin battle.

commodus, -a, -um, fitting, agreeable [*commod*ity].

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (**con + moveō**), *tr.*, alarm, excite; move, affect [*commotion*].

commūnis, -e, *common* [*community*].

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + parō**) *tr.*, get together, provide, get [*compare*].

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus (**con + pellō**), *tr.*, drive together, force, drive [*compel*].

comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus (*cf.* **reperiō**), *tr.*, find out, learn.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, (**con + pleō,** fill), *tr.*, fill [*complete*].

complūrēs, complūra *or* **complūria** (**con + plūrēs**), *pl.*, several, many.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + portō**), *tr.*, carry *or* bring together [*comport*].

con-, *see* **cum.**

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus (**con + cēdō**), *tr.*, yield, give up [*concede, concession*].

concilium, conciīlī, *n.*, meeting, *council.*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + citō,** arouse), *tr.*, arouse, ex*cite.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + clāmō**), *tr. and intr.*, shout.

concurrō, -currere, -cucurrī *or* **-currī, -cursum** (**con + currō**), *intr.*, run together, rush [*concurrent*].

condīciō, condīciōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **con + dīcō**), *condition,* terms.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**con + dūcō**), *tr.*, lead together, bring together [*conduct*].

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**con + faciō**), *tr.*, finish, exhaust [*confectionery*].

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum (**con + fīdō,** trust), *semi-deponent, intr.*, trust, *w. Dat.* [*confide*].

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + firmō,** strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, encourage, affirm, establish [*confirm*].

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**con + iaciō**), *tr.*, hurl, turn [*conjecture*].

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + locō**), *tr.*, place together, establish [*collocation*].

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try, *usually w. inf.* [*conative*].

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus (**con + scandō,** climb), *tr.*, mount, a*scend.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus (**con + scrībō**), *tr.*, enroll [*conscription*].

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (**con + sequor**), *tr.*, follow closely, overtake, reach, attain [*consequence*].

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con + servō**), *tr.*, save fully, preserve [*conservation*].

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum (**con + sīdō,** seat), *intr.*, halt, encamp.

cōnsilium, cōnsīlī, *n.*, advice, plan, purpose, design [*counsel, counselor*].

cōnsistō, -sistere, cōnstitī, —— (**con** + **sistō**, place), *intr.*, take one's place, stop [*consistent*].

cōnsōlātiō, cōnsōlātiōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **cōnsōlor**, comfort), condolence [*consolation*].

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **cōnspiciō**), sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus (**con** + **speciō**, look at), *tr.*, catch sight of, see [*conspicuous*].

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus (**con** + **statuō**, place), *tr.*, set up, station, decide [*constitution*].

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus (**con** + **suēscō**, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, become accustomed, *w. inf.*

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, *f.* (*cf.* **cōnsuēscō**), custom, habit.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, *consul.* The two chief magistrates at Rome were called consuls.

cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *tr.*, *consult.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus (**con** + **sūmō**), *tr.*, use up, devour, destroy; *passive*, spend [*consume*].

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (**con** + **tendō**, stretch), *intr.*, struggle; hasten [*contend*, *contention*].

continenter (**contineō**), *adv.*, constantly, continually.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**con** + **teneō**), *tr.*, hold together, *contain*, confine [*continent*].

contrā, *prep. w. Acc.*, against; *also adv.*, on the *contrary*.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (**con** + **veniō**), *intr.*, come together, meet, *convene*.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **conveniō**), a coming together, meeting [*convent*].

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con** + **vocō**), *tr.*, call together, summon [*convoke*].

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply; *pl.*, forces [*copious*].

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart [*cordial*].

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, a proper name.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*) [*cornucopia*].

corpus, corpŏris, *n.*, body [*corporal*, *corpse*].

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent, thick.

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *tr.*, loan, intrust; *intr.*, believe, trust, *w. Dat.* [*credible*, *credit*].

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, make [*create*].

crūdēlis, -e (**crūdus**, raw), *cruel.*

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault [*culprit*].

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **culpa**), *tr.*, blame [*culpable*].

cum, *prep. w. Abl.*, with; *in composition*, **com-, con-, co-.**

cum, *conj.*, when, since, although. *See Ch. LIX.*

cupiditās, cupiditātis, *f.* (*cf.* **cupidus**), desire, greed [*cupidity*].

cupidus, -a, -um (*cf.* **cupiō**), desirous, eager, *w. Gen.*

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *tr.*, desire.

cūr, *interrog. adv.*, why?
cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention [sine*cure*].
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, take care, care for [*curat*or].
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, *intr.*, run [*current*].
custōdia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **custos**), guard, guarding [*custody*].
custōs, custōdis, *m.*, guard, guardsman, watchman [*custod*ian].

D

dē, *prep. w. Abl.*, down from; of, concerning [*de*scend].
dea, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **deus**), goddess.
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (**dē** + **habeō**), *tr.*, owe, ought [*debt*].
decem, *indecl.*, ten [*Decem*ber].
decimus, -a, -um (*cf.* **decem**), tenth [*decim*al].
dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī *or* **-currī, -cursum** (**dē** + **currō**), *intr.*, run down, move, maneuver.
dēdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**dē** + **dicō**, dedicate), *tr.*, *dedicate*.
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus (**dē** + **dō**), *tr.*, give up, surrender.
dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**dē** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, bring down, lead down [*deduce*].
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *tr.*, *defend* [*defense*].
dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**dē** + **faciō**), *tr.*, fail; revolt, rebel [*deficient*].
dēformis, -e (**dē** + **forma**, form), ugly, stunted [*deformed*].
dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**dē** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw down, deprive [*deject*ed].
deinde (**dē** + **inde**), *adv.*, then, next.
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, delight, please [*delecta*ble].
dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *tr.*, destroy [*delete*].
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus (**dē** + **legō**, choose), *tr.*, select, choose.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**dē** + **mōnstrō**, show), *tr.*, point out, show [*demonstrat*ion].
dēnsus, -a, -um, thick, *dense*.
dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (**dē** + **pōnō**), *tr.*, put down, put aside [*depose*].
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum (**dē** + **scandō**, climb), *intr.*, climb down, go down, *descend*.
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum (**dē** + **saliō**, leap), *intr.*, leap down.
dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus (**dē** + **sistō**, place), *intr.*, *desist* (from), cease (from).
dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**dē** + **spērō**), *tr. and intr.*, lose hope, *despair* (of).
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus (**dē** + **speciō**, look at), *tr.*, look down on, *despise* [*despic*able].
dēsum, -esse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus (**dē** + **sum**), *intr.*, be lacking.
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus (**dē** + **terreō**), *tr.*, frighten off, hinder [*deter*].
deus, deī, *m.*, a god, God [*de*ify].

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (on the right) [*dexter*ous].

dī, *Nom. pl. of* **deus**.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *tr.*, say, speak, tell [pre*dict*].

diēs, diēī, *m.* (*rarely f. in sing.*), day [*dia*ry].

difficilis, -e (**dis** + **facilis**), *difficult*.

difficultās, difficultātis, *f.* (*cf.* **difficilis**), *difficulty*.

dīgnitās, dīgnitātis, *f.* (*cf.* **dīgnus**), worth, position, *dignity*.

dīgnus, -a, -um, worthy [*dign*ify].

dīligēns, dīligentis (*pres. part. of* **dīligō**), painstaking, careful [*diligent*].

dīligenter (*adv. fr.* **dīligēns**), with care [*diligent*ly].

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, painstaking, care, *diligence*.

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus (**dis** + **legō**, choose), *tr.*, love, esteem [pre*dilection*].

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight.

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**dis** + **mittō**), *tr.*, send away, *dismiss*.

dis-, *inseparable prefix*, apart, not [*dis*please].

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**dis** + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go away, depart.

discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil [*disciple*].

displicet, displicēre, displicuit (**dis** + **placeō**), *impers.*, it *displeases*, *w. Dat.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**dis** + **putō**), *tr.*, *or with* **dē** *and Abl.*, argue, discuss, *dispute*.

dissimilis, -e (**dis** + **similis**), unlike [*dissimil*ar].

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus (**dis** + **tribuō**), *tr.*, *distribute*.

dīves, dīvitis, rich.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *tr.*, *divide* [*divis*ion].

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (*cf.* **dīves**), wealth.

dō, dăre, dedī, dătus, *tr.*, give, render [*data*].

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, *tr.*, teach, show [*doc*ile].

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *intr.*, feel pain, be sorrowful; *tr.*, grieve over [con*dole*, *dole*ful].

dolor, dolōris, *m.* (*cf.* **doleō**), pain, grief [*dolor*ous].

domicilium, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **domus**), home [*domicile*].

domina, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **dominus**), mistress, lady.

dominus, -ī, *m.* (*cf.* **domus**), master, head of a house, Lord [*domin*ate].

domus, -ūs, *f.*, home, house [*dome*].

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift [*don*ation].

dormiō, -īre, dormīvī, dormītum, *intr.*, sleep [*dormit*ory].

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cf.* **dubius**), *intr.*, *doubt*, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful [*dubious*].

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *tr.*, lead [con*duct*].

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; until.

duo, duae, duo, two [*du*et].

duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.

duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth.
duodēvīcēnsimus, -a, -um, eighteenth.
duodēvīgintī, *indecl.*, eighteen.
dux, ducis, *m.* (*cf.* **dūcō**), leader, general.

E

ē, ex, *prep. w. Abl.*, out from [*ex*tract].
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**ē** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead out [*educe*].
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**ex** + **faciō**), *tr.*, bring about, accomplish [*efficient*].
ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I [*ego*tistical].
ēgregius, -a, -um (*cf.* **ē** + **grex**), excellent, eminent, unusual [*egregi*ous].
ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**ē** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw out [*eject*].
elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.
Elisabētha, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.
ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, ——, *intr.*, move, *emigrate*.
emō, emere, ēmī, emptus, *tr.*, take, buy [pre*ëmpt*].
enim, *conj.* (*postpositive*), for.
Ennius, -ī, *m.*, an early Roman poet.
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (**ē** + **nūntiō**) *tr.*, announce [*enunciate*].
eō, *adv.*, thither, there.
Ēpīrūs, -ī, *m.*, a region in western Greece.
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter [*epistle*].
eques, equitis, *m.* (*cf.* **equus**), horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, equestris, equestre (*cf.* **eques**), of cavalry [*equestr*ian].
equitātus, -ūs (*cf.* **eques**), *m.*, cavalry.
equus, equī, *m.*, horse.
ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus (**ē** + **rapiō**), *tr.*, snatch away.
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, wander about, stray [*errant*].
et, *conj.*, and, also, even (*etc.*); **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, even, also, indeed.
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ē** + **vocō**), *tr.*, call out [*evoke*].
ex, *see* **ē**.
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ex** + **cēdō**), *tr.*, go out, depart [*exceed*, *excess*ive]; **ē vītā excēdere**, to die.
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**ex** + **capiō**), *tr.*, take, accept [*except*].
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -tātus (**ex** + **citō**, arouse), *tr.*, stir, stir up [*excite*].
exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ex** + **clāmō**), *tr.*, cry aloud, *exclaim*.
exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus (**ex** + **claudō**, shut), *tr.*, shut out, cut off [*exclude*, *exclus*ive].
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, *example*, precedent [*exempl*ary].
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
exiguus, -a, -um, small.
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ex** + **aestimō**, consider), *tr.*, think, consider [*estimate*].
exitus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **exeō**, go out), a going forth, outcome, departure; way out, outlet [*exit*].
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, (**ex** + **pellō**), *tr.*, drive out, *expel* [*expuls*ion].

experior, experīrī, expertus, *tr.*, try out, test [*expert*].

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* (*cf.* **explōrō**), scout.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, investigate, *explore*.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (**ex + pōnō**), *tr.*, set forth, explain [*expose*].

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ex + pugnō**), *tr.*, capture by assault.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ex + spectō**), *tr.*, await, wait, *expect*.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus (**ex + struō**, pile up), *tr.*, pile up, erect [*cf.* con*struct*].

F

Fabius, Fabī, *m.*, Fabius, a Roman family name.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story [*fable*, *fabulous*].

facile (*adv. fr.* **facilis**), easily.

facilis, facile (*cf.* **faciō**), easy [*facile*].

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, do, make [*fact*ory]; **certiōrem facere,** to inform.

factum, -ī, *n.* (*perf. part. of* **faciō**), deed, act, thing done [*fact*].

falsus, -a, -um (*cf.* **fallō**, deceive), *false*.

fāma, -ae, *f.*, reputation, report [*fam*ous].

familia, -ae, *f.*, household, slaves [*family*].

familiāris, -e (*cf.* **familia**), of the household, intimate [*familiar*].

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman [*feminine*].

fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.

fidēs, fideī, *f.* (*cf.* **fīdō**, trust), good faith, protection [bona *fide*].

fīdus, -a, -um, faithful, loyal [*fid*elity].

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter [*fili*al].

fīlius, fīlī, *m.*, son [*fili*al].

fīnis, fīnis, *m.*, end; *pl.*, boundaries, territory [*fin*al].

fīnitimus, -a, -um (*cf.* **fīnis**), neighboring.

firmē, *adv.*, *firm*ly.

firmus, -a, -um, strong [*firm*].

flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, blow [in*flate*].

fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave, billow [*fluctu*ate].

flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river [*flume*].

focus, -ī, *m.*, fireplace, hearth.

fortis, -e, brave [*fort*].

fortiter (*adv. fr.* **fortis**), bravely.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* (*cf.* **fortis**), bravery, courage [*fortitude*].

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, *fortune*, wealth.

forum, -ī, *n.*, market place, *forum*.

fossa, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **fodiō**, dig), ditch [*fosse*]; **fossam perdūcere,** to dig a ditch.

frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother [*frater*nal].

frūmentum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **fruor**), grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy, *w. Abl.* [*fruit*].

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain [*frustr*ate].

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight [re*fuge*]; **in fugam dāre,** to put to flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee [*fugit*ive].

G

Gāius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, comprising modern France, Belgium, Holland, and the western parts of Switzerland.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*

Gallus, -a, -um, of Gaul, *Gal*lic.

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul (inhabitant of Gallia).

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation [*gen*tle].

genus, generis, *n.*, race, kind [*genus*].

geōgraphicus, -a, -um, geographical.

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany.

Germānus, -ī, *m.*, a German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *tr.*, carry, wear, accomplish [belli*gerent*]; **bellum gerere,** to wage war.

gladius, gladī, *m.*, sword [*gladia*tor].

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; *as subst.*, **Graecus, -ī,** *m.*, a Greek.

grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, favor; *pl.*, thanks [*grace, grati*tude]; **grātiās agere,** to give thanks.

gravis, -e, heavy, serious [*grave*].

graviter (*adv. fr.* **gravis**), heavily, weightily, seriously, deeply.

grex, gregis, *m.*, flock, herd [con*greg*ate].

H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, *tr.*, hold, have, keep [ex*hibit*].

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, in*habit*; *tr. and intr.*, live (in), dwell (in) [in*habitant*].

haedus, -ī, *m.*, kid, goat.

Hannibal, Hannibalis, *m.*, Hannibal, a famous general of the Carthaginians, who waged war against the Romans from 218–202 B.C.

Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman Province.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters [*hibern*ate].

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this, this . . . here, the latter; he, she, it.

hīc (*adv. fr.* **hic**), here.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus (*cf.* **hiems**), *intr.*, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

hōdiē, *adv.* (**hōc diē**), to-day.

homō, hominis, *m.*, *f.*, human being, man [*homi*cide].

honor, -ōris, *m.*, office [*honor*].

hōra, -ae, *f.*, *hour*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, urge, ex*hort*.

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden [*horti*culture].

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy (*of the state*) [*hos*tile].

hūc (*adv. fr.* **hic**), hither.

I

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, ——, *intr.*, lie, lie down, lie dead [ad*jacent*].

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *tr.*, throw, hurl [e*jac*ulate].

iam, *adv.*, by this time, already; **nōn iam,** no longer.

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.*, the Janiculum, a hill across the Tiber from Rome.
ibi (*adv. fr.* **is**), there.
īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same [*iden*tify].
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit.
igitur, *adv.*, therefore.
ignis, ignis, *m.*, fire [*ign*ite].
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, not to know, be *ignorant* of [*ignore*].
ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus (**in** (*neg.*) + [**g**]**nōscō,** know), *intr.*, pardon, *w. Dat.* [*ign*oble].
ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that, that . . . there, the former; he, she, it.
imāgō, imāginis, *f.*, *image*, likeness, ghost [*imagine*].
immānis, -e, great, huge, large.
immortālis, -e (**in** (*neg.*) + **mortālis,** mortal), without death, *immortal* [*immortal*ity].
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **impediō**), hindrance; *pl.*, baggage [*impediment*].
impediō, -īre, impedīvī, impedītus, *tr.*, hinder, *impede*.
impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus (**in** + **pellō**), *tr.*, drive on, incite [*impel*].
imperātor, -tōris, *m.* (*cf.* **imperō**), commander, general [*emperor*].
imperītus, -a, -um (**in** (*neg.*) + **perītus**), unskilled, inexperienced, *w. Gen.*
imperium, impérī, *n.* (*cf.* **imperō**), command, power [*empire, imperial*].
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (**in** + **parō**), *tr. and intr.*, command, order, *w. Dat. of person* [*imperative*].
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, get (*by request*), secure permission, gain.
impetus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **in** + **petō**), attack [*impetuous*].
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**in** + **plōrō,** cry out), *tr.*, beg earnestly, *implore*.
impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (**in** + **pōnō**), *tr.*, put on, *impose*.
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**in** + **portō**), *tr.*, bring in, *import*.
imprōvīsō, *adv.* (*cf.* **in** (*neg.*) + **prōvīsus,** foreseen), unexpectedly [*improvid*ent].
impudēns, impudentis, *impudent*.
impudīcus, -a, -um, shameless.
in, *prep. w. Acc. and Abl.; w. Acc.*, into, against, upon; *w. Abl.*, in, on, upon.
incendium, incendī, *n.* (*cf.* **incendō**), burning, fire, conflagration [*incendi*ary].
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus (**in** + **candeō,** glow), *tr.*, set on fire, light [*incense*].
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**in** + **capiō**), *tr.*, begin, undertake [*incipient*].
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**in** + **citō,** rouse), *tr.*, *incite*.
incola, -ae, *m. and f.* (*cf.* **incolō**), inhabitant [*colony*].
incolō, -ere, incoluī, ——, *tr.*, inhabit; live in; *intr.*, dwell, live.
incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe.
inde, *adv.*, from there, thence.
indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus (**in** + **dīcō**), *tr.*, declare [*indite*].

indīgnus, -a, -um (in (*neg.*) + **dīgnus**), unworthy.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**in** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead in [*induce*].

īnfīdus, -a, -um (in + **fīdus**), disloyal, unfaithful, false.

īnfrā, *prep. w. Acc.*, beneath, inferior to.

ingēns, ingentis, great, enormous.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**in** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw into, inspire, cast on [*inject*].

inimīcitia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **inimīcus**), *enmity*.

inimīcus, -a, -um (in (*neg.*) + **amīcus**), unfriendly, hostile; *as subst.*, enemy [*inimic*al].

inīquitās, -tātis, *f.* (*cf.* **inīquus**), unevenness, difficulty [*iniqu*ity].

inīquus, -a, -um (in (*neg*). + **aequus**), uneven, unfavorable, unfair.

iniūria, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **in** (*neg.*) + **iūs**), wrong [*injury*].

iniūstus, -a, -um (in (*neg.*) + **iūstus**), un*just*.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, need, lack.

inquam, inquis, inquit, *def.*, say, says, said (*postpositive*).

īnscrīptiō, īnscrīptiōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **īnscrībō**, write upon), *inscription*.

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (**in** + **sequor**), *tr.*, pursue.

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus (**in** + **statuō**, place), *tr.*, establish, undertake, begin, put in place [*institute*].

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* (*perf. pass. part. of* **īnstituō**), custom, *institut*ion.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus (**in** + **struō**, pile up), *tr.*, arrange [*instruct*]; **aciem īnstruere**, to draw up a line of battle.

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island [pen*insula*].

integer, integra, integrum, whole, unimpaired [*integer*].

intellegō, -legere, intellēxī, intellēctus (**inter** + **legō**), *tr.*, understand [*intelligent, intellect*].

inter, *prep. w. Acc.*, between, among [*inter*rupt].

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**inter** + **capiō**), *tr.*, *intercept*, cut off.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus (**inter** + **claudō**), *tr.*, shut off, cut off, stop.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**inter** + **faciō**), *tr.*, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**inter** + **mittō**), *tr.*, interrupt, discontinue, neglect [*intermittent*].

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**inter** + **rogō**), *tr.*, ask, question [*interrogate*].

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, *enter*.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, (**in** + **veniō**), *tr.*, come upon, find [*invent*].

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (**in** + **videō**), *intr.*, *w. Dat.*, *envy* [*invid*ious].

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, *invite*.

iocōsus, -a, -um, full of jesting, droll, *jocose*.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive and dem. pron.*, self, the very.

īra, -ae, *f.*, wrath, anger [*ire*].

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, this, that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, that of yours.
ita (*adv. fr.* **is**), so.
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.
item, *adv.*, likewise [*item*].
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, route [*itiner*ary].
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *tr.*, order.
iūdex, iūdicis, *m.* (*cf.* **iūs** + **dīcō**), judge, juror [*judic*ial].
iūdicium, iūdícī, *n.* (*cf.* **iūs** + **dīcō**), trial, judgment, court [*judic*iary].
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **iūdex**) *tr.*, judge, consider.
Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura mountains, in eastern Gaul.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, law, right, justice.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath [*juris*prudence].
iussus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **iubeō**), order, command; **meō iussū,** at my order.
iūstitia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **iūstus**), *justice.*
iūstus, -a, -um, *just.*

L

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, trouble [*labor*ious].
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cf.* **labor**), *intr.*, *labor*, work, suffer [e*labo*rate, *labor*atory].
lac, lactis, *m.*, milk [*lact*eal].
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.
laetus, -a, -um, pleased, happy.
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin.
lātus, -a, -um, wide [*lat*itude].
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **laus**), *tr.*, praise [*laud*able].
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.
lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus, *tr.*, wash, bathe.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, envoy; *of the army,* lieutenant [*legate*].
legiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **legō**), *legion,* regiment.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *tr.*, pick, gather, read [*leg*ible].
lēniō, -īre, lēnīvī, lēnītus (*cf.* **lēnis,** mild), *tr.*, assuage, soothe [*lenient*].
leō, leōnis, *m.*, lion.
levis, -e, light (*in weight*) [*lev*ity].
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law [*leg*al].
līber, -a, -um, free [*liber*al].
liber, librī, *m.*, book [*libr*ary].
līberē (*adv. fr.* **līber**), freely.
līberī, līberōrum, *m. pl.* (*cf.* **līber**), children.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **līber**), *tr.*, set free [*liberate*].
lībertās, lībertātis, *f.* (*cf.* **līber**), freedom, *liberty.*
licet, licēre, licuit, licitum est, *impers.*, it is lawful, it is permitted [il*licit*].
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, *language* [*lingu*ist].
littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of alphabet*); *pl.*, writing, a letter; *liter*ature.
lītus, lītoris, *n.*, shore.
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **locus**), *tr.*, place, put, set [*locate*].
locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.*, **loca, locōrum,** *n.*, place [*loc*al].
longē (*adv. fr.* **longus**), far, by far.
longus, -a, -um, *long* [e*long*ate].

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *tr.*, talk, speak [*loqu*acious].
lūmen, lūminis, *n.* (*cf.* **lūx**), light, lamp [*lumin*ous].
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light [*luc*id]; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak.

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, stain, spoil [im*maculate*].
magis (*comp. adv. of* **magnus**), more.
magister, magistrī, *m.*, teacher.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **magister**), magistracy [*magistrate*].
magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* (*cf.* **magnus**), greatness, size, importance [*magnitude*].
magnōpere (**magnō** + **opere,** *abl. of* **opus,** work), *adv.*, greatly.
magnus, -a, -um, large, great [*magn*ify].
maior, maius (*comp. adj. of* **magnus**), greater [*major, major*ity].
maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*, ancestors, forefathers; elders.
male (*adv. fr.* **malus**), badly, ill [*male*factor].
malum, -ī, *n.* (**malus**), evil.
malus, -a, -um, bad [*mal*formation].
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, put into the hands of, intrust, order, *w. Dat. of person* [com*mand*].
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*, *remain* [per*manent*].
Mānlius, Mānlī, *m.*, Manlius, a Roman family name.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, group, force [*manu*al].
Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman praenomen [*Mark*].
mare, -is, *n.*, sea [*mar*ine].
maritimus, -a, -um (*cf.* **mare**), naval [*maritime*].
marītus, -ī, *m.*, husband.
māter, mātris, *f.*, mother [*mater*nal].
mātrōna, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **māter**), married woman, *matron;* woman of rank.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, early [*mature*].
maximē, *adv.*, most, especially.
maximus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. of* **magnus**), greatest, very great [*maximum*].
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of [*medium*].
melior, -ius (*comp. adj. of* **bonus**), better [a*melior*ate].
melius (*comp. adv. of* **bene**), better.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, *memory*.
mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind [*ment*al].
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.
mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.*, month.
mentiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **mēns**), *mention*.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, *mer*chant, trader.
merīdiēs, -ēī, *f.* (**media diēs**), *midday*.
meus, mea, meum, my, mine.
Midās, -ae, *m.*, king of Phrygia.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier [*milit*ary].
mīlitia, -ae, *f.*, military service, war [*militia*].
mīlle, *indecl. adj.*, one thousand; *pl.*, **mīlia** *or* **mīllia,** *usually as a noun*, thousands (of) [*mile*].
minimus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. of* **parvus**), smallest, youngest [*minim*ize].
minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, threaten, *w. Dat.* [im*min*ent].

minor, minus (*comp. adj. of* **parvus**), smaller, younger; **minor nātū**, younger [*minor*ity].

minus, *comp. adv.*, less; **sī minus**, if not; **minimē**, *superl. adv.*, least, not at all.

mīrāculum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **mīror**, wonder), marvel, *miracle*.

miser, misera, miserum, poor, wretched [*miser*].

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *tr.*, send [sub*mit*, pro*mise*].

modo, *adv.*, only; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

modus, -ī, *m.*, manner [*mode*].

moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus, *tr.*, advise, warn [ad*monish*].

mōns, montis, *m.*, *mount*ain.

monumentum, -ī, *n.*, *monument*.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death [*mort*al].

mortuus, -a, -um (*cf.* **mors**), dead [*mortu*ary].

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, habit [*mor*al].

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *tr.*, *move* [re*mote*].

mox, *adv.*, soon.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* (*cf.* **multus**), great number, *multitude*.

multum (*adv. fr.* **multus**), much.

multus, -a, -um, much, many [*multi*ply].

mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *tr.*, fortify, protect [am*munition*].

mūrus, mūrī, *m.*, wall [*mur*al].

N

nam, *conj.*, for.

Narbō, -ōnis, *f.*, Narbo, a city in southeastern Gaul.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, tell, relate [*narrate*].

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born [*nat*al].

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **nāscor**), tribe, race [*nation*].

nātūra, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **nāscor**), *nature* [*natur*al].

(**nātus, -ūs**, *m.*), *in Abl. sing. only* (*cf.* **nāscor**), birth [*nat*ive, *nat*ivity]; **maior nātū**, older; **minor nātū**, younger.

nauta, -ae, *m.* (*cf.* **nāvis**), sailor [*nau*tical].

nāvigium, nāvigī, *n.* (*cf.* **nāvigō**), vessel, boat.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **nāvis** + **agō**), *tr.*, sail over, *navigate*; *intr.*, sail, set sail.

nāvis, nāvis, *f.*, ship [*navy*, *nav*al].

-ne, *encl.*, *sign of a simple direct question; w. indir. question*, whether.

nē, *adv. and conj.*: *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem** (*inclosing the words modified*), not even; *conj.*, that not, lest.

nec. *See* **neque**.

necesse, *indecl. adj.* (*Nom. and Acc.*), *necessary*.

negōtium, negōtī, *n.*, business, trouble [*negoti*ate].

nēmō, *Dat.* **nēminī**, *m. and f.*, no one. *The Gen. and Abl. sing. and the pl. are replaced by* **nūllus**.

neque *or* **nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, neither . . . nor.

Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, a people of northern Gaul.

nesciō, -īre, nescīvī, —— (ne (*neg.*) + sciō), *tr.*, not know.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two) [*neutr*al].

nihil, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing [an*nihil*ate].

Nīlus, -ī, *m.*, the Nile, the river of Egypt.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nōbilis, -e, famous, *noble*.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *intr.*, harm, injure, *w. Dat.* [in*nocent*].

noctū, *adv.* (*cf.* **nox**), at night.

nocturnus, -a, -um (*cf.* **nox**), at night, *nocturn*al.

[**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** —— (ne (*neg.*) + **volō,** be willing), *tr. and intr.*, be unwilling, not to wish] **nōlī, nōlīte,** *w. inf.*, do not.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name [*nomin*al].

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **nōmen**), *tr.*, name [*nominate*].

nōn, *adv.*, not [*non*-productive]; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also.

nōnne, *adv.* (**nōn** + *interrog.* **-ne**), *sign of a question expecting the answer "Yes."*

nōn nūllus, -a, -um (**nōn** + **nūllus**), some one, some; *usually in pl.*

nōnus, -a, -um (*cf.* **novem**), *adj.*, ninth [the *Nones*].

nōs, nostrum *or* **nostrī,** we, *pl. of* **ego.**

noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours [*nostrum*].

nōtus, -a, -um, known, well-known [*not*ed].

novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine.

novus, -a, -um, new [*nov*el, *Nova* Scotia].

nox, noctis, *f.*, night [*noct*urnal].

nūbēs, nūbis, *f.*, cloud.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, none; *in Gen. and Abl.*, no one.

num, *interrog. adv.*, *sign of a direct question expecting the answer "No". In indir. question,* whether.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number [*nu*-*mer*ous].

Numitor, -tōris, *m.*, an Alban king, grandfather of Romulus.

numquam, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, an*nounce*, report, declare [pro*nunci*ation].

O

ob, *prep. w. Acc.*, on account of [*ob*struct].

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**ob** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw against, oppose [*object*].

obses, obsidis, *m. or f.*, hostage.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus (**ob** + **sedeō**), *tr.*, besiege [*obsess*ion].

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**ob** + **teneō**), *tr.*, *obtain*, gain, hold, have.

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus (**ob** + **caedō,** cut), *tr.*, cut down, kill.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ob** + **capiō**), *tr.*, take, seize, *occupy*.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth [*octave*].

octō, *indecl. adj.*, eight [*octo*roon].

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye [*ocul*ist].

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *tr.*, hate [*od*ious].

odium, odī, *n.*, hatred [*odium*].

officium, officī, *n.*, duty, service, courtesy [*office*].

ōlim, *adv.* (*cf.* **ollus**, *old form of* **ille**), long ago, once upon a time, once.

omnis, -e, every, all [*omnibus*, *omni*potent].

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, it is fitting.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (**ob** + **pōnō**), *tr.*, put against, *oppose* [*opponent*].

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus (**ob** + **premō**, press), *tr.*, overwhelm, crush [*oppress*].

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ob** + **pugnō**), *tr.*, attack.

[ops], opis, *f.*, aid, assistance; wealth; *pl.*, resources [*op*ulent].

optimē (*superl. adv. of* **bene**), best, very well.

optimus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. of* **bonus**), best, very good [*optimist*].

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **ōrō**), speaking, speech [*oration*]; **ōrātiōnem habēre**, to make a speech.

ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.* (*cf.* **ōrō**), speaker, pleader, *orator*.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, rank, class, order [*ordinary*].

orīgō, orīginis, *f.* (*cf.* **orior**), descent, *origin*.

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise, rise [*orient*].

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **ōrnō**, adorn), jewel [*ornament*].

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, speak, beg, ask [ad*ore*].

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth [*or*al].

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus (**ob[s]** + **tendō**, stretch), *tr.*, show [*ostentation*].

P

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **pāx**), *tr.*, *pac*ify, subdue.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district [*pagan*].

pār, pāris, equal, *w. Dat.* [*par*].

parcō, -ere, pepercī *and* **parsī, parsum**, *intr.*, spare, *w. Dat.* [*pars*imony].

pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, *intr.*, obey, *w. Dat.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, get ready, pre*pare* for.

pars, partis, *f.*, *part* [*parti*al].

parum, *adv.*, little, too little.

parvulus, -a, -um (*cf.* **parvus**), very small, tiny.

parvus, -a, -um, small, short.

passus, passūs, *m.*, *pace* (*about five feet*); **mille passūs**, thousand paces.

pateō, -ēre, patuī, ——, *intr.*, lie open, be obvious, extend [*patent*].

pater, patris, *m.*, father [*pater*nal, *patri*mony].

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr.*, allow, suffer [*patient*].

patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, fatherland, country [*patri*ot].

paucī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few [*pau*city].

paulō, *adv.* (*w. comp.*), a little; **paulō post**, a little later.

pauper, pauperis, poor.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace [the *Pac*ific].

pecūnia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **pecus**), money [*pecuni*ary].

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle [*pec*uliar].
pedes, peditis, *m.* (*cf.* **pēs**), foot-soldier; *pl.*, infantry.
pedester, pedestris, pedestre (*cf.* **pedes**), infantry [*pedestr*ian].
peior, peius (*comp. adj. of* **malus**), worse.
peius (*comp. adv. of* **male**), worse.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive, defeat [re*pel*, re*pulse*].
per, *prep. w. Acc.*, through, across, during, by [im*per*vious].
perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (**per + dō**), *tr.*, ruin, destroy [*perdition*].
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**per + dūcō**), *tr.*, lead through, extend.
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**per + faciō**), *tr.*, accomplish [*perfect*].
perīculōsus, -a, -um (*cf.* **perīculum**), dangerous.
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, trial [*peril*].
perītus, -a, -um, skilled, experienced, *w. Gen.* [ex*pert*].
permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus (**per + maneō**), *intr.*, remain, hold out [*permanent*].
permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**per + mittō**), *tr.*, *permit*, grant, intrust [*permiss*ion].
permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (**per + moveō**), *tr.*, arouse, disturb.
perpaucī, -ae, -a, *pl.* (**per + paucī**), very few.
perpetuus, -a, -um, everlasting [*perpetu*al].
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (**per + sequor**), *tr.*, *pursue* closely [*persecut*ion].
perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus (**per + speciō**, look at), *tr.*, see through, understand [*perspicu*ous].
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (**per + suādeō**, persuade), *intr.*, *persuade*, *w. Dat.*
perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus (**per + terreō**), *tr.*, alarm, frighten.
pertimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —— (*cf.* **per + timeō**), *tr. and intr.*, be afraid, become very much frightened, fear greatly.
pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —— (**per + teneō**), *intr.*, reach, extend, *pertain* [*pertinent*].
perturbō, -turbāre, -turbāvī, -turbātus (**per + turbō**, confuse), *tr.*, dis*turb*, alarm [*perturbat*ion].
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (**per + veniō**), *intr.*, come through, arrive, come.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot [*ped*al].
pessimē (*superl. adv. of* **male**), worst, very badly.
pessimus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. of* **malus**), worst, very bad [*pessimist*].
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus, *tr.*, beg, seek [re*peat*, *petit*ion].
Pharaō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pharaoh, ruler of Egypt.
philosophus, -ī, *m.*, philosopher.
Phrygia, -ae, f., a country of Asia Minor.
pictūra, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **pingō**, paint), *picture*.

placeō, -ēre, placuī, ——, *intr.*, *please; impers.*, **placet,** it pleases, *w. Dat.* [*plac*ate].

plānitiēs, plānitiēī, *f.*, *plain.*

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, common people.

plēnus, -a, -um, full [*plen*ty].

plūrimum (*superl. adv. of* **multum**), most, very much.

plūrimus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. of* **multus**), very many, very much; *pl.*, very many, most.

plūs, *n.* (*comp. adj. of* **multus**), more; *pl.*, **plūrēs, -a,** more; *comp. adv.*, more [*plur*al].

Plūtarchus, -ī, *m.*, Plutarch, a Greek biographer.

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, *pen*alty; **poenam dare,** to be punished, pay the penalty.

Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian; *as subst.*, **Poenī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, Carthaginians [*Punic*].

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.

Pompeius, -ī (**Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus**), Pompey, a Roman general.

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, apple.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *tr.*, put, place, establish [*posit*ion]; **castra pōnere,** to pitch camp.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge [*pont*oon].

populus, -ī, *m.*, *people* [*popul*ar].

Porsena, -ae, *m.*, Etruscan king.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate [*port*al].

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, carry, bring [*port*er].

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, *port.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, ——, *tr.*, demand.

possum, posse, potuī, —— (**potis,** able + **sum**), be able, can [*posse, potent, poss*ible].

post, *prep. w. Acc.*, after, behind; *adv.*, afterwards [*post*pone].

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.

postquam, *conj.* (**post** + **quam,** than), after.

postrīdiē, *adv.* (**posterus,** next + **diēs**), on the next day.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, demand [ex*postulate*].

potēns, potentis (*pres. part. of* **possum**), powerful [*potent*ial].

potestās, potestātis, *f.* (*cf.* **potis,** able), power, authority, chance.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *intr.*, get possession of, *w. Abl.*

potissimum, *superl. adv.*, rather, sooner, preferably.

potius, *comp. adv.*, rather, sooner, preferably.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (**prae** + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go before, lead the way [*precede*].

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**prae,** before + **capiō**), *tr.*, order, instruct, advise, *w. Dat.* [*precept*].

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**prae,** before + **mittō**), *tr.*, send ahead [*premise*].

praemium, praemī, *n.*, reward [*premium*].

praesciō, -scīre, -scīvī (**prae** + **sciō**), *tr.*, know beforehand.

praesēns, praesentis (*pres. part. of* **praesum,** be before), in person, *present.*

praesidium, praesīdī, *n.* (*cf.* **prae** + **sedeō**), garrison, guard.

praeter, *prep. w. Acc.*, along, except.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *tr.*, *press*, op*press*; sup*press*, hide.
pretiōsus, -a, -um (*cf.* **pretium**), costly, *precious*.
pretium, pretī, *n.*, price.
prīdiē, *adv.* (**prior + diēs**), on the day before.
prīmō (*adv. fr.* **prīmus**), first, at first.
prīmum (*adv. fr.* **prīmus**), first.
prīmus, -a, -um, first [*prime*, *prime*r].
prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.* (*cf.* **prīmus + capiō**), leader, chief man [*princip*al].
prior, *comp. adj.*, earlier, first [*prior*, *prior*ity].
prīvātus, -a, -um, *private*.
prō, *prep. w. Abl.*, in front of, on behalf of, for.
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (**prō + cēdō**), *intr.*, go forward, advance [*proceed*, *process*].
prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**prō + dūcō**), *tr.*, lead forward [*produce*, *product*].
proelium, proelī, *n.*, battle; **proelium committere,** to begin battle.
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum (*cf.* **prōficiō,** advance), *intr.*, start, set out, march.
prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (**prō + habeō**), *tr.*, prevent, *prohibit*.
prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**prō + iaciō**), *tr.*, throw forward [*project*, *project*ile].
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**prō + nūntiō**), *tr.*, proclaim [*pronounce*].
prope, *prep. w. Acc.*, near; *adv.*, near, nearly, almost.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, hurry.
propinquus, -a, -um, near; *as subst., m. and f.*, a relative [*propinqu*ity].
propior, -ius (*comp. adj. fr. adv.* **prope**), nearer.
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (**prō + pōnō**), *tr.*, put before, *propose*.
propter, *prep. w. Acc.*, on account of.
proptereā, *adv.*, for this reason; **proptereā quod,** because.
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (**prō + sequor**), *tr.*, follow forth, escort [*prosecute*].
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (**prō + videō**), *tr.*, foresee [*provide*, *provis*ion].
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, *province*.
proximus, -a, -um (*superl. adj. from adv.* **prope**), nearest, next [ap*proxim*ate].
prūdēns, prūdentis (*for* **prōvidēns,** *pres. part.*), foreseeing, wise, discreet, *prudent*.
prūdenter (*adv. fr.* **prūdēns**), wisely, discreetly, *prudent*ly.
prūdentia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **prūdēns**), wisdom, discretion, *prudence*.
pūblicus, -a, -um, belonging to the state, official, *public*.
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.
puer, puerī, *m.*, boy, [*puer*ile].
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight, *w.* **cum** *and Abl.* [*pugna*cious].
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic*, Carthaginian.
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (*cf.* **poena**), *tr.*, punish [*puni*tive].
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, think [dis*pute*, re*putat*ion].
putridus, -a, -um, decayed, rotten [*putrid*].
Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, king of Epirus.

Q

quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hundred.
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *tr.*, seek, ask, in*quire* [*quest*ion].
quam, *conj. and adv.*, than (*conj.*), how? (*adv. of degree*).
quantus, -a, -um, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, how great, how much, as great; **quantus . . . tantus,** as great . . . as [*quant*ity].
quārē, *adv.* (**quae** + **rēs**), and for that reason, wherefore.
quārtus, -a, -um (*cf.* **quattuor**), fourth [*quart*, *quart*er].
quattuor, *indecl.*, four.
quattuordecim (**quattuor** + **decem**), *indecl.*, fourteen.
-que, *encl. conj.*, and.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that, what.
quia, *conj.*, because.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *indef. pron.*, a certain (one), some one, something; *indef. adj.*, a certain, some.
quidem, *adv.* (*postpositive*), indeed, certainly, at least; *emphasizes the word immediately preceding.*
quīndecim (**quīnque** + **decem**), *indecl.*, fifteen.
quīnque, *indecl.*, five.
quīntus, -a, -um (*cf.* **quīnque**), fifth.
quīntus decimus, -a, -um, fifteenth.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? what?
quis, quid, *indef. pron.*, any one, anybody.
quō, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, whither.
quod, *conj.*, because; that, the fact that.
quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.
quoque, *adv.*, also.
quot, *indecl.*, *rel. adj.*, as many (as); *interrog. adj.*, how many?

R

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, *tr.*, snatch, seize [*rap*ine].
ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, account; theory; manner [*ratio*, *rational*l].
recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, (**re,** back + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go back, retire, withdraw [*recede*].
recēns, recentis, fresh, new, *recent.*
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**re,** back + **capiō**), *tr.*, take back, *receive;* **sē recipere,** to retreat [*recept*ion].
recumbō, -ere, recubuī, ——, *intr.*, lie down.
reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (**re[d],** back + **dō**), *tr.*, give back.
redigō, -igere, redēgī, redāctus (**re[d],** back + **agō**), *tr.*, drive back, reduce, render.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (**re,** back + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead back, bring back [*reduce, reduction*].

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (**re,** back + **faciō**), *tr.*, repair [*refectory*].

rēgīna, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **rēx**), queen.

regiō, regiōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **regō**), district [*region*].

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **rēx**), kingdom [*reign*].

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *tr.*, rule [*direct, correct*].

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (**re,** back + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw back [*reject*].

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus (**re,** back + **linquō,** leave), *tr.*, leave behind, abandon [*relinquish*].

reliquus, -a, -um (*cf.* **relinquō**), the rest of, remaining, remainder of [*relic*]; **reliquum est,** it remains.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, —— (**re,** back + **maneō**), *intr.*, stay behind, *remain.*

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**re,** back + **mittō**), *tr.*, send back [*remit, remission*].

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (**re,** back + **moveō**), *tr.*, move back, take away, *remove* [*remote*].

Remus, -ī, *m.*, the brother of Romulus.

repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsus (**re,** back + **pellō**), *tr.*, drive back, *repulse* [*repel*].

reperiō, -perīre, repperī, repertus (**re,** back + **pariō,** produce), *tr.*, find, discover.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus (**re,** back + **petō**), *tr.*, seek again, recall [*repeat, repetition*].

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**re,** back + **portō**), *tr.*, carry *or* bring back [*report*].

rēs, reī, *f.*, thing; **rēs frūmentāria,** grain supplies; **rēs mīlitāris,** military affairs, art of war; **rēs pūblica,** commonwealth, government, state; *republic.*

resistō, -sistere, restitī, —— (**re,** back + **sistō,** place), *intr.*, *resist, w. Dat.*

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum (**re,** back + **spondeō,** promise solemnly), *tr.*, answer, *respond* [*response, responsible*].

resūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus (**re,** back + **sūmō**), *tr.*, take up again, take back, *resume* [*resumption*].

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**re,** back + **teneō**), *tr.*, hold back, keep back, *retain* [*retention*].

reveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (**re,** back + **veniō**), *intr.*, come back, return [*revenue*].

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**re,** back + **vocō**), *tr.*, recall [*revoke*].

rēx, rēgis, *m.* (*cf.* **regō**), king [*regal*].

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine, the principal river of northern Europe.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *tr. and intr.*, laugh; laugh at [*deride, derision*].

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, ask [inter*rogate*].

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, the reputed founder of Rome.

rosa, -ae, *f.*, *rose.*

rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country [*rur*al]; **rūrī,** in the country.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, a people of central Italy.

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, *sacr*ed.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.

salūs, salūtis, *f.*, safety [*salut*ary].

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **salūs**), *tr.*, greet, pay one's respects to [*salute*].

salvus, -a, -um (*cf.* **salūs**), unharmed, safe, well, sound [*salv*ation].

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood [*sanguin*ary].

sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy [*sane*].

satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*, enough, quite [*satis*factory].

satis faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, *satisfy.*

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock.

schola, -ae, *f.*, *school* [*schol*ar].

scientia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **sciō**), knowledge [*science, scient*ific].

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *tr.*, know [omni*scient*].

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr.*, write [in*scribe*, pre*script*ion].

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield [es*cut*cheon].

secundus, -a, -um, *second.*

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdecim (**sex** + **decem**), *indecl.*, sixteen.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *intr.*, sit, settle [*sess*ion, *sedent*ary].

semper, *adv.*, always [*semp*iternal].

senātus, -ūs, *m.* (*cf.* **senex**), *senate.*

senectūs, senectūtis, *f.* (*cf.* **senex**), old age.

senex, senis, old, aged; *comp.*, **senior**; *as subst., m.*, old man.

sententia, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **sentiō**), thinking, thought, opinion [*sen-tent*ious].

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *tr.*, feel, realize [*senti*ment, *sense*].

sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultus, *tr.*, bury [*sepul*cher].

septem, *indecl.*, seven [*Septem*ber].

septendecim (**septem** + **decem**), *indecl.*, seventeen.

septentriō, -ōnis (*cf.* **septem**); *in pl.*, the seven stars of the Great Bear, the north.

septimus, -a, -um, seventh.

septimus decimus, -a, -um, seventeenth.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow [*seq*uel, con*secut*ive].

serviō, -īre, servīvī, servītum (*cf.* **servus**), *intr.*, *serve*, be a slave (to), *w. Dat.*

servitūs, servitūtis, *f.* (*cf.* **serviō**), slavery [*servitude*].

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, save, keep, protect [pre*serve*, con-*servat*ion].

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave [*serv*ile].

sex, *indecl.*, six [*sex*tant].

Sextius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman proper name.

sextus, -a, -um, sixth.

sextus decimus, -a, -um, sixteenth.

sī, *conj.*, if; **quod sī**, but if, now if; **sī . . . minus**, if . . . not.

sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*cf.* **significō**, make signs), meaning [*significa*nt].

signum, -ī, *n.*, *sign*, *sign*al, a (military) standard.

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods [*silv*an, Penn*sylv*ania].

Silvia, -ae, *f.*; **Rhēa Silvia**, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

similis, -e, like [*simil*ar].

similiter, *adv.* [*simil*arly].

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cf.* **similis**), *tr. and intr.*, pretend, *simulate*.

sin, *conj.*, but if.

sine, *prep.* *w.* *Abl.*, without [*sine*cure].

singulāris, -e (*cf.* **singulī**), single, unusual [*singular*].

singulī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, one each, one at a time [*single*].

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left, on the left [*sinister*].

socius, socī, *m.*, ally, comrade [*soci*al].

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun [*sol*ar].

solea, -ae, *f.*, shoe, sandal.

sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis, *f.* (*cf.* **sōlus**), wilderness, *solitude*.

sōlum, *adv.*, only.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, *sole*, [*soli*tary].

somnium, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **somnus**, sleep), dream.

sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus (*cf.* **sonus**), *intr.*, make a noise, sound [re*sonant*].

sonus, -ī, *m.*, *sound*.

sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, unclean [*sordid*].

soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister [*soror*ity].

Spartānus, -a, -um, Spartan.

spatium, spatī, *n.*, room, *space*.

spectātor, -tōris, *m.* (*cf.* **spectō**), *spectator*.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, look at, look toward [in*spect*].

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **spēs**), *tr.*, hope, hope for [de*spair*].

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.

statim, *adv.* (*cf.* **stō**), at once.

statua, -ae, *f.*, image, *statue*.

stella, -ae, *f.*, star [*stell*ar, con*stell*ation].

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, *intr.*, stand [*stat*ion].

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —— (*cf.* **studium**), *intr.*, be eager, be zealous, desire; busy with, apply one's self [*stud*ious].

studium, studī, *n.*, zeal, enthusiasm, *study*.

sub, *prep. w. Acc.*, *after verbs of motion*, under, below, up to; *w. Abl.*, under, beneath, at the foot of [*sub*terranean, *sub*mit].

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus (**sub + agō**), *tr.*, conquer, subdue [*subject*].

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (**sub + mittō**), *tr.*, send to

assistance of, yield to [*submit*, *submission*].

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow closely [*subsequent*].

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (sub + cēdō), *intr.*, come up, *succeed*.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus (sub + currō), *intr.*, rush to rescue, relieve, *w. Dat.* [*succor*].

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of central Germany.

suī, *reflex. pron.*, (of) himself, herself, itself, themselves.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, be [*future*].

summus, -a, -um, highest, utmost; top of [*summ*it].

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *tr.*, take, *assume* [*assumption*]; **poenam sūmere,** to inflict punishment.

super, *prep. w. Acc. and Abl.*, over, above, upon, on [*super*lative].

superbus, -a, -um, proud [*superb*].

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **super**), *tr.*, overcome, excel, surpass [in*super*able].

superus, -a, -um (*cf.* **super**), above; *comp.* **superior,** higher; *superl.* **summus.**

supplex, supplicis, humbly begging, submissive [*suppli*ant].

suppliciter, *adv.* (*cf.* **supplex**), humbly.

supplicium, supplicī, *n.* (*cf.* **supplex**), punishment.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (sub + portō), *tr.*, bring up, furnish [*support*].

suprā, *prep. w. Acc.*, above.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (sub + capiō), *tr.*, take up, undertake [*suscept*ible].

suspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus (sub + speciō, look at), *tr.*, look up at [*suspect*].

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneō), *tr.*, hold up, *sustain*, bear, endure; check.

sūtor, -tōris, *m.*, cobbler.

suus, -a, -um, *refl. poss.*, his, her, its, their, *with or without* own.

T

tabula, -ae, *f.*, map, chart, writing tablet [*table*].

tālis, tāle, such; **tālis . . . quālis,** such . . . as.

tam, *adv.*, so; **tam . . . quam,** as much . . . as.

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet, still.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length; *in questions*, now, pray.

tantus, -a, -um, so great; **tantus . . . quantus,** as great . . . as.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **tardus**), *tr.*, check [re*tard*].

tardus, -a, -um, slow, late [*tardy*].

Tarentīnus, -ī, *m.*, an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, a Greek city in southern Italy.

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, L. **Tarquinius Superbus,** the last king of Rome.

tēctum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **tegō,** cover), roof [pro*tect*ion].

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.

tempestās, tempestātis, *f.* (*cf.* tem-

pus), storm, stormy weather [*tempest*].

templum, -ī, *n., temple.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, test, try, at*tempt* [*temptat*ion].

tempus, temporis, *n., time* [*temporal*, *tempor*ary].

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ——, *tr.*, hold, keep [con*tain*, *ten*ure].

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth [*terra* cotta].

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *tr.*, frighten [*terr*ify, *terr*ible].

tertius, -a, -um, third [*terti*ary].

tertius decimus, -a, -um, thirteenth.

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the river flowing past Rome.

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman proper name.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, ——, *tr.*, fear, be afraid [*tim*id].

timidus, -a, -um (*cf.* **timeō**), fearful, cowardly [*timid*ity].

timor, timōris, *m.*, fear [*timor*ous].

tingō [tinguō], -ere, tinxī, tinctus, *tr.*, dip, stain [*tinct*ure].

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *tr.*, raise, lift up, carry off [ex*tol*].

tot, *indecl.*, so many; **quot . . . tot,** as many . . . as.

tōtus, -a, -um (*cf.* **tot**), all, whole of [*tot*al].

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), *tr.*, hand over, yield [*tradit*ion].

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns + dūcō), *tr.*, lead across [*traduce*].

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *tr.*, drag, bring, carry off [*tract*, sub*tract*].

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (trāns + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across, pierce [*traject*ory].

trāns, *prep. w. Acc.*, across [*trans*late].

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um (trāns + marīnus, marine), from across the sea.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (trāns + portō), *tr.*, carry across, *transport.*

trēdecim (trēs + decem), *indecl.*, thirteen.

trēs, tria, *three.*

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* (*cf.* **tribus,** tribe), *tribune.*

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, *tr.*, give, yield, assign, dis*tribute.*

trīgintā, *indecl.*, thirty.

Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, an ancient city of Asia Minor.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, thou; you (*sing.*).

tubicen, tubicinis, *m.* (*cf.* **tuba + canō,** sing), trumpeter.

Tuccia, -ae, *f.*, a Vestal.

tum, *adv.*, then.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, disturbance, *tumult.*

tunc, *adv.*, then.

turpis, -e, disgraceful [*turpi*tude].

turris, turris, *f.*, tower [*turr*et].

tūtus, -a, -um, safe [*tut*elary].

tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine; your.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, where? *conj.*, when.

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ultrā, *prep. with Acc.*, beyond.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

ūndecim (**ūnus** + **decem**), *indecl.*, eleven.
ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.
ūndēvīcēnsimus, -a, -um, nineteenth.
ūndēvīgintī (**ūnus dē vīgintī**), *indecl.*, nineteen.
undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on all sides.
ūniversus, -a, -um, altogether, all, whole [*universe*].
ūnus, -a, -um, one [*un*it, *uni*fy].
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city [*urb*an, *urb*anity].
ūsus, ūsūs, *m.* (*cf.* **ūtor**), *use*, practice, experience.
ut, *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, both, each.
ūtilis, ūtile (*cf.* **ūtor**) useful [*utili*ty].
utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may.
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, use, enjoy, make use of, *w. Abl.* [*us*able].
utrum, *adv.*, whether, *introducing a double question.*
uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vallēs, vallis, *f.*, *valley*.
vāllum, -ī, *n.*, rampart, palisade [*wall*].
varius, -a, -um, *various*.
vastus, -a, -um, *vast*, extensive.
vehementer, *adv.*, violently [*vehement*].
vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectus, *tr.*, bear, carry, con*vey; in passive, w.* **equō**, ride; *w.* **nāve**, sail [*veh*icle, in*veigh*].
vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, venditus, *tr.*, sell [*vend*or].
venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon, forgiveness [*venia*l].
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come [*vent*ure].
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word [*verb*al, *verb*].
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear; respect [re*vere*].
vēritās, vēritātis, *f.* (*cf.* **vērus**), truth [*verity*, *verit*able].
vērō (*adv. fr.* **vērus**), in truth, but [*ver*ily].
vērus, -a, -um, true [*ver*y].
Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Roman goddess of the hearth.
Vestālis, -e, of Vesta; *as subst., f.*, a priestess of Vesta, Vestal.
vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours.
vestīmentum, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* **vestis**), clothing, clothes [*vestment*].
vestis, vestis, *f.*, clothing, clothes [*vest*].
vetus, veteris, old [*veter*an, in*veter*ate].
vetustus, -a, -um, old.
via, -ae, *f.*, highway, road [*via*, *via*duct].
viātor, viātōris, *m.* (*cf.* **via**), wayfarer, traveler.
vīcēnsimus, -a, -um, twentieth.
vīcīnus, -a, -um (*cf.* **vīcus**, village), neighboring [*vicin*ity].
victōria, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **vincō**, con-

quer; **victor**, conqueror, *victor*), *victory* [*victor*ious].

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *tr.*, see [pro*vide*].

videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, *dep.*, seem [*vis*ible].

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, be awake, keep watch [*vigilant*].

vīgintī, *indecl.*, twenty.

villa, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse [*villa*, *vill*ain].

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *tr.*, conquer [in*vinc*ible, *vict*or].

violentus, -a, -um, *violent*.

vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero, husband [*vir*ile].

virtūs, virtūtis, *f.* (*cf.* **vir**), manliness, courage, *virtue*, character.

vīs, vim (*Acc.*), *f.*, force, violence; *pl.*, **vīrēs, vīrium,** strength [*vim*].

vīta, -ae, *f.*, life [*vit*al].

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live [sur*vive*, *vict*uals].

vīvus, -a, -um (*cf.* **vīvō**), alive [*viv*id].

vix, *adv.*, scarcely.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, call [con*voke*].

voluntās, voluntātis, *f.* (*cf.* **volō**, *be willing*), wish [*volunt*ary].

vōs, vestrum *or* **vestrī,** you, *pl. of* **tū**.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, speech, remark, voice [*voc*al].

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*cf.* **vulnus**), *tr.*, wound [*vulner*able].

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

Z

Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zama, a town in Africa where Hannibal was defeated by Scipio Africanus (202 B.C.).

INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections except where p. (page) is given with a reference to the Appendix.)